

BOOK 1

POPULAR

# The Power Chess Program

A unique training course  
to improve your chess

Copyrighted Material

**NIGEL DAVIES**



Hello everybody!!

We are a group of chess fans who are producing new chess material. We have members from all around the world, belonging to different cultures and speaking different languages, all of us joined by our common love for chess! We hope you will enjoy our work!

If you are interested in joining us, or send any comments drop us an email at: [caissa\\_lovers@yahoo.com](mailto:caissa_lovers@yahoo.com).

Best regards!!

Hola a todos!

Somos un grupo de fanáticos del ajedrez, que estamos tratando de producir nuevo material como este, desarrollando diferentes proyectos e ideas. Tenemos miembros de diferentes partes del mundo, provenientes de diferentes culturas, hablando diferentes lenguas, unidos por nuestra pasión por el ajedrez!. Esperamos que disfruten de esta muestra de nuestro trabajo!.

Si alguien estuviese interesado en unirse al grupo nos pueden escribir a: [caissa\\_lovers@yahoo.com](mailto:caissa_lovers@yahoo.com).

Saludos!

Caissa Lovers

First published in 1998  
© Nigel Davies 1998

ISBN 0 7134 8415 2

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data.  
A catalogue record for this book is  
available from the British Library

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced,  
by any means, without prior permission of the publisher.

Typeset by Ocean View Graphics  
Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
Creative Print and Design Wales  
For the publishers  
BT Batsford Ltd,  
583, Fulham Road  
London SW6 5BY

Proofread by Alexander Meynell

A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK  
*General Manager:* David Cummings  
*Advisors:* Mark Dvoretsky, Raymond Keene OBE,  
Daniel King, Jon Speelman, Chris Ward

## Contents

Symbols	4
Introduction	5
1 Aspects of the King	7
2 The Remarkable Rook	23
3 The Beautiful Bishop	39
4 The Noble Knight	55
5 The Mighty Queen	71
6 The Soulful Pawn	87
7 The Classical Centre	103
8 Hanging Pawns	119
9 The Isolated Pawn	135
10 Doubled Pawns	151
11 Backward Pawns	167
12 Semi-Backward Pawns	183
<b>13 Key Move Solutions</b>	<b>199</b>
<b>14 Analysis Position Solutions</b>	<b>212</b>

# Symbols

+	Check
++	Double check
#	Mate
!	Good move
!!	Excellent move
?	Bad move
??	Blunder
!?	Interesting move
?!	Dubious move
1-0	White wins
0-1	Black wins
½-½	Draw
Ch	Championship
tt	Team tournament
OL	Olympiad
Z	Zonal
IZ	Interzonal
Ct	Candidates event
Wch	World championship
Cht	Team championship
Echt	European team championship
Wcht	World team championship
jr	Junior event
wom	Women's event
rpd	Rapid game
corr.	Postal game
( <i>n</i> )	<i>n</i> th match game
( <i>D</i> )	Diagram follows

# Introduction

What is it that makes a strong chess player? Is it a knowledge of opening theory (as many people seem to believe) or perhaps being able to calculate more moves ahead than the opponent? A quick eye perhaps, fierce will to win or just patience?

Through my work as a chess trainer I have come across all sorts of theories as to what it is that makes someone good at chess, not all of them very sound. As a result it is quite difficult for an amateur player with a limited amount of time to know how exactly how to improve.

With these thoughts in mind I set about developing a training program which would target the two main areas in which stronger players distinguish themselves. The first is their ability to see ahead clearly and deeply and be able to make disciplined calculations. The second is in recognising a large number of strategic patterns and being able to apply this to similar positions with good judgement and creativity.

The *Power Chess Program* is a two year course in which month by month I present different strategic themes and issues and then back this up with thematic test positions to get the reader actively involved.

It is only through this active involvement that the strategic ideas really hit home, simply reading about them is not enough!

I have arranged the chapters in terms of 'weeks' and 'months' with the aim of encouraging a regular weekly study session of about 3-5 hours. For each week's lesson you should firstly read through the notes and then set about the test positions.

These positions are divided into two types. The 'key move' positions are fairly lightweight and you might allow yourself around 10 minutes each to find the next move. The analysis positions are much more difficult and I suggest you spend around 30 minutes on these. I recommend that you do not take more than the allotted time so as to avoid frustration and encourage quick, disciplined decisions. I also suggest that you try not to move the pieces as this will help develop visualisation skills.

You should also note that these positions are not necessarily tactical forced wins. Sometimes it is a good positional move that is required, sometimes you may be called on to find the best chance in a losing position. This conforms much more to the reality of chess than the standard two-movers we

see all the time in newspapers. These lack any kind of challenge because you know there is something there!

I will not try to kid you that this course is an easy option and that merely opening this book will improve your chess. Several of my students have fallen by the wayside after a few months.

What I can say is that **everyone** who has persevered and worked systematically through it has experienced an upswing in their results, sometimes a quite dramatic improvement.

The *Power Chess Program* can also be studied in conjunction with a personal tuition package. For details visit my website at [www.checkerwise.co.uk](http://www.checkerwise.co.uk)

It remains for me to wish you well with the Power-Chess Program and leave you with the words of John F. Kennedy:

“There are costs and risks to a program of action, but they are far less than the long-range risks and costs of comfortable inaction.”

**GM Nigel Davies, Manchester,  
November 1998**

## 1 Aspects of the King

It goes without saying that the king is the most valuable piece on the board, yet relatively little attention is given to its handling. In this month's strategic theme section I will examine four different aspects of the king; attacking uncastled kings, piece attacks on castled kings, pawn storms and the active king.

### Month 1/Week 1: Attacking Uncastled Kings

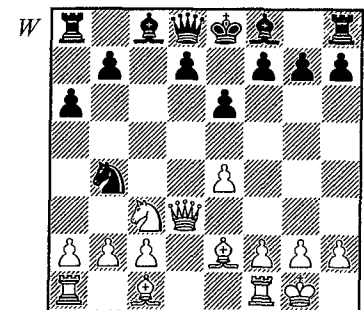
It never ceases to amaze me how even some strong Grandmasters can leave their kings in the centre too long. Of course such players know only too well the possible dangers of doing so, yet nevertheless they sometimes neglect king safety when they get carried away with other schemes.

The players that often seem to get caught like this are sophisticated positional players such as GMs Yasser Seirawan of the United States and Mark Taimanov of Russia. These players can find extraordinarily deep concepts yet occasionally this type of focus means that they miss the wood for the trees.

In 1985 I participated in a small closed tournament in Lisbon with Taimanov and I took great interest

in the opening to his game with the Portuguese player Jorge Guimaraes. Guimaraes - Taimanov went as follows:

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗c6 5 ♗c3 a6 6 ♕e2 ♗ge7  
Taimanov's own variation.  
7 0-0 ♗xd4 8 ♞xd4 ♗c6 9 ♞d3 ♗b4



In this position the natural move seemed to be 10 ♞g3 sacrificing the c-pawn, and after 10 ... ♗xc2 I quickly calculated the variation 11 ♕g5 f6 12 ♕f4 ♗xa1 13 ♕h5+ g6 14 ♕xg6+ hxg6 15 ♞xg6+ ♖e7 16 e5 d5 17 ♞xf6+ ♖d7 18 ♞xh8 ♗c2 19 ♞h7+. White picks up the knight on c2 and emerges two pawns up.

Instead of this Guimaraes played 10 ♞d2 which I later found out was “theory” and had even been played by Karpov. So later in the tournament I tried to reach the

same position in my game with Taimanov but the old maestro side-stepped this with 6 ... ♖c7.

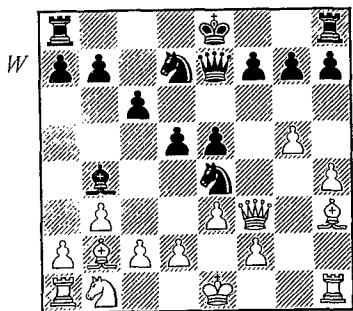
Early the following year Jim Plaskett got the very same position as White against Bill Hartston, found 10 ♖g3! over the board and put the move 9... ♖b4 out of business.

Although I didn't manage to catch Taimanov this time, I did note that he was inclined to leave his king in the centre. Seven years later I was able to exploit this in our game in Gausdal in Norway:

### Taimanov - Davies Gausdal 1992

1 ♖f3 ♖f6 2 b3 d5 3 ♖b2 c6 4 e3 ♖g4 5 h3 ♖xf3 6 ♖xf3 ♖bd7 7 g4 e5 8 g5 ♖e4 9 h4 ♖b4 10 ♖h3 ♖e7

Allowing White to win a pawn but I had foreseen that Black gets good counter-play. It seems that 10 ... 0-0 is a better way to give up the material but rather than 11 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 12 ♖xe5, White can do much better with 11 ♖f5!



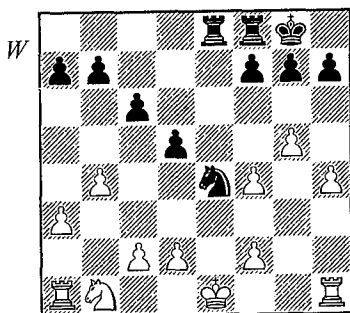
11 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 12 ♖xe5 0-0  
13 a3 ♖a5 14 b4 ♖c7 15 ♖xc7?!

Relatively best was 15 ♖b2, but after 15 ... a5! 16 d3 ♖d6 17 ♖d2 ♖f5 Black has compensation for the pawn.

15 ... ♖xc7 16 ♖f4?

Finally seeing the danger to his king, Taimanov's nerve goes and he hurries to exchange queens. Yet the endgame offers little relief, the forthcoming attack along the e- and f-files resembling an old-style King's Gambit.

16 ... ♖xf4 17 exf4 ♖ae8



18 ♖f1 f6! 19 d3 ♖d6 20 ♖c3 fxe5 21 fxe5 ♖f5 22 ♖g2 ♖d4 23 ♖ac1

After the game Taimanov tried to find a way to bail out for White with 23 ♖ae1 but after 23 ... ♖xe1 24 ♖xe1 ♖xc2 25 ♖d1 a6! Black keeps his grip.

23 ... ♖f4 24 ♖f1 ♖ef8 25 ♖d1 ♖f5 26 ♖h3 ♖xh4 27 c4 d4 28 ♖c2 ♖f3 29 ♖e2 ♖g4 30 ♖h1 ♖f5 31 g6 ♖xg6 32 ♖b2 ♖f7 33 c5 ♖fg5 34 ♖c2 ♖e6 35 ♖e2 ♖h6 0:1

So if the likes of Taimanov can leave the king dangerously placed in the centre, this is clearly not a issue just for beginners. One of the interesting things about the above game was that the opening of the c-file with 12 ♖xe5 was very useful to Black because it allowed the rooks to get involved in the attack. In fact rook play is a key feature of attacking chess and chess literature contains some beautiful examples of sacrifices to open lines for the rooks.

Here is one of my favourite games showing the late Nicolai Rossolimo producing sheer brilliance with his patented 3 ♖b5 against the 2 ... ♖c6 Sicilian:

### Rossolimo - O'Kelly de Galway Oldenburg 1949

1 e4 c5

Black's king often gets caught in the centre in the Sicilian Defence, which is not very surprising when you think about it. His first move, 1 ... c5, stakes out terrain on the queenside and in the centre, but does very little for Black's development. Of course the Sicilian is an excellent defence, but it does require extremely accurate treatment by Black because of the potential danger of his slow development.

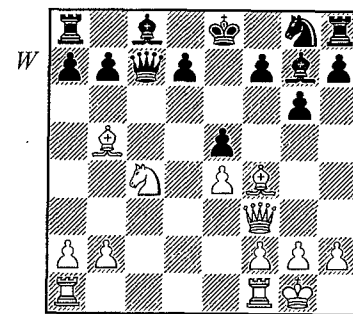
2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 g6 4 0-0 ♖g7 5 c3 e6?

Too slow, and in conjunction with Black's overambitious 7th move this proves disastrous. Black should develop a piece with 5... ♖f6.

6 d4 cxd4 7 cxd4 ♖b6?

Very greedy. Black plays to win a pawn by attacking both the bishop on b5 and the d-pawn, but what about his development? It is hardly surprising that his king gets caught in the centre.

8 ♖a3! ♖xd4 9 ♖c4! ♖xf3+ 10 ♖xf3 ♖c7 11 ♖f4 e5



12 ♖xe5!! ♖xe5 13 ♖ac1 ♖b8

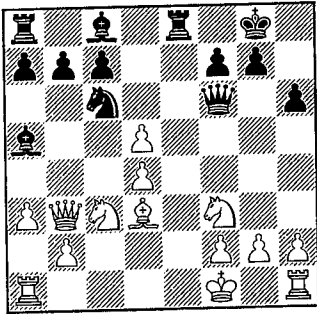
After 13 ... ♖d6 there would follow 14 ♖fd1 ♖e7 15 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 16 ♖xd7 etc.

14 ♖xc8+! ♖xc8 15 ♖xe5 f6 16 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 17 ♖xf6 ♖f8 18 ♖e5+

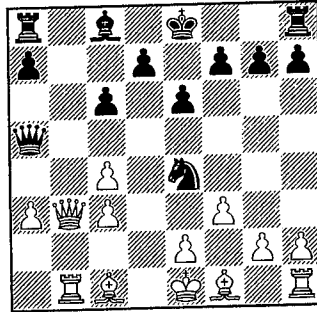
There was an even quicker win with 18 ♖e6+ ♖d8 19 ♖d1 but Rossolimo's choice is effective enough.

18 ... ♖d8 19 ♖g5+ ♖e8 20 ♖c1 ♖d8 21 ♖e5+ ♖e7 22 ♖xd7+ ♖f7 23 ♖e6+ ♖e8 24 ♖c7 1:0

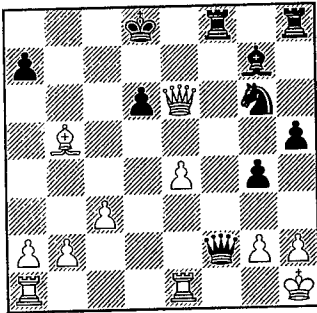
KM1/1: 1) Black to play



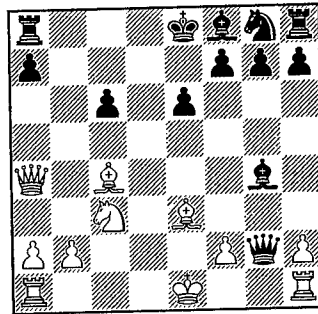
KM1/1: 2) Black to play



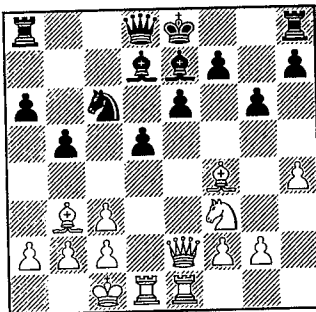
KM1/1: 3) Black to play



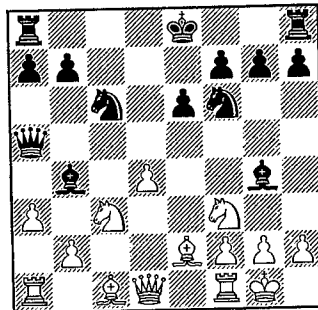
KM1/1: 4) White to play



A1/1: a) White to play



A1/1: b) White to play



### Month 1/Week 2: Attacking Castled Kings With Pieces

The most common type of attack on a castled king is conducted with pieces alone. Once again the key is to make some sort of breach in the king's pawn cover and this can be achieved either by weakening the pawn shield (forcing a weakness such as h7-h6 or g7-g6) or wrecking the enemy pawn shield with sacrifice.

Here are a couple of examples of the violent approach at work from yesteryear. The first features a classic sacrificial attack by a youthful Emmanuel Lasker.

#### Lasker - Bauer Amsterdam 1889

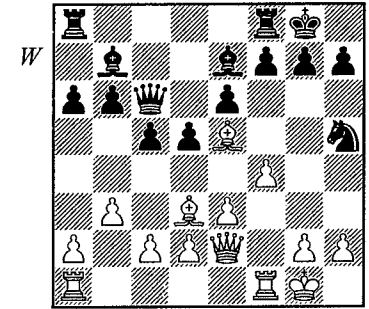
1 f4 d5 2 e3 ♘f6 3 b3 e6 4 ♙b2  
♙e7 5 ♙d3 b6 6 ♘c3 ♙b7 7 ♘f3  
♘bd7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♘e2 c5 10 ♘g3

White's massive build-up of pieces on the kingside should really have set his opponent's alarm bells ringing. Playing Black I would probably have eliminated the d3-bishop with 9 ... ♘c5, even though this would lead to a strengthening of White's pawn centre.

10 ... ♛c7 11 ♘e5 ♘xe5 12  
♙xe5 ♛c6 13 ♛e2 a6 14 ♘h5  
♘xh5

Allowing a beautiful combination, but Black could not have

saved himself in any case. Thus 14 ... ♘e8 would be met by 15 ♙xg7 ♘xg7 16 ♛g4 etc.



15 ♙xh7+! ♘xh7 16 ♛xh5+  
♙g8 17 ♙xg7!

This second bishop sacrifice rips away what is left of Black's kingside pawn cover.

17 ... ♙xg7 18 ♛g4+ ♙h7 19  
♙f3 e5 20 ♙h3+ ♛h6 21 ♙xh6+  
♙xh6 22 ♛d7

The final point!  
22 ... ♙f6 23 ♛xb7 ♙g7 24 ♙f1  
♙ab8 25 ♛d7 ♙fd8 26 ♛g4+ ♙f8  
27 ♙xe5 ♙g7 28 e6 ♙b7 29 ♛g6 f6  
30 ♙xf6+ ♙xf6 31 ♛xf6+ ♙e8 32  
♛h8+ ♙e7 33 ♛g7+ 1:0

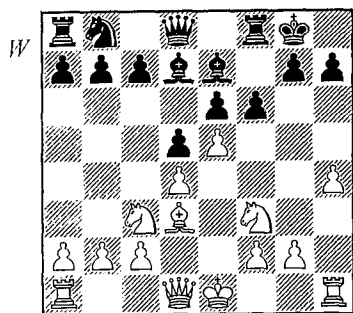
The second game is a rather lightweight example of Carl Schlechter's skills.

Schlechter was a rival of Lasker and actually drew a World Championship match with him in 1910. In fact Lasker only held on to the title when he dramatically won the tenth and last game.

### Schlechter - Wulff Vienna 1894

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♜f6 4 ♙g5  
♙e7 5 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 6 ♜f3 0-0 7 e5  
♙e7 8 ♙d3 ♙d7 9 h4 f6

Black's opening treatment has been rather co-operative and now he should really have seen what was about to happen to him. A better defence was 9 ... h6.



10 ♜g5! fxe5 11 ♙xh7+ ♙xh7  
12 hxg5+ ♙g8 13 ♜h8+! ♙f7

Taking the rook is fatal because of 14 ♜h5+ followed by 15 g6.

14 ♜h5+ g6 15 ♜h7+ ♙e8 16 ♜xg6#

These two games were really too easy for the likes of Lasker and Schlechter. These days it is very difficult to find someone who will actually allow Schlechter's 10 ♜g5 and 11 ♙xh7+, such is the spread of knowledge and technique. In spite of this, it is still possible to launch barnstorming attacks.

In the following game I succeeded in bringing off a ferocious piece attack against the Mexican GM Hernandez. In his defence I should point out that this was a rapidplay game with 45 minutes per player, which left him relatively little time to refute the attack.

### Hernandez - Davies Chicago Open 1998

1 e4 d6 2 d4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♙g7 4 ♜ge2 ♜c6 5 ♙e3 ♜f6 6 f3 e5 7 ♜d2 0-0 8 0-0 9 ♙d7 9 g4 b5!?

I've played such pawn sacrifices on previous occasions, the most notable being against Godena (Budapest 1993) when I needed to win with Black for my second GM norm. I cannot guarantee that 'Deeper Blue' would vouch for its correctness in every variation but it seemed to offer reasonable compensation. When White captures I bring a rook to bear on his king.

10 ♜xb5 ♜b8 11 ♜a3

A slightly unnatural looking retreat but probably the best. White lends extra protection to the c4 square and creates the option of defensive moves such as c2-c3.

11 ... exd4 12 ♜xd4 ♜b4 13 ♙c4 c5

A very committal move in that it severely compromises Black's pawn structure. When I played this way I knew that there was no turning back and I had already envisaged the following sacrifice.

14 ♜b3 ♙xg4! 15 ♜f2

15 fxe4 is met by 15 ... ♜xe4 and after 16 ♜g2 there follows 16 ... ♜xa2+ 17 ♙b1 ♜f6 18 ♙d4 (18 c3 ♜axc3+ 19 bxc3 ♜xc3+ 20 ♙c2 ♜xd1 is also good for Black) 18 ... ♜ac3+ 19 ♙xc3 ♜xc3+ 20 bxc3 ♜xc3+.

15 ... ♙e6 16 ♜g3

After the game my opponent indicated that perhaps he should have played 16 ♙xc5 at this point. I cannot claim to have worked it out in detail but my intention was to answer this with 16 ... ♜c8 17 ♙xe6 fxe6(!) meeting 18 ♙xd6 with 18 ... ♜xe4!. My feeling is that Black would have excellent attacking chances in any case.

16 ... d5

Once again this was a move based largely on instinct. After 17 exd5 I felt that both 17 ... ♜fxd5 and 17 ... ♙f5! would give Black a very strong attack. After White's actual reply, I had foreseen the following queen sacrifice.

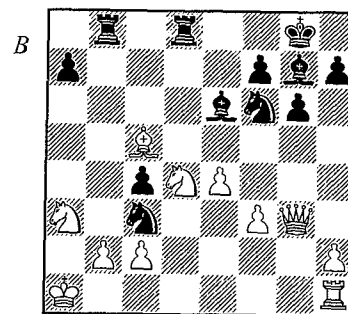
17 ♙xc5 dxc4!

This is no time for half measures! Actually the queen sacrifice is very strong.

18 ♜xd8 ♜fxd8 19 ♜d4

After 19 ♙xb4 ♜xb4 20 ♜c5 ♜xe4 the h8-a1 diagonal is opened with disastrous consequences for White.

19 ... ♜xa2+ 20 ♙b1 ♜c3+ 21 ♙a1



21 ... ♜xe4!

Sacrificing another piece to destabilise the position of White's knight on d4. Once the 'Modern' bishop on g7 starts to work, the rest is history.

22 fxe4 ♜xe4 23 ♜c7 ♜xc5 24 ♜c6?

This loses on the spot. After 24 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 25 ♜xc4 neither 25 ... ♜xb2 26 c3 ♜dd2 27 ♜c8+ ♜f8 28 ♜c4 ♜a2+ 29 ♙b1 nor 25 ... ♙xb2+ 26 ♙a2 ♜d4 27 ♜c6 ♙xa3 28 ♙xa3 give anything clear. But the position must surely be good for Black who already has a material equivalent for the queen.

24 ... ♙xb2+ 25 ♙a2

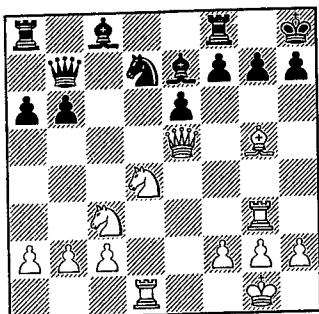
Or 25 ♙b1 ♙e5+ etc.

25 ... c3+ 26 ♙b1 ♜e4 0:1

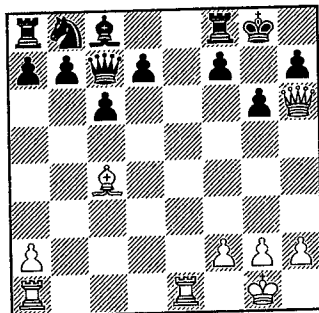
There is no defence against the threat of 27 ... ♜d2#.



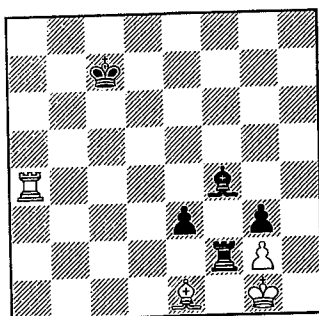
KM1/2: 1) White to play



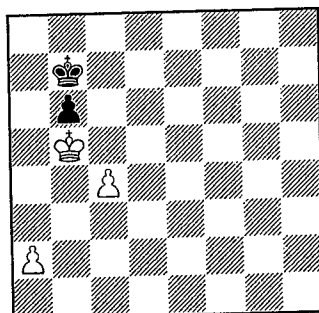
KM1/2: 2) White to play



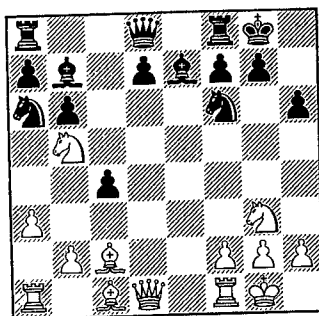
KM1/2: 3) Black to play



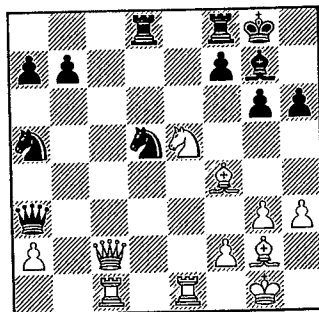
KM1/2: 4) White to play



A1/2: a) White to play



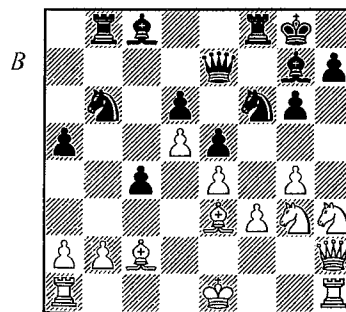
A1/2: b) White to play



### Month 1/Week 3: The Pawn Storm

The pawn storm is one of the most effective attacking weapons, but also entails great risk. When successful, the advancing pawns can be used to breach the enemy king position, opening lines for the pieces to follow through. The negative side is that advancing pawns also leave gaping holes in the attacker's own position which the opponent can often exploit, most typically with a counterblow in the centre.

The following example, Kotov-Spassky, Riga 1958, features a classic case of White advancing his kingside pawns without having sufficient central control.



Spassky uncorked the brilliant sacrifice 20 ... ♖bxd5!! 21 exd5 ♖xb2 and after Kotov's 22 ♖g5 could have ripped White's position apart with 22 ... e4!. White would have had to pay dearly for his mistimed pawn storm.

In the next game, Boris Spassky carries out a pawn storm but, un-

like Kotov, makes sure that his centre is secure. The brilliant move 14 b3! was played in order to forestall a possible counterattack in the centre.

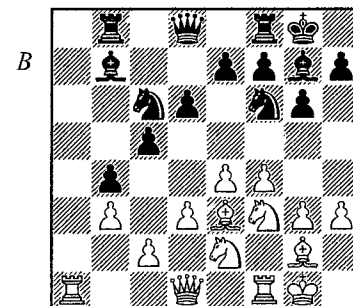
### Spassky - Geller Candidates Match, 1968

1 e4 c5 2 ♖c3 d6 3 g3 ♖c6 4 ♘g2 g6 5 d3 ♘g7 6 f4 ♗f6 7 ♗f3 0-0 8 0-0 ♖b8 9 h3 b5 10 a3

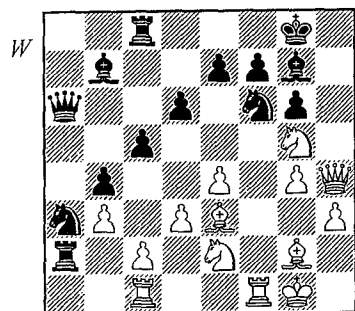
An interesting moment. White, unusually, makes a pawn move on the side of the board where his opponent is attacking. Normally this is regarded as a dubious policy, as it makes it easier for your opponent to open lines. But here Spassky has reasoned that his temporary control of the a-file will slow down Black's counter-play on the queenside.

10 ... a5 11 ♘e3 b4 12 axb4 axb4 13 ♗e2 ♘b7 14 b3!

In my view the most remarkable move of the game. The idea is to stop a Black counterattack on White's centre with ... e4, before proceeding with the kingside assault.



14 ... ♖a8 15 ♜c1 ♖a2 16 g4!  
Finally sounding the charge!  
16 ... ♖a5 17 ♖e1 ♖a6 18 ♖f2  
♜a7 19 f5 ♜b5 20 fxc6 hxc6 21  
♜g5 ♜a3 22 ♖h4 ♜c8



23 ♜xf6!! exf6 24 ♖h7+ ♜f8 25  
♜xf7! ♜xc2

If 25 ... ♜xf7 then 26 ♜h6 ♜g8  
27 ♜f4 ♜xc2 28 ♜f1 would yield  
a winning attack.

26 ♜h6! ♜xc1+ 27 ♜xc1 ♜xf7  
28 ♖xc7+ ♜e8 29 g5 f5 30 ♖xc6+  
♜d7 31 ♖f7+ ♜c6 32 exf5+ 1:0

White will exchange queens on  
b7 before marching his f-pawn to  
victory.

The most usual scenario for a  
pawn storm is one where the play-  
ers have castled on opposite wings.  
In this case, throwing pawns for-  
ward against the opponent's king  
no longer weakens your own  
king's protection. Then again, one  
should carefully note that the best  
defence to a flank attack is a coun-  
terblow in the centre. If this is not  
feasible, victory will probably go

to the player who first takes the  
initiative by creating serious  
threats against the enemy king.

Here are two examples of pawn  
storms by former World Champi-  
ons. The first features Boris  
Spassky again, this time letting rip  
against Larry Evans of the United  
States.

### Spassky - Evans Varna Olympiad 1962

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♜g7 4  
e4 d6 5 f3

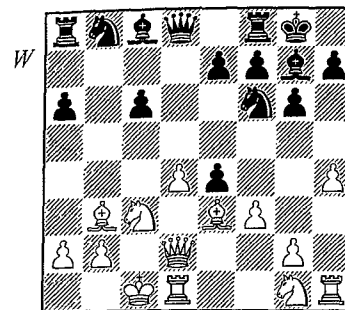
The Sämisch variation, which is  
characterised by this move, was a  
career favourite of Spassky. The  
plan White adopts in this particular  
game of 6 ♜e3, 7 ♖d2 and 8 0-0-0  
followed by a pawn storm on the  
kingside needs very accurate de-  
fence from Black.

Similar attacking methods are  
seen in White's play against the  
Sicilian Dragon (1 e4 c5 2 ♜f3 d6  
3 d4 cxd4 4 ♜xd4 ♜f6 5 ♜c3 g6 6  
♜e3 ♜g7 7 f3 0-0 8 ♖d2 with  
ideas of 0-0-0 and h4 etc.) and also  
the Pirc Defence (1 e4 d6 2 d4 ♜f6  
3 ♜c3 g6 4 ♜e3 followed by 5  
♖d2 and 6 0-0-0).

5 ... c6 6 ♜e3 a6 7 ♖d2 b5 8  
0-0-0 bxc4 9 ♜xc4 0-0 10 h4! d5  
11 ♜b3 dxe4 (D) 12 h5!

Losing no time in opening the  
h-file.

12 ... exf3 13 hxc6 hxc6 14 ♜h6  
fxg2 15 ♜h4!



Once again not counting the cost  
in pawns. The important thing is  
the attack, and White's queen is  
poised to jump to the h6 square.

15 ... ♜g4 16 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 17  
♖xc2 ♜h6 18 ♜f3!

One of the hallmarks of great  
attacking players is that even in the  
midst of a violent onslaught against  
the opposing king, they never for-  
get to play with all their pieces.  
Localised numerical superiority is  
one of the preconditions of a suc-  
cessful attack.

18 ... ♜f5 19 ♜h2 ♖d6 20 ♜e5  
♜d7 21 ♜e4 ♖c7 22 ♜dh1 ♜g8

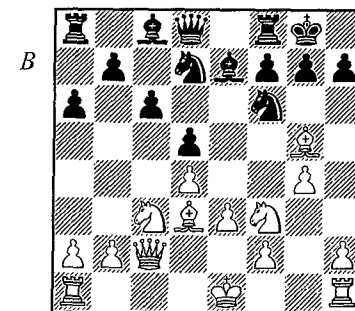
If 22 ... ♜f6 then 23 ♜xf7!  
would be decisive.

23 ♜h7+ ♜f8 24 ♜xf7+ ♜e8 25  
♖xc6! ♜xe5 26 ♜f8+ 1:0

The last game of the section fea-  
tures Mikhail Botvinnik in action  
employing a different kind of pawn  
storm. This time there is no king-  
side fianchetto to attack and  
Botvinnik advances his g-pawn in  
order to try and create an eventual  
breach.

### Botvinnik - Alatorsev Moscow 1934

1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 ♜f3 ♜e7 4 ♜c3  
♜f6 5 ♜g5 0-0 6 e3 a6 7 cxd5 exd5  
8 ♜d3 c6 9 ♖c2 ♜bd7 10 g4



A very strong move. White has  
the definite threat of 11 ♜xf6 ♜xf6  
12 g5, winning the h-pawn. If  
Black were to meet this with 10 ...  
h6 then 11 ♜f4 followed by 12 g5  
would open the g-file. Relatively  
best would have been 10 ... g6, but  
this too would leave Black's king  
perilously placed.

10 ... ♜xc4

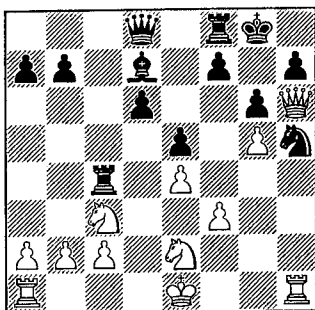
Probably the worst of Black's  
choices, as now the kingside is very  
badly damaged. It is just a matter  
of time before White's pieces find  
their way in.

11 ♜xh7+ ♜h8 12 ♜f4 ♜df6 13  
♜d3 ♜h5 14 h3 ♜gf6 15 ♜e5  
♜g8 16 0-0-0 ♜h6 17 ♜dg1 ♜e6  
18 ♖e2 ♜f5

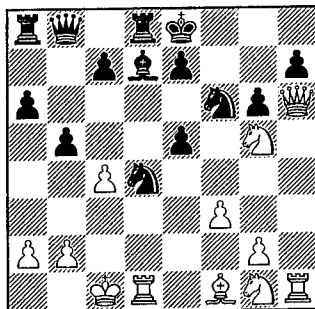
This oversight hastens the end.  
Even so there was hardly any defence  
to the threats of 19 ♜g5 or 19 ♜h4.

19 ♜xf5 ♜xf5 20 ♜h4 1:0

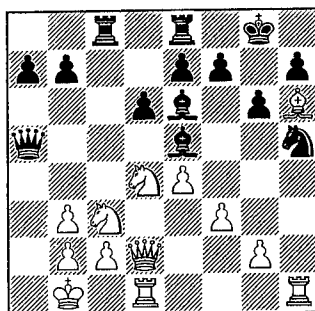
KM1/3: 1) White to play



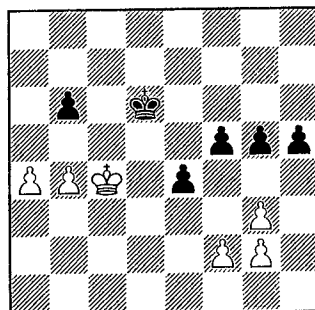
KM1/3: 2) White to play



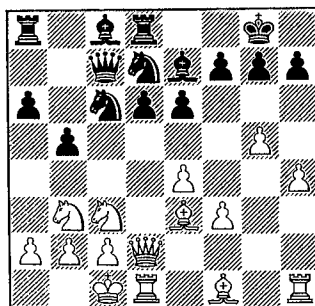
KM1/3: 3) White to play



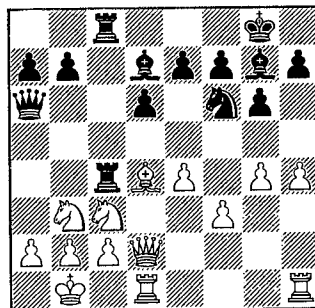
KM1/3: 4) Black to play



A1/3: a) White to play



A1/3: b) Black to play



### Month 1/ Week 4: The Active King

Wilhelm Steinitz once commented that the king is a strong piece well capable of looking after himself. Steinitz even went on to try and prove his point with the Steinitz Gambit, 1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 ♖c3, arguing that after 3... ♜h4+ 4. ♕e2 White will drive away Black's queen with 5 ♜f3, build a strong centre with 6 d4, and then march his king to safety in the subsequent early middlegame.

Needless to say, Steinitz's view on the subject has not gained wide approval. It should, however, be kept in mind that the king really is a strong piece, and that if his safety is no longer a problem, he can be used to great effect. The king's fighting power is roughly equivalent to that of a rook. In the endgame in particular he not only should but must be used effectively.

Examples of king play in the middlegame are rather less frequent, but they nevertheless do occur. If I were to pick out a World Champion, following Steinitz, that specialized in king play, I would have to mention "Iron Tigran" Petrosian, in his day hailed as the most difficult player in the world to beat.

In the following game Petrosian builds up a clear advantage and then marches his king across the

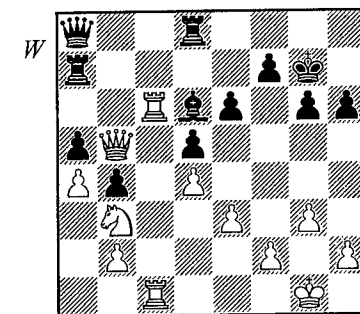
board before beginning decisive action.

### Petrosian - Unzicker USSR - West Germany 1960

1 d4 ♜f6 2 ♜f3 e6 3 ♖g5 d5 4 c4 c6 5 ♜c2 ♕e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♜c3 h6 8 ♖f4 ♜bd7 9 cxd5 cxd5 10 ♖d3 a6 11 0-0 b5 12 a4 b4 13 ♜a2 ♜e8 14 ♜c1 a5 15 ♜b3 ♖a6 16 ♖xa6 ♜xa6 17 ♜d3 ♜a7 18 ♜fc1 ♜d6 19 ♖xd6!

The knight was en route to c4 so it is better to eliminate it now.

19... ♖xd6 20 ♜c6 ♜b8 21 ♜c2 ♜d7 22 ♜ac1 ♜b6 23 ♜b5 ♜c4 24 ♜fd2 ♜xd2 25 ♜xd2 ♜a8 26 ♜dc2 ♜d8 27 ♜c6 g6 28 g3 ♖g7 (D)



Petrosian's systematic positional play has left Black in a very passive position, but the problem he now faced was how to convert this advantage into an actual win. Black's position is very solid and there is no point at which White can penetrate on the c-file. So the answer is to open up a second front which

Black's passive pieces will not be able to cover.

The second front is the kingside, but how can one break through there? The only possibility is a pawn storm, but surely that must be too risky with White's king placed as it is?

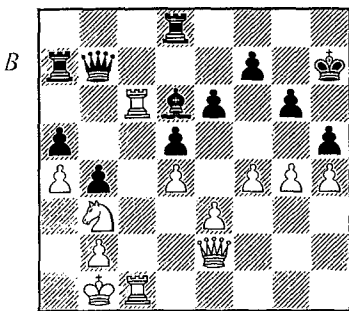
By reasoning in this way Petrosian finds a brilliant solution. He first evacuates his king to the queenside and only then opens lines on the other side of the board.

29 ♖f1! ♗g8 30 h4 h5 31 ♜1c2 ♗h7 32 ♗e1 ♗g8 33 ♗d1 ♗h7 34 ♗c1 ♗g8 35 ♗b1 ♗h7 36 ♗e2 ♗b7 37 ♜c1 ♗g7 38 ♗b5

It was rather typical of Petrosian to tack to and fro in this manner. Should Black exchange queens the endgame would be lost for him, because of the passed b-pawn.

38 ... ♗a8 39 f4 ♗h7 40 ♗e2 ♗b7 41 g4!

Finally achieving the long-term objective. It turns out that Black's passive pieces are unable to lend protection to their king and the game is decided within a few moves.



41 ... hxg4 42 ♗xg4 ♗e7 43 h5 ♗f6 44 ♗a2

And not 44 hxg6+ because 44 ... ♗xg6+ would exchange queens.

44 ... ♗g7 45 hxg6 ♗xg6 46 ♗h4 ♗e7 47 ♗f2 ♗f8 48 ♗d2 ♗b7 49 ♗b3

Getting a better idea.

49 ... ♜a7 50 ♗h2 ♗f6 51 ♜c8 ♗d7 52 ♗c5 b3+ 53 ♗xb3 ♗d6 54 f5! ♗b6+ 55 ♗a2 1:0

White will win material with 56 ♗d7+.

The next game is included more for light entertainment than anything else. It does at least show that the king is not an easy piece to mate, even if my king march took place more by accident than design! Readers need not write in to demonstrate stronger continuations for White!

### Hennigan - Davies Wrexham 1994

1 e4 e5 2 ♗f3 ♗c6 3 d4 exd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗c5 5 ♗xc6 bxc6 6 ♗d3 ♗e7

This seemed like a good idea at the time but now I'm not so sure. The development of the knight on e7 allows White's queen to take up residence on h5.

7 ♗d2 ♗g6 8 ♗b3 ♗e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 f4 d6 11 ♗h5

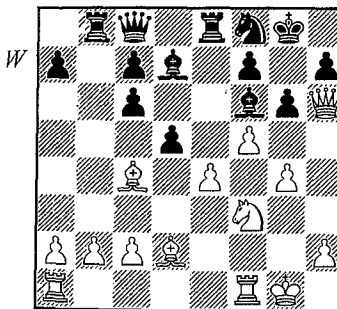
Already White is developing a menacing build-up on the kingside.

11 ... ♜e8 12 ♗d4 ♗d7 13 ♗f3 ♗c8 14 f5 ♗f8 15 g4?!

Apparently very strong but this also weakens White's kingside. 15 ♗g5 would have put Black in desperate straits because 15 ... ♗xg5 16 ♗xg5 f6 17 ♗c4+ ♗h8 18 ♗xf6 gxf6 19 ♗f7 is crushing.

15 ... ♗b8 16 ♗d2 ♗f6 17 ♗c4 g6 18 ♗h6 d5!

This and the following moves were played with the courage of despair. If Black does not do something he will simply get taken apart.

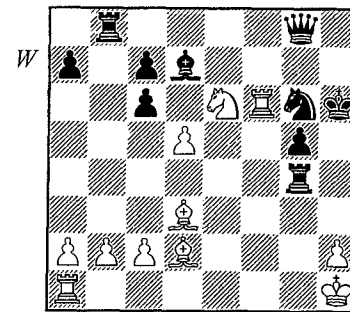


19 exd5 ♜e4! 20 fxe6 hxg6 21 ♗g5 ♗xg4+ 22 ♗h1 ♗g7

Trapping White's queen, which in fact is what my opponent had in mind!

23 ♗xg7+ ♗xg7 24 ♗xf7+ ♗h6 25 ♗e6+ g5 26 ♗f6+ ♗g6 27 ♗d3 ♗g8!

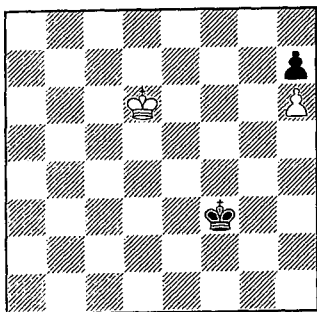
Not only defending the knight on g6 but envisaging an eventual counter-attack. The queen also stares at the pawn on d5 which is only covered by the knight on e6.



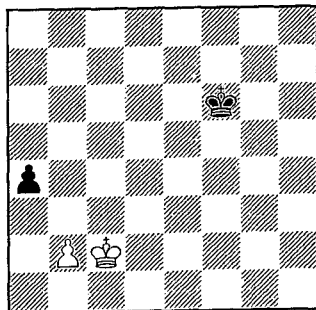
28 ♗xg5 ♗xd5+ 29 ♗f3+ ♗h5 30 h3 ♗g3 31 ♗e2 ♜e8 32 ♗f7 ♗xh3+ 33 ♗g1 ♗xe2 0:1

White has run out of attacking pieces.

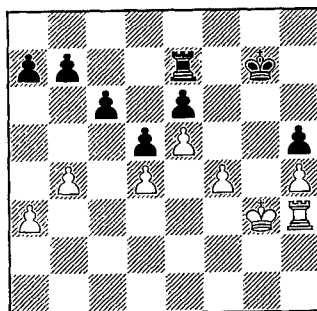
KM1/4: 1) White to play



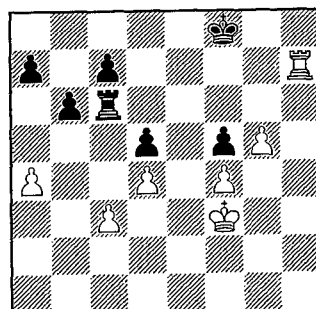
KM1/4: 2) White to play



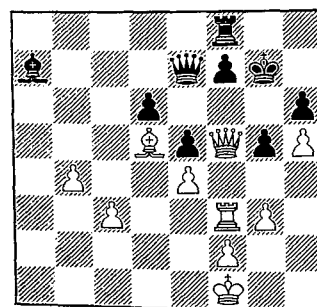
KM1/4: 3) White to play



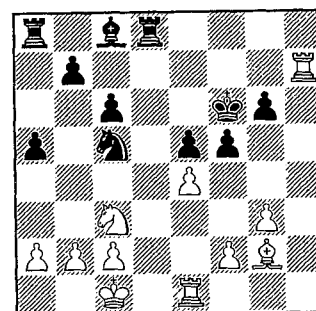
KM1/4: 4) White to play



A1/4: a) White to play



A1/4: b) White to play



## 2 The Remarkable Rook

The rook is sometimes seen as a rather dull piece, perhaps because it moves only in straight lines. Yet if you look behind the facade, you will find that the rook is, in fact, truly remarkable! It plays the major role in very many aspects of planning, in fact the whole idea of having open files is to provide highways for your rooks. Last month I examined the pawn storm, one of the main ideas of which is to bring rooks into play against the opposing monarch.

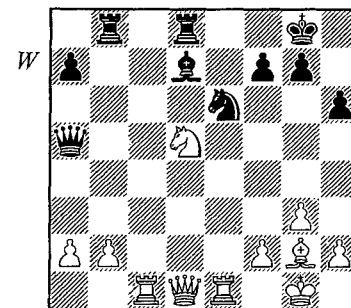
In the first week of this month's notes I will try to show some rather exciting rook play. Week two is about the rook's happiest hunting ground, the 7th and 8th ranks, week three is about open files and in week four I will address one of the key plans in chess, the process of making a half-open file fully open with a minority attack.

are exchanged, and in the endgame it can often be a match for two minor pieces.

Usually its role in the opening and early middle game is not such an active one, as engaging in hand-to-hand fighting at close quarters could mean its loss to a piece of lesser value. Yet occasionally we might see a great player make daring use of his rooks in the thick of middlegame combat.

The late Ukrainian GM, Leonid Stein could breathe life into his pieces and launch the most daring attacking plans. In the following position most players would be thinking about how to use White's extra pawn, but Stein found a way of transforming his material advantage into an attack against Black's king.

**Stein - Tarve  
Parnu 1971**



**Month 2/Week 1:  
The Raging Rook**

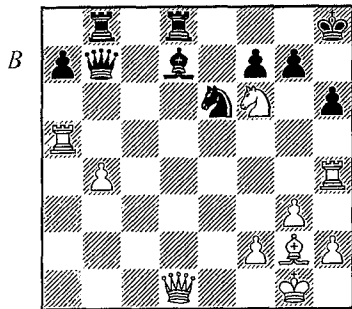
The fact that the rook moves in straight lines tends to make it more dangerous on open terrain in which there are relatively few obstacles to its freedom of movement. Its strength will therefore normally increase as more pawns and pieces

**23 b4! ♖xa2 24 ♖a1 ♖c4 25 ♖c4 ♖b5 26 ♖a5 ♖b7 27 ♖f6+! ♖h8**

If 27 ... gxf6 then 28 ♖g4+. Declining the sacrifice brings no great relief to Black.

**28 ♖h4!**

The speed at which White's rooks have been brought to bear on the enemy kingside is remarkable.



**28... ♖c6 29 ♖c1!**

Threatening both 30 ♖xh6+ and 30 ♖xc6.

**29 ... g5 30 ♖xg5!**

More artistic than the mundane 30 ♖xc6.

**30 ... ♖xg5 31 ♖xh6+ ♖g7 32 ♖xg5+ ♖f8 33 ♖h8+ 1:0**

The following game is an even more spectacular example of rook play by Stein against a former World Champion, Vassily Smyslov. Watch how his king's rook comes into the attack from its original square.

**Stein - Smyslov  
Moscow 1972**

**1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♖c3 e6 3 ♖f3 b6 4. e4 ♖b7 5 ♖e2!?**

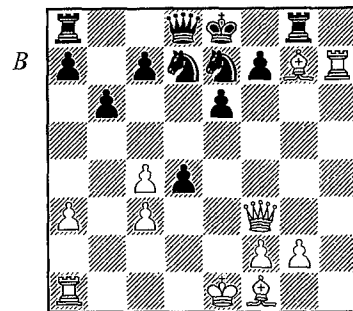
A relatively new idea at the time, which Viktor Korchnoi later adopted in his 1974 Candidates final match against Anatoly Karpov. One of the ideas is to castle long.

**5 ... ♖b4 6 e5 ♖g8 7 d4 d6 8 a3 ♖xc3+ 9 bxc3 ♖e7 10 h4!**

Aiming to make Black's kingside uninhabitable whilst developing the rook on h1. Smyslov tries to counterattack in the centre, but on his 11th move he might have been better advised to halt White's h-pawn with 11 ... h6.

**10 ... ♖d7 11 h5 ♖xf3 12 ♖xf3 dxe5 13 h6 gxh6 14 ♖xh6 exd4 15 ♖g7 ♖g8 16 ♖xh7!**

The rook comes directly from its home square into the attack. Stein's initiative grows whilst his own king sits dangerously in the centre. I only recommend this strategy to experienced (and brave) players!

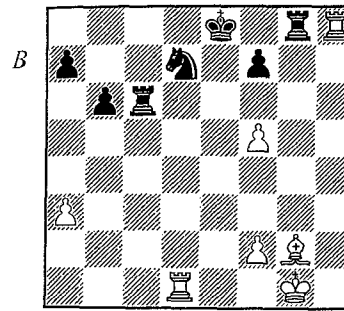


**16 ... ♖f5 17 ♖xd4 c5 18 g4! cxd4 19 gxf5 e5 20 ♖d5 ♖f8 21 cxd4 ♖c8 22 ♖d1 ♖e7 23 ♖g2 ♖g8 24 ♖b7 ♖xc4 25 dxe5 ♖xe5+ 26 ♖f1 ♖b5 27 ♖g1 ♖c6**

After 27 ... ♖cg4 White can win with 28 ♖c8+ ♖e7 29 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 30 ♖xd7+ etc. But how is he to proceed after the exchange of queens?

**28 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 29 ♖h8!!**

A brilliant solution, winning a piece; after 29 ... ♖xh8 30 ♖xc6 White picks up the knight on d7. Smyslov's choice does not help much either.



**29... ♖g6 30 fxe6 ♖xh8 31 ♖c6 ♖g8 32 ♖xd7+ ♖e7 33 ♖f5 fxe6 34 ♖d7+ ♖f6 35 ♖d3 ♖a8 1:0**

In case you think such rook play is a modern phenomenon, take a look at the following game in which the World Champion of 27 years duration, Dr. Emanuel Lasker, bamboozled his 1908 contender, Dr. Tarrasch, with a celebrated rook manoeuvre.

**Tarrasch - Lasker  
World Championship 1908**

**1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖b5 ♖f6 4 0-0 d6 5 d4 ♖d7 6 ♖c3 ♖e7 7 ♖e1**

**exd4 8 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 9 ♖xd4 ♖xb5 10 ♖xb5 0-0 11 ♖g5 h6 12 ♖h4 ♖e8 13 ♖ad1 ♖d7 14 ♖xe7 ♖xc7 15 ♖c3 ♖e5! 16 ♖d4**

16 ♖xc7 ♖c5! wins a piece, while 16 ♖xc7 ♖xb5 17 ♖xd6 ♖xd2 18 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 19 ♖xd7 ♖c8! and Black is better.

**16 ... ♖c5!**

Putting the rook into the danger zone. Tarrasch attempts to trap it, yet weakens his own position.

**17 ♖b3 ♖b6 18 f4 ♖f6 19 ♖f3 ♖e8 20 c3 a5 21 b3 a4 22 b4 ♖c4**

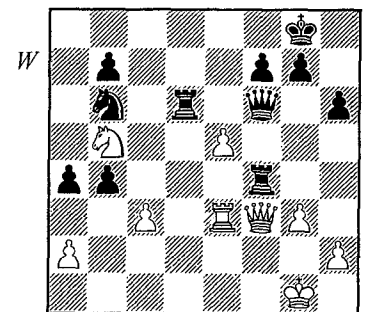
Moving further into enemy territory.

**23 g3 ♖d8 24 ♖e3 c5 25 ♖b5 cxb5 26 ♖xd6**

Tarrasch had thought this would refute Lasker's cheeky play, but there is a flaw in his calculations.

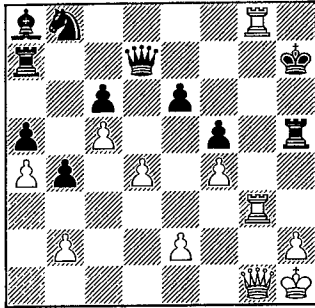
**26... ♖xd6 27 e5 ♖xf4!**

**Kapow!!**

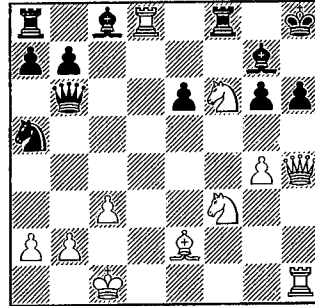


**28 gxf4 ♖g6+ 29 ♖h1 ♖b1+ 30 ♖g2 ♖d2+ 31 ♖e2 ♖xa2 32 ♖xd2 ♖xd2+ 33 ♖g3 a3 34 e6 ♖e1+ 35 ♖g4 ♖xe6+ 36 f5 ♖c4+ 37 ♖d4 a2 38 ♖d1 ♖d5 39 ♖a4 ♖xc3 40 ♖e8+ ♖h7 41 ♖h5 a1(♖) 1:0**

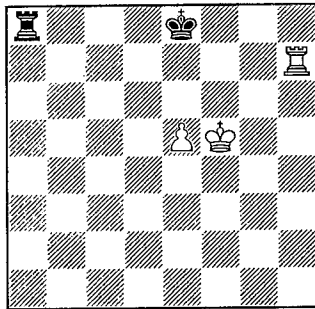
KM2/1: 1) White to play.



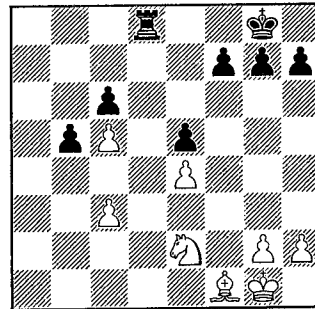
KM2/1: 2) White to play.



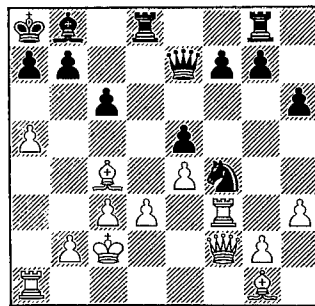
KM2/1: 3) Black to play



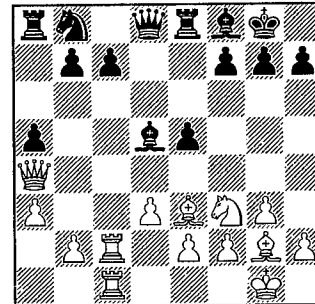
KM2/1: 4) Black to play



A2/1: a) White to play



A2/1: b) White to play



### Month 2/Week 2: The 7th and 8th Ranks

If a rook manages to penetrate the enemy defences it can literally wreak havoc, its traditional hunting ground being the 7th and 8th ranks. On the 7th rank it can tie down the opposing king whilst gorging itself on pawns. On the 8th rank it can pose an even more direct threat.

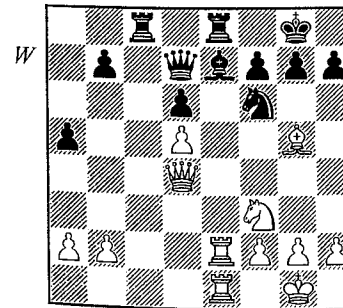
The following example is the most famous illustration of the weakness of the back rank:

#### Adams - Torre New Orleans 1920

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 exd4 4 ♙xd4 ♘c6 5 ♖b5 ♘d7 6 ♙xc6 ♙xc6 7 ♗c3 ♗f6 8 0-0 ♙e7 9 ♗d5 ♙xd5 10 exd5 0-0 11 ♙g5 c6

In this particular case it would be a good idea to interpolate 11 ... h6. The reason becomes patently clear in the subsequent play.

12 c4 cxd5 13 cxd5 a5 14 ♖fe1 ♖e8 15 ♗e2 ♗c8 16 ♗ae1 ♗d7



17 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 18 ♙g4!

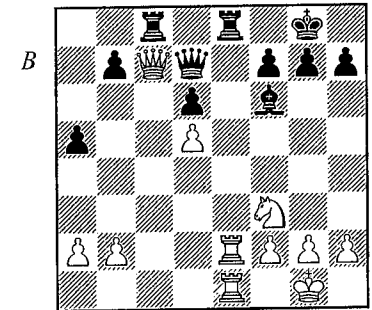
The first in a series of queen sacrifices. Her majesty is immune to capture because of 19 ♖xe8+ followed by mate, and there is only one reasonable square.

18 ... ♙b5 19 ♙c4!

The brilliance continues. White could not play 19 a4 because of 19 ... ♙xe2 20 ♖xe2 ♗c1+ mating.

19... ♙d7 20 ♙c7!

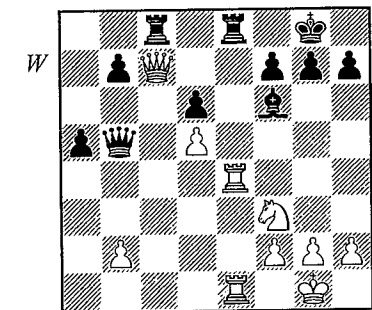
Offering the queen in the most spectacular manner yet. As usual it is immune to capture because of the mate on e8.



20... ♙b5

Should White now play 21 ♙xb7 the answer would be 21 ... ♙xe2!. But there is a better way.

21 a4! ♙xa4 22 ♖e4! ♙b5



**23 ♖xb7! 1:0**

The fourth and final queen sacrifice, to which there is no defence. Black's queen no longer has a square from which it can defend the rook on e8.

A rook on the 7th rank tends to be more interested in a possible pawn harvest, and restricting the movement of the opposing king than in direct attacking schemes. But, there are, nevertheless, spectacularly beautiful examples on record of rooks committing mayhem on the 7th.

In the next example Carlos Torre, the victim of Adams' spectacular coup in the previous game, brings off a famous victory of his own against Emmanuel Lasker. The type of combination used has the special name "The Mill".

**Torre - Lasker  
Moscow 1925**

1 d4 ♟f6 2 ♟f3 e6 3 ♟g5 c5 4 e3 cxd4 5 exd4 ♟e7 6 ♟bd2 d6 7 c3 ♟bd7 8 ♟d3 b6 9 ♟c4 ♟b7 10 ♖e2 ♖c7 11 0-0 0-0 12 ♜fe1 ♜fe8 13 ♜ad1 ♟f8 14 ♟c1 ♟d5 15 ♟g5

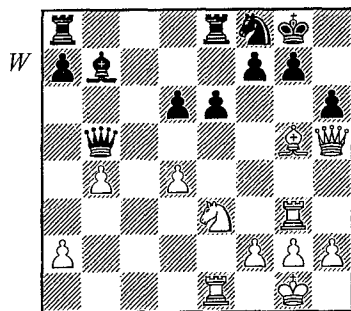
The young Mexican thinks in terms of attack without giving due consideration to Lasker's counterplay on the queenside. 15 ♟a3 a6 16 ♟c2 was more sound.

15 ... b5 16 ♟a3 b4 17 cxb4 ♟xb4 18 ♖h5 ♟xg5 19 ♟xg5 ♟xd3 20 ♜xd3 ♖a5 21 b4 ♖f5

Imprecise. The correct move was 21 ... ♖d5 after which 22 ♜g3? h6 23 ♟f6 ♟g6 24 ♖xd5 ♟xd5 would cost White a bishop. He should therefore play 22 ♖g4 after which 22 ... e5 would give Black the initiative.

22 ♜g3 h6 23 ♟c4 ♖d5 24 ♟e3 ♖b5?

Allowing the following beautiful combination. 24 ... ♖xd4 was mandatory.



25 ♟f6!! ♖xh5 26 ♜xg7+ ♟h8 27 ♜xf7+ ♟g8 28 ♜g7+ ♟h8 29 ♜xb7+ ♟g8 30 ♜g7+ ♟h8 31 ♜g5+ ♟h7 32 ♜xh5 ♟g6

After the brilliant 25 ♟f6!!, everything was forced. Black recovers the piece but remains three pawns down. The rest requires no further comment.

33 ♜h3 ♟xf6 34 ♜xh6+ ♟g5 35 ♜h3 ♜eb8 36 ♜g3+ ♟f6 37 ♜f3+ ♟g6 38 a3 a5 39 bxa5 ♜xa5 40 ♟c4 ♜d5 41 ♜f4 ♟d7 42 ♜xe6+ ♟g5 43 g3 1:0

In the final example we will look at the more usual advantage of a

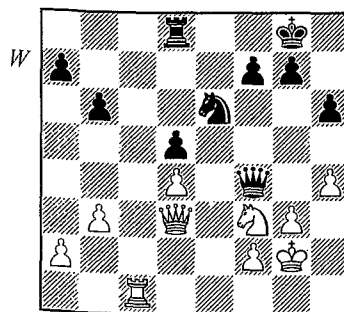
rook on the 7th rank. In the endgame it can use the 7th rank not only to harvest pawns but to keep the opposing king tied down to the back rank.

Tigran Petrosian makes a delicately judged pawn sacrifice in order to penetrate to the 7th rank with his rook. Not a spectacular game but more impressive than many conventional brilliancies. It proved to be the decisive moment in the match between these two great players.

**Petrosian - Portisch  
Palma de Mallorca 1974**

1 ♟f3 d5 2 d4 e6 3 c4 ♟f6 4 ♟g5 ♟e7 5 ♟c3 0-0 6 ♜c1 h6 7 ♟h4 b6 8 cxd5 ♟xd5 9 ♟xd5 exd5 10 ♟xe7 ♖xe7 11 g3 ♟a6 12 e3 c5 13 ♟xa6 ♟xa6 14 0-0 ♟c7 15 b3 ♜ac8 16 ♜e1 ♜fd8 17 h4 ♟e6 18 ♟d3 ♖f6 19 ♟g2 cxd4 20 exd4 ♜xc1 21 ♜xc1 ♖f4?!

Portisch used this trick to try and bring his queen to e4 or g4 with pressure on White's king. Petrosian's reply must have come as a shock.

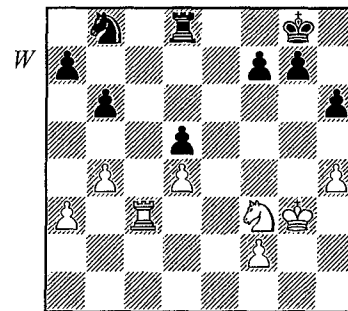


22 ♟xf4! ♟xf4+ 23 ♟g3 ♟xd3 24 ♜c3 ♟b4

The renowned Soviet endgame expert, Yuri Averbakh, suggested that Black might draw at this point with 24 ... ♟b2. Perhaps this was a better continuation, but White would recover his pawn with a good position after 25 ♜c7 a5 26 ♟e5 f6 27 ♟c6 etc.

25 a3 ♟a6 26 b4 ♟b8?

Probably the losing move, allowing White's rook to the 7th rank for free. Better was 26 ... ♜d7 as after 27 ♜c8+ ♟h7 28 b5 ♟c7 29 ♟e5 ♜e7 30 ♟c6 ♜d7 31 ♟xa7 ♟e8 Black has a tenable game.



27 ♜c7 a5 28 b5 ♟d7 29 ♟f4 h5 29 ... f6 allows 30 h5 followed by 31 ♟h4 with a bind.

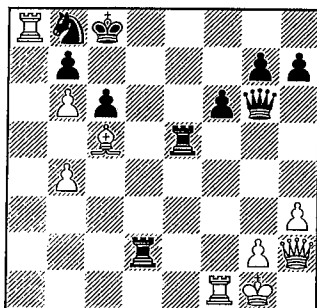
30 ♟e5 ♟f8

Black could not afford to exchange knights as 30 ... ♟xe5 31 ♟xe5 gives White a winning rook and pawn endgame.

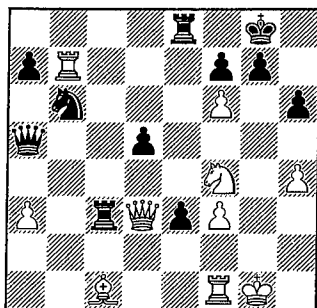
31 ♜b7 f6 32 ♟c6 ♟g6+ 33 ♟g3 ♜d6 34 ♜xb6 ♜e6 35 ♜b8+ ♟f8 36 ♜a8 ♜e1 37 ♟d8 ♟h7 38 b6 ♜b1 39 b7 ♟d7 40 ♜xa5 1:0



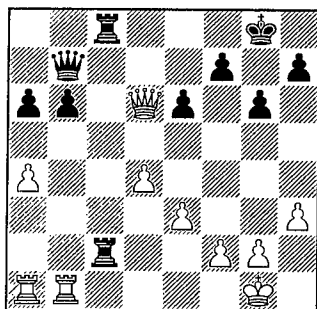
KM2/2: 1) White to play



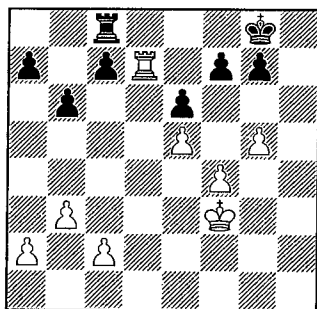
KM2/2: 2) White to play



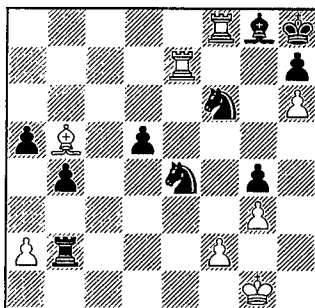
KM2/2: 3) Black to play



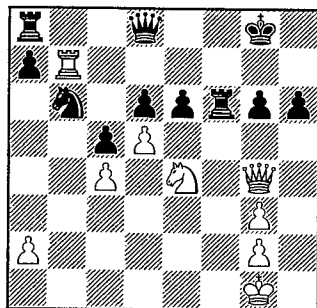
KM2/2: 4) White to play



A2/2: a) White to play.



A2/2: b) White to play



### Month 2/Week 3: Open Files

Having seen the havoc that a rook can create once it breaks into enemy lines, the next question is how to get it there. The most common means is through control of an open file.

In chapter one we saw rooks come into action against the opposing king by means of pawn storms. Now I am going to show you some rather less violent examples of simple positional pressure.

Battles in which control of an open file takes precedence over all other factors most commonly occur in queen's pawn openings arising after 1 d4 and 2 c4. These give rise to a very high incidence of c-file battles in which the side to gain control of this file will gain an advantage.

Here are two classic examples, the first featuring the brilliant Alexander Alekhine who unseated the "unbeatable" Cuban, Jose Raoul Capablanca, in their World Championship match of 1927.

#### Alekhine - Yates London 1922

1 d4 2 c4 e6 3 4 c3 5 e7 6 e3 7 c1 c6 8 c2 e8 9 d3 dxc4 10 xc4 d5 11 e4 f5?

A serious positional mistake, in fact after this weakening of e5

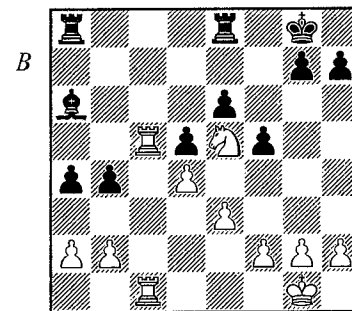
Alekhine considered Black's game "strategically lost". Of course it needs play of the highest class to exploit such a mistake to the full.

12 xe7 xe7 13 ed2 b5?

After this second mistake Black's game deteriorates still further. The best chance was 13 ... 5b6, though his position would be poor in any case.

14 xd5 cxd5 15 0-0 a5 16 b3 a4 17 c5 xc5 18 xc5 xc5 19 xc5 b4 20 fc1 a6 21 e5!

Achieving a picture of a position. Should Black now challenge rooks on the c-file he would lose material immediately: 21 ... fc8 22 xc8+ xc8 23 xc8+ xc8 24 c6 threatens both e7+ and the pawn on b4.

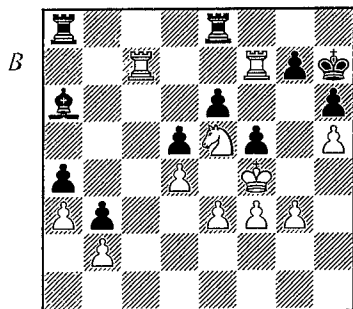


21 ... eb8 22 f3 b3 23 a3 h6 24 f2!

Bringing the king up to participate. We saw last month that such things are possible if the king is safe from attack.

24 ... h7 25 h4 f8 26 g3 fb8 27 c7 b5 28 1c5 a6 29 5c6 e8 30 f4 g8 31 h5!

♙f1 32 g3 ♙a6 33 ♖f7 ♔h7 34 ♖cc7



34 ... ♖g8 35 ♘d7!

Commencing the decisive manoeuvre. Black's reply is forced.

35 ... ♖h8 36 ♘f6! ♖gf8 37 ♖xg7!! ♖xf6 38 ♖e5! 1:0

An elegant finale. Whether Black retreats the attacked rook to f8 or brings its compatriot over to this square to support him, White mates with 39 ♖h7+ followed by 40 ♖cg7.

A game of unsurpassed elegance, though one might argue that Yates was rather co-operative in the early stages of this game. This is not the case in the following example, in which Savielly Tartakower has to work much harder to keep the edge and maintains it despite fierce resistance from his opponent.

### Reti - Tartakower Hastings 1926-7

1 ♘f3 ♘f6 2 d4 d5 3 c4 e6 4 ♘c3 ♙c7 5 ♙g5 h6 6 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 7 e3

0-0 8 ♖b3 dxc4 9 ♙xc4 c5 10 dxc5 ♘d7 11 ♘e4 ♘xc5!

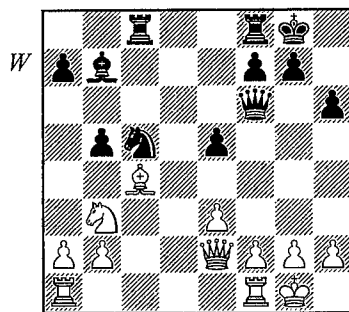
A little combination which recovers the pawn. In fact Black even gets a slight initiative as his pieces are better placed to operate on the open c-file.

12 ♘xf6+ ♖xf6 13 ♖c2 b6 14 0-0 ♙b7 15 ♘d4 ♖ac8!

The x-ray vision of the rook makes White's queen very uncomfortable on c2.

16 ♖e2 e5 17 ♘b3 b5!

Only thus does Black manage to keep the embers of his initiative alive. The point is that 18 ♙xb5 can be met by 18 ... ♘xb3 19 axb3 ♖g6 which wins after either 20 f3 ♖c2 or 20 e4 ♙xe4 21 f3 ♖c2 22 fxe4 ♖xe2 23 ♙xe2 ♖xe4.



18 ♘xc5 ♖xc5 19 ♙b3

One last point of the brilliant 17 ... b5! is that 19 ♙xb5 can be met by 19 ... ♖g6 as in the previous note.

19 ... a5!

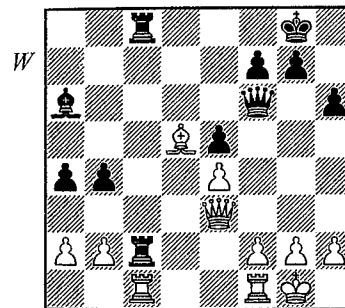
Stepping up the pressure on the queenside. Challenging for the c-file with 20 ♖ac1? is refuted by 20 ... ♖g6!

20 e4 ♖fc8! 21 ♖ad1 a4 22 ♙d5 ♙a6!

It is a far from obvious decision to leave White's bishop on d5. But with only major pieces on the board the position would be drawish.

23 ♖e3 b4 24 ♖c1 ♖c2!

Finally reaching the 7th rank, after which Black's initiative assumes menacing proportions. The immediate threats are to the rook on f1 and the b-pawn.



25 ♖xc2 ♖xc2 26 ♖b1 ♖e2!

Intensifying the pressure; both 27 ♖c5 and 27 ♖a7 lose the b-pawn after 27 ... ♙d3.

27 ♖f3 ♙d3! 28 ♖c1 ♖xb2 29 ♖xf6 gxf6 30 ♖c8+ ♖g7 31 h3 ♙b1 32 ♖b8 a3!

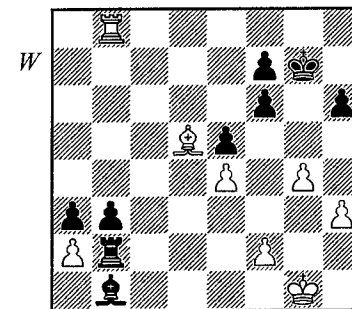
Winning a won game requires great precision, and the text move has a wonderful point in mind. The immediate 32 ... b3 33 axb3 a3 34 ♖a8 a2 35 b4 leaves Black unable to queen his a-pawn.

33 g4 b3!!

The point. This combinative solution cuts through the technical

problems to a clear win, a lesser player might have chosen 33 ... ♙xa2 which leads to a drawn endgame after 34 ♙xa2 ♖xa2 35 ♖xb4 ♖a1+ 36 ♖g2 a2 37 ♖a4 ♖e1 (otherwise there comes 38 f3) 38 ♖xa2 ♖xe4.

After 33 ... b3!!, 34 ♙xb3 ♙xa2 wins a bishop and 34 axb3 a2 35 ♖a8 ♙xe4! 36 ♙xe4 ♖b1+ 37 ♖g2 a1(♖) 38 ♖xa1 ♖xa1 leaves Black the exchange up with an easy win.



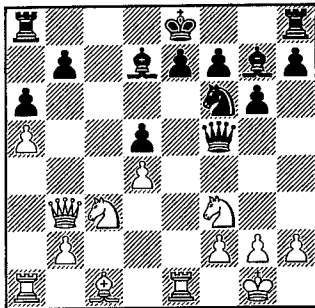
34 ♖xb3 ♖xb3 35 ♙xb3 ♙xe4 36 ♖h2 f5 37 gxf5 ♙xf5 38 ♖g3 f6!

Observing one of the golden rules of endgames, not to hurry. After the precipitous 38 ... ♙e6 39 ♙xe6 fxe6 40 ♖f3 ♖g6 41 ♖e4 the advantage has changed hands.

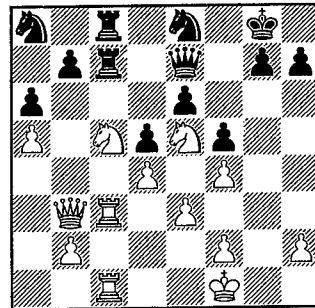
39 ♖h4 ♙g6 40 ♖g4 f5+! 41 ♖h4 ♖f6 42 ♙c2 f4 43 ♙b3 ♙f7 44 ♙x7 ♖xf7 45 ♖g4 ♖g6 0:1

A magnificent achievement by Tartakower, who rated this as one of his best games. It is very difficult to maintain control throughout such a game.

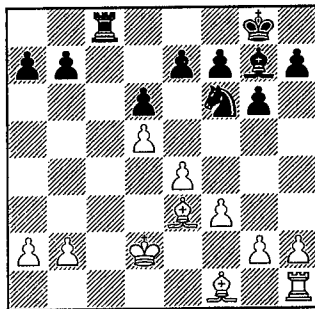
KM2/3: 1) White to play



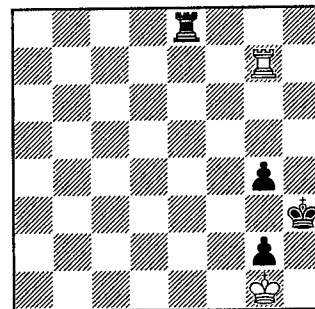
KM2/3: 2) White to play



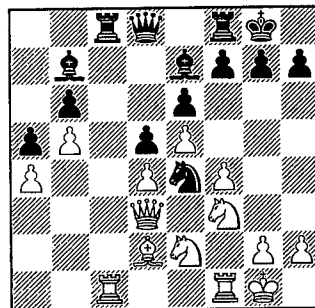
KM2/3: 3) White to play.



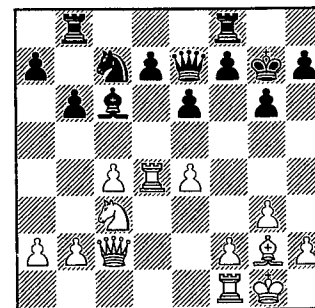
KM2/3: 4) White to play



A2/3: a) Black to play



A2/3: b) White to play



### Month 2/Week 4: The Minority Attack

The so-called minority attack is the procedure by which one uses a pawn lever in order to render a half-open file fully open. It is most commonly associated with the Exchange Variation of the Queen's Gambit Declined (1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 ♜f6 4 cxd5 exd5 and now 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♙d3 ♞bd7 8 ♚c2 c6 9 ♜f3 ♞e8 10 0-0 ♜f8 is typical) in which White aims to prise open the c-file with the advance b2-b4-b5.

The Exchange Variation of the Queen's Gambit might be considered the classic form, but is by no means the only type of minority attack. It occurs in many different openings and typifies much of the strategic thought in the Sicilian Defence, for example. Black's main source of counter-play in Open Sicilians lies in extending his control of the half-open c-file, often by advancing his b-pawn. White, on the other hand, will often try to prise open the d-file with the advance e4-e5.

In the 1991 World Junior Championships in Gaurapauva, I was the trainer of the English contingent. Whilst my charges were locked in mortal combat I spent the afternoons talking shop with IM Jeremy Silman and GM Anatoly Lein and it was from the Russian trained Lein that I learned a lot of ideas

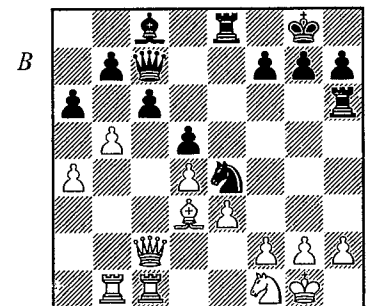
about minority attack play. Lein turned out to be a connoisseur of the structures arising from the QGD Exchange and showed that Black's counter-play on the kingside was not to be sneezed at. He kept bringing a rook to the third rank and from here it protected his weak c-pawn whilst threatening White's kingside, much as in the following game:

### Flohr - Apscheneek Kemer - Riga 1939

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♖c3 ♜f6 4 ♙g5 ♙e7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♜f3 c6 7 ♚c2 ♞bd7 8 cxd5 exd5 9 ♙d3 ♞e8 10 0-0 ♜f8 11 ♜e5 ♜g4 12 ♜xg4 ♙xg4 13 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 14 a3 ♞ad8 15 ♞fe1 ♞d6 16 ♜e2 ♞h6 17 ♜g3 ♙c8 18 b4!

Commencing the minority attack by playing for b4-b5. Black's next move is interesting, preparing to exchange as much of the queenside as possible, lest he is left with a second weak pawn on that side.

18 ... a6 19 ♞ab1 ♚c7 20 a4 ♜d7 21 ♞ec1 ♜f6 22 ♜f1 ♜e4 23 b5!



Thus White completes his strategic aim and Black is forced to accept some pawn weaknesses. Yet Black shows that they are not necessarily fatal and he goes on to develop strong counter-play against White's kingside.

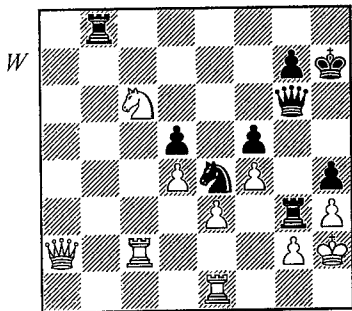
23 ... axb5 24 axb5 ♙d7 25 ♖a2 ♗d8 26 bxc6 ♙xc6 27 ♙b5 ♙g6 28 ♙xc6 bxc6 29 ♚b2 h5 30 ♚bc2 ♗d7 31 ♚h1 h4!

The attack begins in earnest. The immediate threat is 32 ... h3 and a sacrifice against g2 is also in the air.

32 h3 ♗f5 33 ♘h2 ♗g5 34 ♘g4 f5 35 f4 ♗h5 36 ♘e5 ♙g3 37 ♙e1

Discretion is the better part of valour. White could have won a pawn with 37 ♙xc6 ♙xe3 38 ♗xd5+ but after 38 ... ♚h7 he is left facing serious threats to his own king.

37 ... ♚b8 38 ♚h2 ♚h7 39 ♘xc6 ♗g6



Leaving the rook on b8 to its fate. After 40 ♘xb8 Black can draw at least with 40 ... ♙xh3+ 41 gxh3 ♗g3+ 42 ♚h1 ♗xe1+ 43 ♚g2

♘g3 (threatening 44 ... ♗f1+ and 45 ... ♗h1 mate) 44 ♚f3 ♗d1+ 45 ♙c2 ♗h1+ 45 ♙g2 ♗d1+ etc.

40 ♙g1 ♙xe3 41 ♘xb8 ♗g3+ 42 ♚h1 ♙e1 ½-½

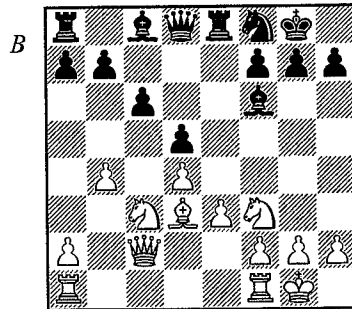
White cannot avoid perpetual check.

This kind of kingside counter-play is one of the main methods of answering the minority attack. Many players of the black side make the mistake of playing too passively, as in the next game.

**Reshevsky - Miagmarsuren  
Sousse Interzonal 1967**

1 d4 e6 2 c4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 cxd5 exd5 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♙d3 c6 8 ♗c2 ♘bd7 9 ♘f3 ♙e8 10 0-0 ♘f8 11 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 12 b4

White's 11 ♙xf6 allowed him to get this in immediately.



12 ... ♙g4 13 ♘d2 ♙c8 14 ♙f5 ♙xf5 15 ♗xf5 g6?!

A passive continuation in that it blocks the route for a Black rook to

come to h6. A more dynamic treatment was seen in Euwe-Guimard, New York 1951: 15 ... ♙e7!? 16 ♙ab1 a6 17 a4 ♙d6 18 ♙b3?! ♙e6! 19 ♙fb1 ♙f6 20 ♗d3 ♙h6 21 f4 g5! with an attack.

16 ♗d3 ♗d6 17 ♙fb1 ♙g7 18. a4 ♘d7 19 ♙a2 ♙e6 20 ♙c2 ♙ce8 21 ♘b3 ♘f6?!

Black should try to lever open the e-file with 21 ... f5!? Now Reshevsky gradually engineers his breakthrough.

22 h3 b6 23 ♘c1 ♙h6 24 ♘le2 ♘h5 25 b5! ♗d7 26 bxc6 ♙xc6 27 ♗b5 ♙ec8 28 ♙bc1 ♙8c7? 29 g4 a6 30 ♗xa6 ♘f6 31 ♘xd5 ♘xg4 32 ♙xc6 ♗xd5 33 ♗a8+ 1:0

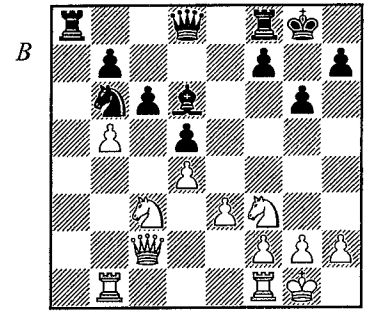
After 33 ... ♚g7 34 ♙xg6+, Black loses a whole queen.

To restore the balance, the last game is a Black win. In this game the exchange of light-squared bishops gives Black control of the c4-square.

**Inkirov - Yusupov A  
Dubai Olympiad 1986**

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 c6 4 ♘c3 ♘f6 5 cxd5 exd5 6 ♗c2 ♙e7 7 ♙g5 g6! 8 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 9 e3 ♙f5 10 ♙d3 ♙xd3 11 ♗xd3 ♘d7 12 0-0 ♙e7 13 ♙ab1 a5 14 a3 0-0 15 ♗c2 ♙d6 16 b4 axb4 17 axb4 ♘b6! 18 b5?! (D)

White proceeds with the usual formula but Black's knight should have been stopped from coming to c4. The right move was 18 ♘d2.



18 ... ♘c4 19 ♙a1 ♗c7 20 bxc6 ♗xc6!

Well played! Rather than playing the automatic 20 ... bxc6, Yusupov sees that his passed b-pawn can become a potent force. The weak b7- and d5-pawns are inaccessible at the moment.

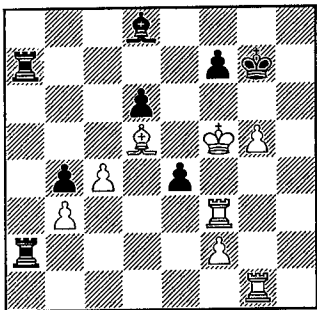
Inkirov's next move allows Black to take charge. He should stop the b-pawn with 21 ♗b3 after which 21 ... ♙fc8 22 ♙xa8 ♙xa8 23 ♘b5 keeps control.

21 e4? ♙xa1 22 ♙xa1 ♘b6 23 ♗b3 ♙c8 24 ♘e2!?

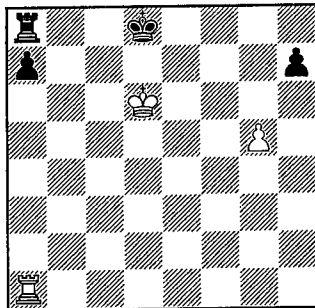
Sensing his growing positional inferiority, White plays for complications, but Artur Yusupov is a difficult man to swindle. The consistent line of play was 24 ♘xd5 but after 24 ... ♘xd5 25 exd5 ♗c1+ 26 ♗d1 ♗c4 27 ♙b1 ♗xd5 28 ♗d3 b5! (Yusupov and Dvoretzky) the passed b-pawn is very dangerous.

24...dxe4 25 ♘g5 ♙c7 26 h4? ♘c4 27 ♗h3 h6 28 h5 ♗d5! 29 ♙a8+ ♚g7 30 hxg6 ♗xg5 31 gxh7 ♚xf7 32 d5 ♗xd5 33 ♘d4 ♘b6 34 ♗xh6 ♘xa8 35 ♗h7+ ♚e8 0:1

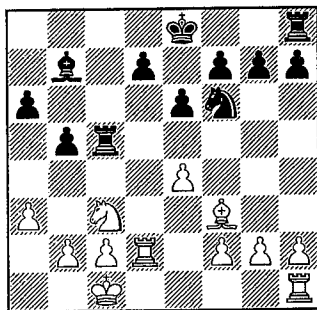
KM2/4: 1) White to play



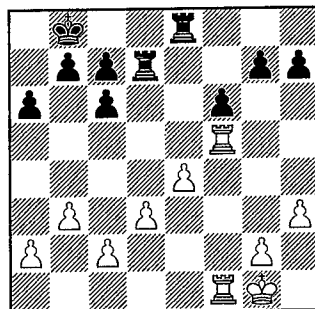
KM2/4: 2) White to play



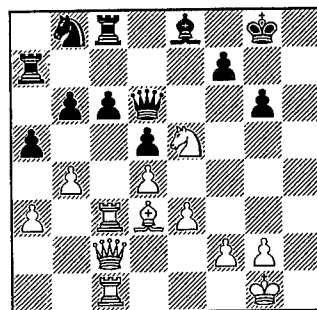
KM2/4: 3) Black to play



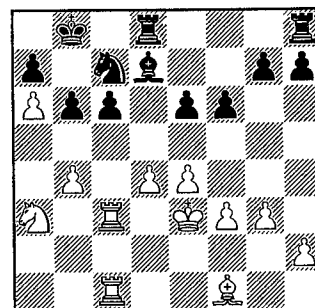
KM2/4: 4) White to play



A2/4: a) White to play



A2/4: b) White to play



### 3 The Beautiful Bishop

The strengths and weaknesses of the bishops in a chess game have a major impact on pawn structure and on strategy. The unique feature of this piece, of course, is that it can operate on squares of only one colour.

When a bishop is active, it can strike out across the board with great effect, and in week 1 we will see examples of active bishops having a decisive influence on the game. In week 2 we see the bishop being inhibited by its own pawns, the so-called “bad bishop”. In week 3 we examine some “bishop pair” scenarios and in week 4 some positions in which the players have bishops of opposite colours.

#### Month 3/Week 1: The Good Bishop

Bishops, in contrast to knights, prefer open positions in which their influence is not inhibited by blocked pawn chains. The activity of a bishop therefore reaches its peak in positions in which the central pawn structure has been partly or fully dissolved. Certain opening variations lead to set-ups in which the activity of a particular bishop can be the key factor. One such opening is the King’s Indian Defence, in which Black’s dark

squared bishop can, under the right conditions, breathe fire, as in the following encounter:

#### Zita - Bronstein Prague 1946

1 e4 e5 2 ♘c3 ♘f6 3 ♘f3 d6 4 d4 ♘bd7 5 g3 g6 6 ♙g2 ♙g7 7 0-0 0-0 8 b3 c6 9 ♙b2?!

Theory later decided that 9 e4 was better, in order to develop this bishop on e3.

9... ♖e8 10 e4 exd4 11 ♘xd4 ♗b6 12 ♗d2?!

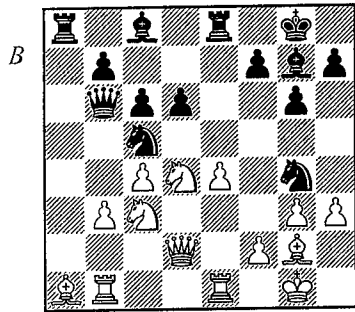
12 ♘a4 ♗c7 13 ♗c2 was a better way to play it for White. Now Black seizes the initiative.

12... ♘c5 13 ♗fe1 a5 14 ♖ab1 a4 15 ♙a1?!

White seems blissfully unaware of the gathering storm. He could have tried to complicate matters with Reuben Fine’s suggestion of 15 bxa4!? after which 15 ... ♘xa4 allows 16 ♘xa4 ♖xa4 17 ♘xc6! ♗xc6 (or 17 ... bxc6 18 ♙xf6 with a discovered attack on the Black queen) 18 e5.

15... axb3 16 axb3 ♘g4! 17 h3 (D) 17... ♖xa1!!

The first in a series of thunderbolts that unleash the power of Black’s dark squared King’s Indian bishop. White’s reply is evidently forced.



18  $\text{Bxa1 Bxf2!!}$

This second sacrifice is the point of the first.

19  $\text{Ke3}$

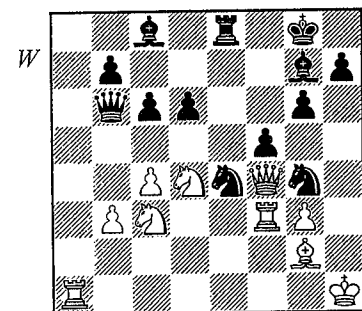
White tries to hold his position together by blocking the b6-g1 diagonal, but now Black gains a second pawn for the exchange, leaving White's position in tatters. If 19  $\text{Wxf2}$  then 19 ...  $\text{Qd3}$  is devastating while if 19  $\text{Qxf2 Qxb3}$ .

19...  $\text{Qxh3+ 20 Qh2 Qf2}$

The knight returns to threaten 21...  $\text{Qg4+}$ .

21  $\text{Rf3 Qxc4 22 Wf4 Qg4+ 23 Qh1 f5!}$

Cementing the position of the Black pieces in the centre. White's game is hopeless.



24  $\text{Qxe4 Qxe4 25 Wxd6 Qxd4 26 Wb8 Qd8 27 Qa8 Qe5 28 Wa7 Wb4 29 Wg1 Wf8 30 Qh3 Wh6 0:1}$

The second game was played by Alexander Alekhine a few years before his death. It features another opening in which the king's bishop can have a decisive influence, the Ruy Lopez or Spanish Opening:

### Alekhine - Junge Lublin 1942

1 e4 e5 2  $\text{Qf3 Qc6 3 Qb5 a6 4 Qa4 Qf6 5 0-0 Qe7 6 We2}$

The so-called Worrall Attack, a favourite of Alekhine's which was later used by Nigel Short in his 1992 match victory over Anatoly Karpov. One of the ideas is to make room for a rook on d1, and thereby intensify the pressure on the d-file.

6 ...  $\text{b5 7 Qb3 0-0 8 c3 d5 9 d3 dxe4?!}$

The opening of the d-file is advantageous to White. The critical line is 9 ...  $\text{d4}$  intending to meet 10  $\text{cxd4}$  in gambit style with 10 ...  $\text{Qg4!}$ .

10  $\text{dxe4 Qg4 11 h3 Qh5 12 Qg5}$

Alekhine commented that this prevents 12 ...  $\text{Qa5}$  which would be refuted by 13  $\text{g4 Qg6}$  14  $\text{Qxe5}$ , winning a pawn. In this way White keeps his bishop on b3.

12...  $\text{Qe8 13 Qxe7 Qxf3}$

After the immediate 13 ...  $\text{Qxe7}$  White would again win the e-pawn with 14  $\text{g4}$  etc.

14  $\text{Wxf3 Qxe7 15 Qd1 Qd6 16 Qd2 c6}$

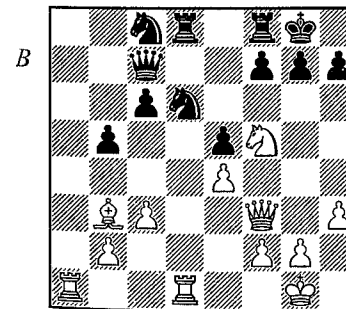
Alekhine felt that 16 ...  $\text{Qh8}$  was better in order to play the aggressive 17 ...  $\text{f5}$  should White play 17  $\text{Qf1}$ .

17  $\text{Qf1 Wc7 18 a4!}$

The opening of the a-file intensifies White's pressure.

18 ...  $\text{Qad8 19 Qg3 Qec8 20 axb5 axb5 21 Qf5!}$

White must hurry as Black intends to interrupt the bishop's diagonal with 21 ...  $\text{Qb6}$  and 22 ...  $\text{Qbc4}$ . Should Black now capture on f5 with 21 ...  $\text{Qxf5}$ , White would obtain a new attacking weapon with 22  $\text{exf5!}$ , threatening to disrupt Black's king's position with 23  $\text{f6!}$ .



21...  $\text{Qb6 22 We3!}$

Threatening not only 23  $\text{Wg5! Qxf5 24 exf5 Qd7 25 Qxd7! Qxd7 26 f6 g6 27 Wh6}$ , with mate to follow, but also simply 23  $\text{Qxd6 Qxd6 24 Qxd6}$ , picking up the

knight on b6. Should Black attempt to defend with 23 ...  $\text{Qbc4}$ , Alekhine claimed that White would have a decisive positional advantage after 23  $\text{Qxc4 bxc4 24 Wc5!}$  etc.

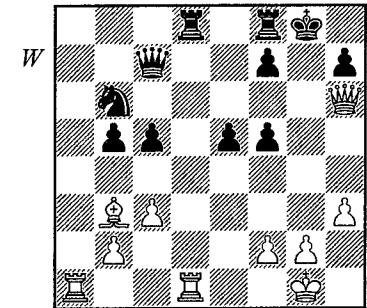
22...  $\text{Qxf5 23 exf5 c5}$

After 23 ...  $\text{Qd5}$  there follows 24  $\text{Wf3 Qf6 25 g4!}$  with decisive pressure on the kingside.

24  $\text{f6! gxf6}$

The threat was 25  $\text{Wg5}$ .

25  $\text{Wh6 f5}$



26  $\text{Qxf7+!}$

It is fitting that the decisive blow should be delivered by this bishop.

26 ...  $\text{Wxf7}$

If 26 ...  $\text{Qxf7}$  then 27  $\text{Wxh7+}$  picking up the queen, or if 26 ...  $\text{Qxf7}$  then 27  $\text{Wg5+}$  wins the rook on d8.

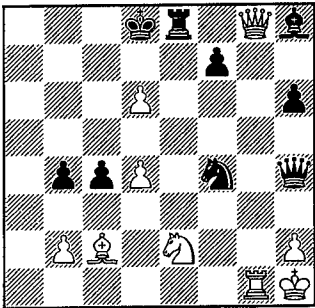
27  $\text{Qxd8 Qa4}$

Once again 27 ...  $\text{Qxd8 28 Wg5+}$  wins the rook on d8.

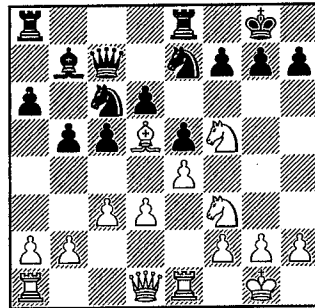
28  $\text{b3! 1:0}$

If 28 ...  $\text{Qxc3}$  then 29  $\text{Qa8}$  leads to mate, 28 ...  $\text{Qxd8}$  is refuted by 29  $\text{Wg5+}$  and 28...  $\text{Wxb3}$  allows mate on f8.

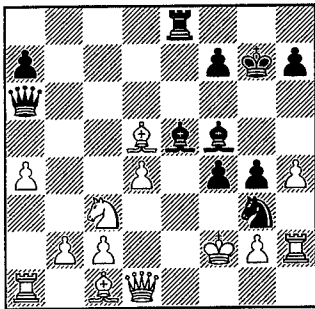
KM3/1: 1) White to play



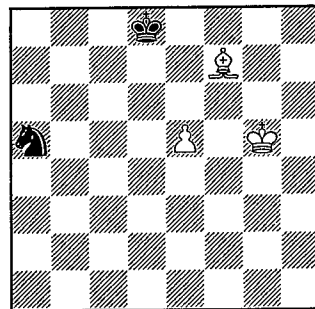
KM3/1: 2) White to play



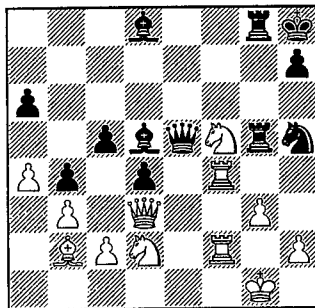
KM3/1: 3) Black to play



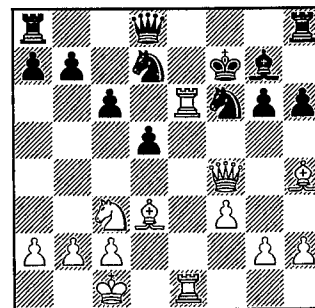
KM3/1: 4) White to play



A3/1: a) White to play



A3/1: b) White to play



**Month 3/ Week 2:  
The Bad Bishop**

A bad bishop is one which is shut in by its own pawns. This is why the textbooks often advise putting your pawns on the opposite colour to your bishop, if you have only one of them left. If you have, say, a light squared bishop and your pawns on light squares too, you may find your dark squares are vulnerable.

Ulf Andersson discovered this to his cost in the following game against Tony Miles. Your bishops and pawns should cooperate rather than duplicate each others work.

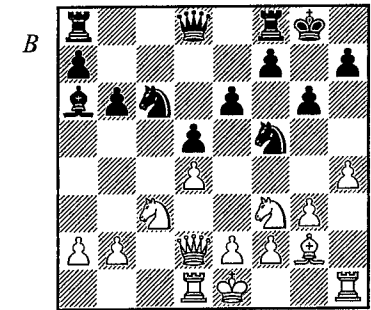
**Miles - Andersson  
Las Palmas 1980**

1 g3 c5 2 ♖g2 ♜c6 3 ♞f3 g6 4 c3 ♙g7 5 d4 cxd4 6 cxd4 d5 7 ♞c3 e6 8 ♙f4 ♞ge7 9 ♚d2

An interesting plan to initiate active play on the kingside and exchange Black's "good" dark-squared bishop with ♙h6. This would leave him with a "bad" bishop on c8 which is blocked in by the light-square pawns.

Black should meet this plan energetically with 9 ... ♞f5 10 ♞b5 0-0 11 g4 ♞fxd4 12 ♞fxd4 ♞xd4 13 ♞xd4 e5 14 ♙e3 exd4 15 ♙xd4 ♙xd4 16 ♚xd4 after which the weakness of g4 compensates for the isolated d-pawn.

9 ... 0-0?! 10 ♙h6 ♙xh6 11 ♚xh6 ♞f5 12 ♚d2 b6 13 ♞d1 ♙a6 14 h4



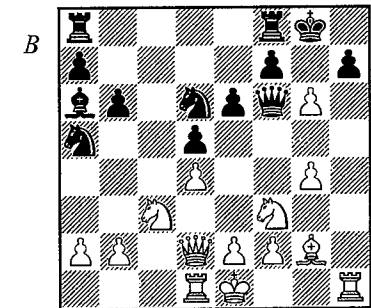
14 ... ♞a5?

A poor move which decentralises the knight. Probably Andersson had a specific tactical variation based on ... ♞c4 in mind when playing this move, but it does not seem to work. There were a large number of good alternatives including 14 ... ♞c8, 14 ... ♚f6 and even 14 ... ♙f6!? or 14 ... h5.

15 g4 ♞d6

White can meet 15 ... ♞c4 with the calm 16 ♚c1 ♞fd6 17 b3.

16 h5 ♚f6 17 hxg6



**17 ... fxg6**

If 17 ... hxg6 then 18 g5 ♖e7 (or 18 ... ♖g7 19 ♖f4 threatens ♜e5-g4-f6+) 19 ♖f4 ♜g7 20 ♖e5+ f6 21 gxf6+ ♜xf6 22 ♜xd5! is deadly.

**18 ♖h6 ♜f7**

There is no real alternative. If 18 ... ♖g7 there is 19 ♖xg7+ ♜xg7 20 ♜g5, 18 ... ♖f7 is met by 19 ♖h4 threatening 20 ♜g5 and 18 ... ♖e7 19 ♜e5 is no better

**19 g5! ♖g7 20 ♜e5 ♖xh6**

The endgame is horrible for Black but 20 ... ♜ff8? 21 ♜xd5 wins immediately.

**21 ♜xh6 ♜ff8 22 ♜d7 ♜f7 23 ♜f6+ ♜h8 24 ♜h3! ♜c8**

If 24 ... ♜f5 then 25 ♜xf5 gxf5 26 ♜d2 ♜c4+ 27 ♜c1 ♜b8 (or 27 ... ♜c8 28 ♜dh1 ♜cc7 29 ♜e8) 28 ♜dh1 ♜bb7 29 ♜h5 wins.

**25 ♜d2! ♖g7 26 f4!**

It was not too late to mess it up by overlooking the threat of 26 ... ♜f7, picking up the g-pawn.

**26 ... ♜b8 27 ♜h1 ♜ac4+ 28 ♜d3 ♜bb7 29 b3 ♜a3 30 e4! dxe4+ 31 ♜cxe4 ♜xe4 32 ♜xe4 ♜b5**

Or 32 ... ♜bc7 33 ♜e5 ♜b7 34 ♜h2 ♜c1 35 ♜f5 ♜e1+ 36 ♜e4 etc.

**33 ♜e5 ♜be7 34 ♜f1 1:0**

After 34 ... ♜c7 35 ♜d3 there is no defence to the threat of 36 ♜xg6!

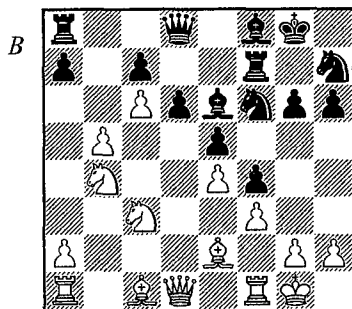
The next example also features a “bad bishop”, but in this case it decides the game in its owner’s favour! The great difference is that

the bishop becomes active *outside* Black’s pawn chain and plays a major part in the attack on White’s king:

**Krogius - Stein  
USSR 1960**

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 ♜g7 4 e4 0-0 5 ♜e2 d6 6 ♜f3 e5 7 d5 h6?! 8 0-0?! ♜h7 9 ♜e1 ♜d7 10 ♜d3 f5 11 f3 f4 12 b4 ♜f7 13 c5 ♜df6 14 c6 bxc6! 15 dxc6 ♜e6 16 b5 ♜f8 17 ♜b4

The middlegame position we have reached looks very strong for White, in view of the imminent arrival of one of his knights on d5. In particular, Black’s bishop on f8 looks like a miserable piece, but this is about to change dramatically. The following series of sacrifices sets the board on fire and Black’s dark-squared bishop becomes the key attacking piece.

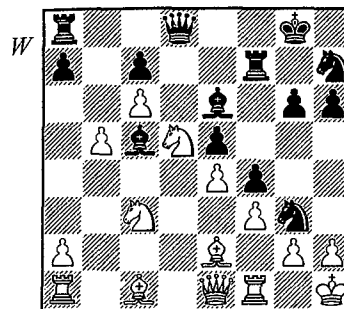
**17... d5!! 18 ♜bxd5**

After 18 exd5 ♜f5 19 ♜d3 ♜h5 Black threatens ... ♜xd3 followed

by ... ♜c5+ and ... ♜g3+ with a mating attack.

**18 ... ♜c5+ 19 ♜h1 ♜h5 20 ♖e1 ♜g3+!**

This must have come as an unpleasant shock, as Krogius no doubt thought he had prevented this move.

**21 hxg3 ♖g5 22 g4 h5 23 g3**

Making room for the king on g2. There is no time to drive the “bad bishop” on c5 from its magnificent post, e.g. 23 ♜a4 hxg4 24 ♜xc5 g3 leads to mate.

**23 ... hxg4 24 ♜g2 ♜af8!**

A truly amazing follow up to the orgy of violence we have just witnessed. After sacrificing the piece, Stein continues to quietly build his attack.

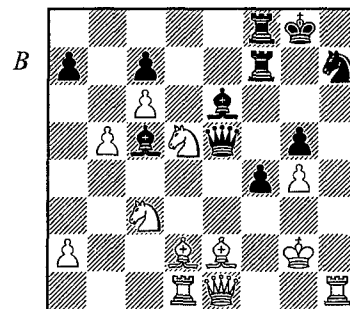
White’s king position can be prised open at almost any moment, but Black needs to bring up the reserves before he can count on success in the ensuing hand to hand fighting.

**25 ♜d2 ♖h6 26 ♜h1 ♖g7 27 gxf4 exf4 28 ♜d1 g5!**

Preparing a further kingside advance with ... gxf3+ followed by ... g4.

**29 e5 ♖xe5 30 fxg4**

Krogius may now have been expecting 30 ... ♜xd5+ 31 ♜xd5 ♖xd5+ 32 ♜f3 ♖xa2 33 ♖e5 when White has suddenly taken the initiative. Stein’s next move must have come as a shock.

**30 ... ♖xe2+! 31 ♖xe2**

There is really no alternative to the immediate return of the queen. After 31 ♜xe2 ♜xd5+ 32 ♜h2 (or 32 ♜f1 f3 33 ♜g3 ♜c4+) 32... ♜f6, Black threatens ... ♜h7+.

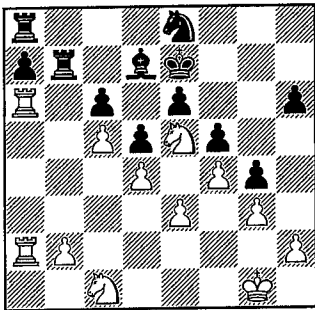
**31 ... f3+ 32 ♖xf3 ♖xf3**

Material parity has finally been restored, but positionally speaking matters are far from equal. Black’s active rooks and bishops are terribly strong, and White now starts to unload material in a vain attempt to fend off the threats.

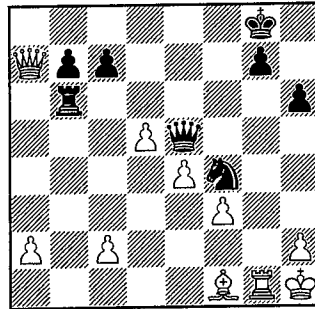
**33 ♜hf1 ♜xg4 34 ♜e4 ♜h3+ 35 ♜h2 ♜xf1 36 ♜xf1 ♜xf1 37 ♜xc5 ♜f2+ 38 ♜g1 ♜xd2 39 ♜xc7 ♜h3 40 a4 ♖g2+ 41 ♜h1 ♜f6 42 a5 ♜g4 43 ♜e4 ♜e2 0:1**



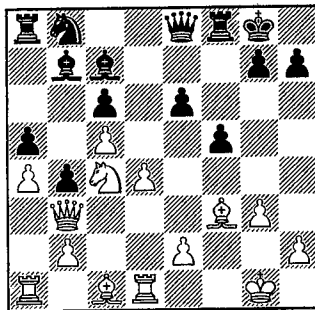
KM3/2: 1) White to play



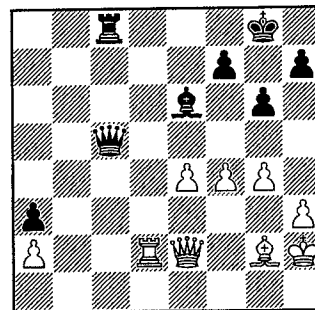
KM3/2: 2) White to play



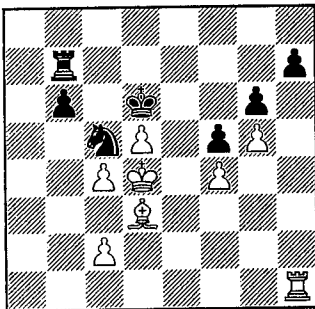
KM3/2: 3) White to play



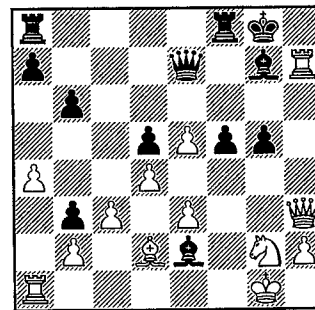
KM3/2: 4) Black to play



A3/2: a) White to play



A3/2: b) White to play



### Month 3/Week 3: The Two Bishops

Two bishops harmonise very well, as they cover squares of both colours and can strike out at every part of the board. When one player has the bishop pair and the other a different set of minor pieces, this can often constitute a big, and sometimes even a decisive advantage.

As with a single bishop, the bishop pair functions most effectively in open positions. I would like to draw particular attention to their value in the endgame. The following two examples feature two great players, Smyslov and Flohr, working to enhance the value of the bishops by gradually prising the position open.

#### Bondarevsky - Smyslov USSR Ch., Moscow 1946

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♗f6 5 0-0 ♗e7 6 ♗xc6

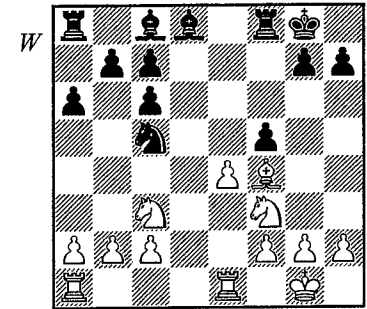
An unusual continuation which aims to compromise Black's pawn structure. The drawback, of course, is that it surrenders the two bishops.

6 ... dxc6 7 ♖e1 ♗d7 8 d4 exd4 9 ♗xd4 0-0 10 ♗f4 ♗c5 11 ♗xd8 ♗xd8 12 ♗c3 f5!

A very strong and instructive move, Black wants to open up the position for his two bishops. In the game, White takes the opportunity

to establish a passed e-pawn, but when this reaches e5 it can be firmly blocked, and it then also inhibits the activity of White's dark-squared bishop.

White should now have played 13 ♗g5!, when Smyslov gives the line 13 ... ♗xg5 14 ♗xg5 h6 15 b4 ♗xe4 16 ♗gxe4 fxe4 17 ♗xe4 ♗f5 with equality.



13 e5 ♗e6 14 ♗d2 g5!

The start of a kingside pawn advance, which in addition to gaining space, prevents White from exchanging Black's powerful blocking e6-knight with ♗c3-e2-f4. White's coming difficulties stem from the fact that he has no strong points in the centre on which to post his pieces.

15 ♗e2 c5 16 ♗c3 b5!

Having gained space on the kingside, Smyslov advances his queenside pawn majority as well. The immediate threat is 17...g4 18.♗d2 b4 winning a piece.

So far Black's mighty bishop pair have been dozing quietly on

the back rank, but they are about to come into their own.

17 b3 ♖b7 18 ♖g3 g4 19 ♖d2 ♗e7 20 ♖h5 ♗f7!

Black's king will also take part in the struggle; as we saw in chapter 1, he can adopt an aggressive role in the game once his safety isn't a problem. By coming to g6 he will not only support the f5 pawn but also harass White's knight on h5.

21 ♖f1 ♖g6 22 ♖f6 ♖ad8 23 ♖ad1 ♖xd1 24 ♖xd1 ♖d8 25 ♖xd8 ♗xd8

The simplification brought about by the exchange of rooks has not eased White's problems. The possibility of ...♖d4 is a deeply disturbing one for White's knight on f6, as it would then be deprived of the latent protection of the bishop on c3.

26 ♖e3 f4!

White evidently missed this move, his knight on e3 is forced to go back as both 27 ♖exg4 h5 and 27 ♖ed5 c6 would cost a piece.

27 ♖d1 ♗xf6

Finally giving up the bishops in order to win material.

28 exf6 ♗e4 29 ♗b2 b4

Depriving White's knight of the c3-square is a higher priority than winning the c2-pawn. In fact White loses a piece after 30 c3 ♗c2!

30 f3 ♗xc2 31 ♖f2 gxf3 32 gxf3 ♗b1

Winning a second pawn because 33 a3 is met by 33 ... ♗c2.

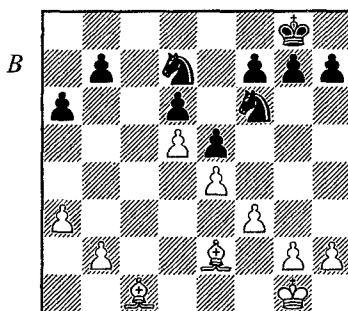
33 ♖e4 ♗xa2 34 ♖d2 a5 35 ♗f2 ♖d4 36 ♗xd4 cxd4 37 ♗e2 ♗xf6 38 ♗d3 ♗e5 39 ♗c2

Black also wins easily after either 39 ♗c4 a4 40 ♗xb4 ♗xb3 or 39 ♖c4+ ♗d5 40 ♖xa5 ♗b1+ etc.

39 ... a4 40 bxa4 c5 41 a5 c4 42 a6 d3+ 0:1

Black wins after either 43 ♗d1 c3 44 a7 ♗d5 or 43 ♗b2 c3+ 44. ♗xa2 cxd2 45 a7 d1(♖) 46 a8(♖) b3+ etc.

### Flohr - Botvinnik USSR (match) 1933



In this endgame position White's two bishops mean little for the moment. The position is relatively closed and the symmetrical pawn structure makes it difficult for either side to create passed pawns. This last factor is especially important, since the player with two bishops often has good winning chances if he can create a passed pawn, otherwise the result is likely to be a draw.

Flohr handles the position with great skill, gradually provoking weaknesses, and attempting to open things up.

24 ... ♗f8 25 ♗f2 ♗e7 26 ♗e3 ♗d8 27 ♗e1 ♗c7 28 ♗d2 ♖c5 29 b4 ♖cd7?!

Missing his first opportunity to create an outpost for the knight on a4 and thereby prevent White from making further progress on the queenside. White should have denied his opponent a second chance by playing 30 a4.

30 g3?! ♖b6 31 ♗c2 ♖bd7?!

This was the last chance for 31 ... ♖a4 and 32 ... b5. Now White stops it forever.

32 a4! ♖b6 33 a5

Having the pawn on a5 has definitely strengthened White's position. He has increased his advantage in terrain and now he can open up the queenside with a later b4-b5 whenever he likes.

33 ... ♖bd7 34 ♗c1 ♗d8 35 ♗b2 ♖e8 36 ♗d2 ♖c7 37 ♗e3 ♗e7 38 ♗f1 ♖b5 39 h4! ♖c7

Having maximised his space advantage on the queenside, White now turns his attention to the other wing. White is also planning to bring his bishop to the effective h3-post from where it constantly eyes the c8-square which would give access to the pawn on b7.

40 ♗h3 ♖e8 41 f4! f6 42 ♗f5 g6 43 ♗h3 h6!

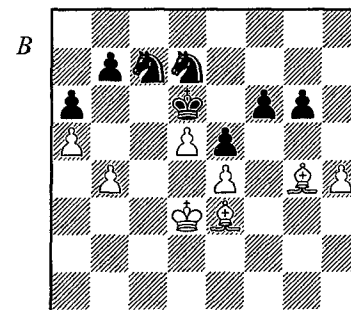
In order to meet 44 f5 with 44 ... g5 without allowing White to force

a passed pawn by exchanging on g5.

44 ♗c1 ♖g7 45 fxe5! dxe5

It 45 ... ♖xe5 46 ♗c8 is good or if 45 ... fxe5 46 ♗f3 h5 47 ♗g5+ ♗e8 48 ♗h6 wins a piece.

46 ♗f3 h5 47 ♗e3 ♗d6 48 ♗h6 ♖e8 49 g4 hxg4+ 50 ♗xg4 ♖c7 51 ♗e3 ♖b5 52 ♗e2 ♖c7 53 ♗d3



Threatening 54 ♗c4 followed by 55 ♗c5+. Now Black no longer has any satisfactory defence since 53 ... ♖b5 54 ♗e6 threatens 55 ♗f7 and 54 ... ♗e7 is met by 55 ♗c5+.

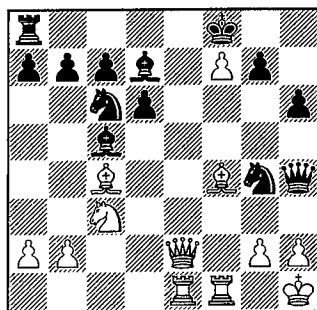
53 ... f5 54 exf5 gxf5 55 ♗xf5 ♖xd5 56 ♗d2 ♖7f6 57 ♗c4 ♗c6 58 ♗g6

White's h-pawn is the decisive factor.

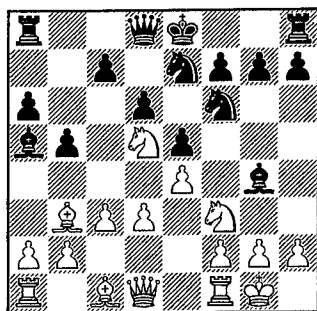
58 ... b5+ 59 ♗d3 ♖e7 60 ♗e4+ ♖ed5 61 ♗g5 ♖h5 62 ♗f3 ♖g3 63 ♗d2! ♗d6 64 ♗g4 ♖f6 65 ♗c8 ♗c6 66 ♗e1 e4+ 67 ♗d4 ♖gh5 68 ♗f5 ♗d6 69 ♗d2! 1:0

Further resistance would be pointless.

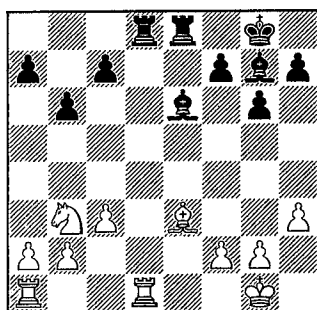
KM3/3: 1) White to play



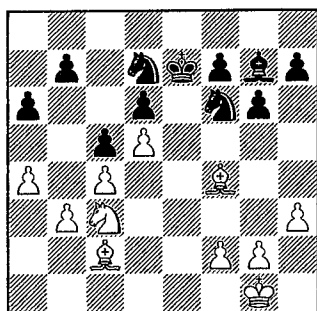
KM3/3: 2) White to play



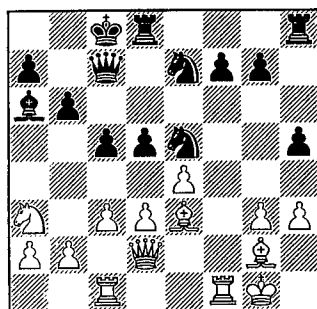
KM3/3:3) Black to play



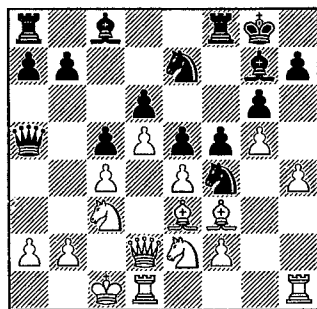
KM3/3: 4) White to play



A3/3: a) White to play



A3/3: b) Black to play



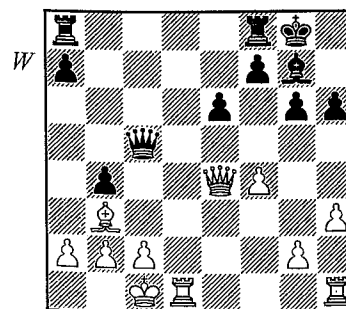
### Month 3/Week 4: Opposite Coloured Bishops

When opposite coloured bishops are on the board, each side will tend to dominate the squares controlled by the other side's bishop. This in turn can give the game a very special character.

Endgames with opposite coloured bishops, and no other pieces, are notoriously drawish. Even if one side is several pawns up, there is a danger that his pawns will be blocked.

In the middlegame, on the other hand, the presence of opposite coloured bishops usually favours the side with the initiative, since one bishop can pressurize squares that the enemy bishop cannot cover. Look for example at the following remarkably similar examples from Mikhail Botvinnik's praxis. In neither game was White able to oppose Black's pressure on the h8-a1 diagonal.

### Medina - Botvinnik Palma de Majorca 1967



In spite of the fact that several pieces have been exchanged, White's position is difficult. In fact he has no real counter to the pressure on the h8-a1 diagonal and Black is threatening 21 ... ♖e7 followed by 22 ... ♜f6. White tries to prevent this by occupying the 7th rank, but Botvinnik has prepared a tactical finesse:

21 ♖d7 ♜ad8 22 ♜hd1 ♜xd7 23 ♜xd7 ♜g1+ 24 ♜d2

The main point is that 24 ♖d1 is refuted by 24 ... ♜xb2+. White was now hoping that Black would immediately capture on b2 as after 24 ... ♜xb2 25 ♜e2 he would be able to eject Black's queen with 26 ♖d1 and his king would be relatively safe. But Botvinnik has another finesse which prevents White from co-ordinating in this way.

24 ... ♜f2+! 25 ♜d3 ♜f1+ 26 ♜e2

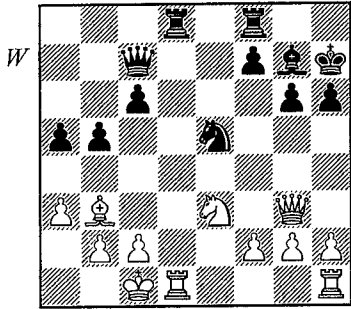
After 26 ♜d2 Black could take the b-pawn without White being able to answer with 27 ♜e2. In this way he prevents White from co-ordinating his pieces.

26 ... ♜xf4 27 ♜f3 ♜e5 28 ♜b7 a5

Black has both a material and positional advantage, so there is no longer any doubt about the eventual result.

29 ♜c6 ♜xb2 30 ♜e2 ♜e5+ 31 ♜f1 h5 32 ♜c7 ♜f4+ 33 ♜e2 ♜d4 34 ♜c8 ♜e3+ 35 ♜d1 ♜c3 36 ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 0:1

**Matulovic - Botvinnik**  
USSR vs Rest of the World,  
Belgrade 1970



This position is remarkably similar to the previous one, though here White is slightly better off since there are knights on the board and Black's queenside pawn push is slightly slower. In fact White should now play 22 f4 ♘d7 23 f5!?, trying to weaken Black's king and exchange queens.

22 ♘g4?! h5 23 ♘xe5 ♙xe5 24 ♗f3 ♘g7 25 ♜he1 ♙f6 26 c3 c5

The pawns trundle forward and White has no way to challenge Black on the dark squares. 26 ... ♗xh2 would have been quite the wrong idea because of either 27 g3 or 27 ♗xc6.

27 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 28 g3

28 h3 was better, for if White's pawns are on dark squares they may well prove vulnerable later.

28 ... c4 29 ♙c2 b4 30 axb4 axb4 31 cxb4 ♗b6

Not the most accurate method. According to Botvinnik, Black should play 31 ... ♗a7 and after 32

♙b1 either 32 ... ♗d4 33 ♗c3 ♗xf2 34 ♗e3 ♗xh2 or 32 ... ♜a8 33 ♗a3 ♗xf2 34 ♗xa8 ♗xe1+ 35 ♙a2 ♗c1.

32 ♜d1 ♗xb4?

Another slip. Here Black should play 32 ... ♜e8 after which 33 ♗a3 ♗xf2 would be a better chance for White than 33 ♜d7 ♗xb4 34 ♗d5 ♜e1+ etc.

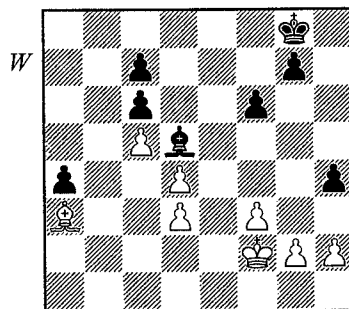
33 ♜xd8 ♗xb2+ 34 ♙d1 ♙xd8 35 ♗d5 ♗f6 36 ♙e2 ♙b6 37 f4 ♗c3 38 ♗e4 ♙d4?! 39 f5?!

39 ♙f1 might have held on.

39 ... gxf5 40 ♗xf5 ♗e3+ 41 ♙f1 ♗g1+ 42 ♙e2 ♗xh2+ 43 ♙d1 ♗g1+ 44 ♙e2 ♗e3+ 45 ♙f1 ♗xg3 46 ♗h7+ ♙f8 0:1

In this week's final example, Anatoly Karpov provides a model demonstration of how to win one of those notoriously drawish opposite coloured bishop endgames.

**Kurajica - Karpov**  
Skopje 1976



The secret is to create passed pawns and penetrate effectively

with the king to support them, but this is easier said than done. We join the struggle after Black's 33rd move, shortly after the exchange of queens.

34 g3 ♙f7 35 ♙e3

The h-pawn cannot be taken, as White would then be unable to defend both his weakened kingside (after Black's king comes to h5) and the vital pawn on d3, which stops Black's king from entering via c4.

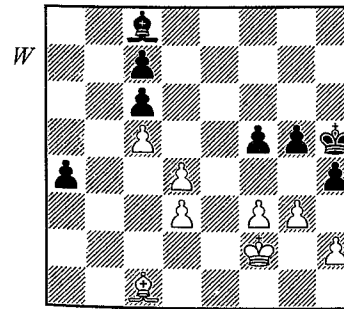
35 ... f5 36 ♙f4 ♙g6 37 ♙e3?!

According to Karpov, White could have drawn with 37 gxf4! ♙h5 38 ♙xf5 ♙xf3 39 ♙b2 ♙d5 40 ♙c1 ♙f7 41 ♙b2 ♙xh4 42 d5! etc. He might still have held the draw with ultra-precise play but in practice this is very hard.

37... ♙h5 38 ♙b4 g5

Suddenly Black threatens a winning breakthrough with 39 ... f4+ 40 gxf4 g4! 41 fxg4 ♙xg4. So White's king must retreat.

39 ♙f2 ♙a2 40 ♙a3 ♙b1 41 ♙e2 ♙a2 42 ♙c1 ♙e6 43 ♙f2 ♙c8



44 d5?

White cracks under the pressure. 44 ♙e2 ♙a6 45 ♙e3 (45 ♙b2 hxg3 46 hxg3 f4 47 gxf4 gxf4 48 ♙c1 ♙g5 49 ♙b2 ♙h4 50 ♙f2 ♙xd3) 45... f4+ 46 gxf4 g4 47 f5 would draw according to Karpov.

44 ... cxd5 45 d4 f4! 46 gxf4

After 46 g4+ ♙g6 Black's king is en route for the c4 square via c6 and b5.

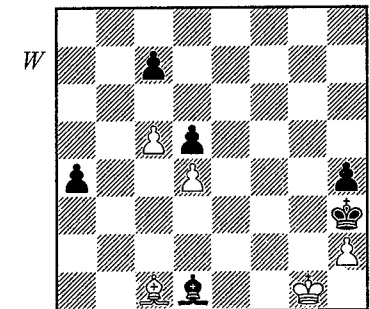
46... g4 47 ♙g2 ♙f5 48 ♙f2 gxf3 49 ♙xf3 ♙e4+ 50 ♙f2 ♙g4 51 ♙b2

There is nothing else to be done, White is in zugzwang.

51 ... ♙xf4 52 ♙c1+ ♙g4 53 ♙b2 c6 54 ♙c1 ♙h3

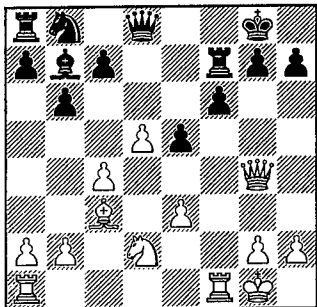
In order to win, Black must put his opponent in zugzwang again.

55 ♙g1 ♙g6 56 ♙a3 ♙h5 57 ♙c1 ♙d1! 0:1

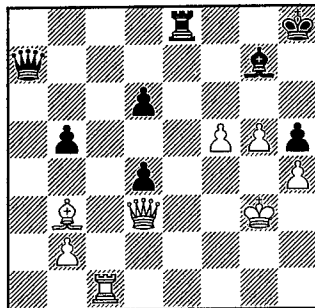


Once again White's obligation to move seals his fate: 58 ♙h1 ♙g4 59 ♙g2 ♙f5 60 ♙f2 ♙e4 or 58 ♙b2 ♙g4 59 ♙g2 ♙f3+ 60 ♙f2 ♙f4 both spell the end.

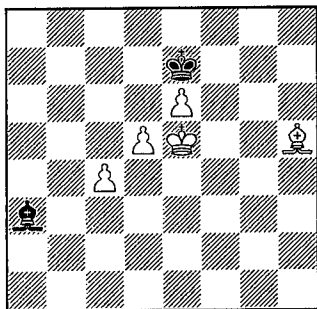
KM3/4: 1) White to play



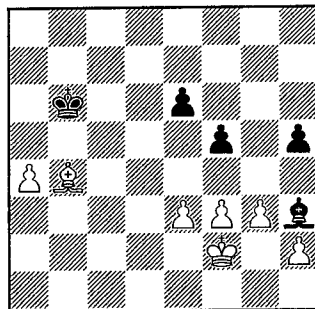
KM3/4: 2) White to play



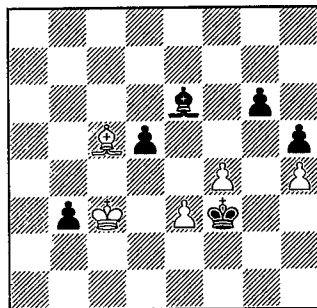
KM3/4: 3) Black to play.



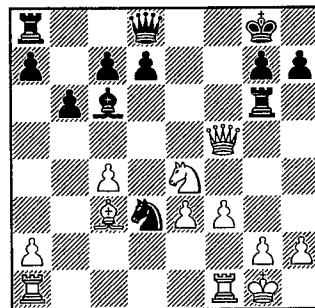
KM3/4: 4) White to play



A3/4: a) Black to play



A3/4: b) Black to play



## 4 The Noble Knight

The idiosyncratic hopping move of the knight gives it quite different characteristics to any other piece. Unlike the bishop, it is not tied to squares of one colour, yet it is unable to cross the board in a single step. These features makes it particularly suitable for short-range work.

Before moving on to examine its characteristics in more detail, let's first see the knight in full flow:

### Month 4/Week 1: The Cavalry Charge

I have always had a soft spot for the knight, perhaps ever since my school days when I spent many happy hours, during mathematics lessons, working out the famous knight tour puzzle in the back of my exercise book.

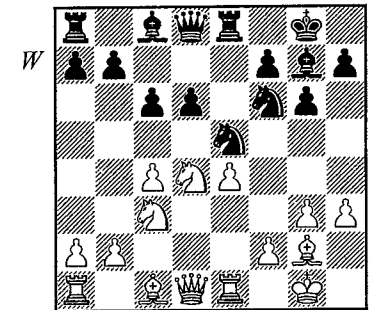
From an academic point of view this was not a good idea, but it was useful for developing a quick eye for knight moves.

Some twenty years later, I played my most spectacular 'knight' game, bringing my two knights to the e8 and d8 squares in a game against a young Norwegian player. I don't know of any other game which ended quite like this.

### Davies -Tonning Gausdal 1994

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 d6 5 ♗f3 0-0 6 0-0 ♞bd7 7 ♞c3 e5 8 e4 c6 9 h3 ♞e8 10 ♞e1 exd4 11 ♞xd4 ♞e5

The first in a series of dubious moves which, though superficially active, do not fit the requirements of the position. After defending against the immediate threats, White manages to push his opponent back.



12 b3 ♜a5 13 ♙d2 ♜c7 14 ♙e3 ♞ed7 15 ♜c2 ♞c5 16 ♞ad1 h6 17 f4

During the game I considered 17. ♞db5(!) cxb5 18 ♞xb5 ♜e7 19 ♞xd6 which is also good for White. The knights later show their appreciation for my decision not to sacrifice them.

17 ... ♞fd7 18 b4 ♞e6 19 ♞b3

Preventing the move ...a7-a5, which would create some counter-

play on the queenside. White's number one priority in such positions is the suppression of the opponent's play. After this, his extra space and the weakness of d6 should gradually start to make itself felt.

19 ... ♖ef8 20 ♜h1 ♜b6 21 ♜a5!

A nice way to defend c4; the knight also pressurises Black's queenside from this square, eyeing the c6 and b7 squares.

21 ... f5 22 ♙d4

Eliminating Black's most valuable piece, his bishop on g7. In this particular position this will mean that Black will find it very difficult to generate any counter-play to compensate him for his weaknesses.

22 ... ♙e6 23 ♙xg7 ♜xg7 24 ♜f2 ♜h7 25 c5 dxc5 26 ♜xc5

The position has clarified with White now threatening to invade with his knights by means of 27 ♜b5! and 28 ♜d6. Black prevents this by moving his queen, but I then pursue a minority attack with b4-b5.

26 ... ♜f7 27 b5! ♜c8 28 exf5 gxf5 29 ♜d4

And not 29 bxc6 because of 29 ... b6!

29... cxb5 30 ♜xb7 ♜b8 31 ♜d8!

A most unusual post for a knight, but very strong nevertheless. The impertinent invader subjects Black's pieces to all sorts of tactical threats, and this from the heart of his own lines.

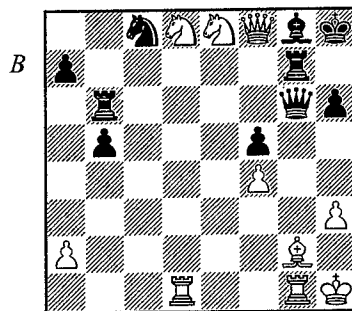
31 ... ♜g6 32 ♜e5 ♜b6 33 ♜c7+ ♜c7 34 ♜c5 ♜xg3 35 ♜d5!

With this knight joining the fray, the game is immediately decided.

35 ... ♜g7

A rather desperate move which permits an artistic final position. 35 ... ♙xd5 36 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 37 ♜xc7+ ♜g6 38 ♜xd5 costs Black most of his pieces.

36 ♜f6+ ♜h8 37 ♜xf8+ ♙g8 38 ♜g1 ♜g6 39 ♜e8! 1:0



Black's position has been hopeless for several moves but it was considerate of him to resign when he did. The final position is the most unusual I have had.

The next game is one of the most remarkable 'knight' games I have seen, and I am fairly sure that you will agree. It features the colourful Efim Bogolyubov playing White against a young German player who was later to become a Grandmaster.

The fantastic desperado manoeuvres of the knights give this game a character all of its own, and it almost looks like a skittles encounter between two amateurs at a

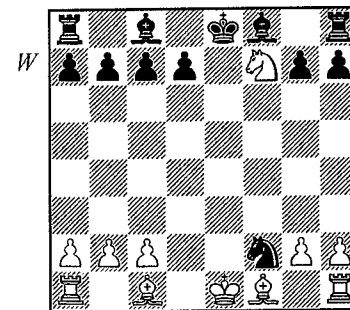
chess café rather than a game between two Grandmasters:

### Bogoljubov - L.Schmid Bad Pyrmont 1949

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♜c3 ♜f6 4 d4 exd4 5 ♜xd4 ♜xe4!?

A quite amazing move which is probably more spectacular than strong. 6 ♜xe4 ♜e7 7 ♜b5 ♜xe4+ 8 ♙e2 ♜d8 9 0-0 gives White more than enough for the sacrificed pawn.

6 ♜xc6 ♜xc3 7 ♜xd8 ♜xd1 8 ♜xf7 ♜xf2

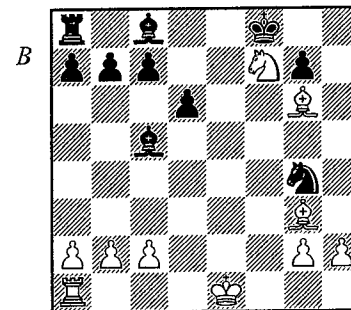


9 ♜xh8 ♜xh1 10 ♙d3 ♙c5 11 ♙xh7 ♜f2 12 ♙f4 d6 13 ♙g6+ ♜f8 14 ♙g3

14 ♜d2 ♜g4 followed by 15 ... ♜f6 would allow Black to escape without harm.

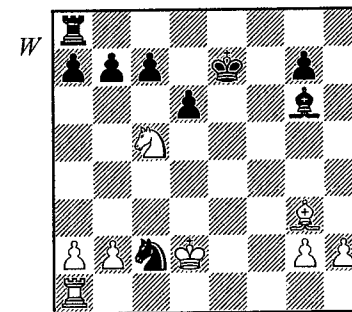
14 ... ♜g4 15 ♜f7?

The decisive mistake and a surprising error of judgment for a player of Bogoljubov's ilk. He should have extricated his knight with 15 ♙d3 followed by ♜g6 with a draw as the likely result.



15 ... ♜e3 16 ♜d2 ♙f5 17 ♜g5 ♙xg6 18 ♜e6+ ♜e7 19 ♜xc5 ♜xc2!

Perhaps White was expecting 19...dxc5 20 ♜xe3 with an equal game. But once again the desperado knight takes him by surprise.



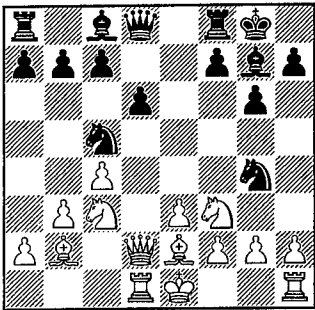
20 ♙h4+ ♜e8 21 ♜e6 ♜d7

After 21 ... ♜xa1 22 ♜xc7+ ♜d7 23 ♜xa8 ♜c8 24 ♙g3 ♜b8 25 ♙xd6+ ♜xa8 26 ♙e5 White obtains two passed pawns for the piece and makes things difficult.

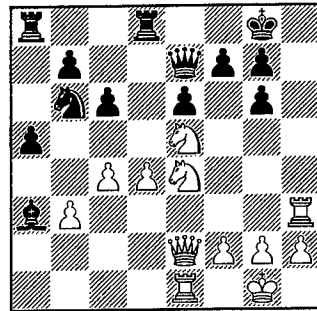
22 ♜f4 ♜xa1 23 ♜xg6 ♜e8 24 ♙f2 ♜c2 25 ♜f4 ♜b4 0:1

A highly original game, in which both sides' knights had a field day.

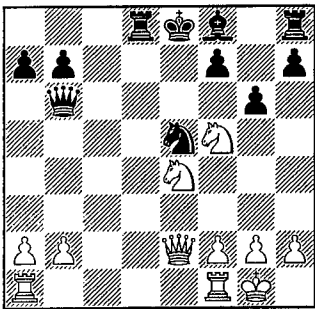
KM4/1: 1) Black to play



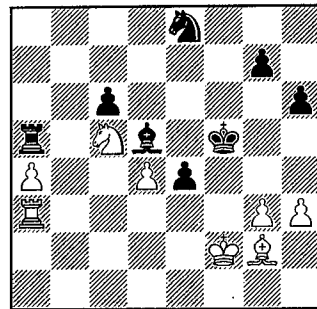
KM4/1: 2) White to play



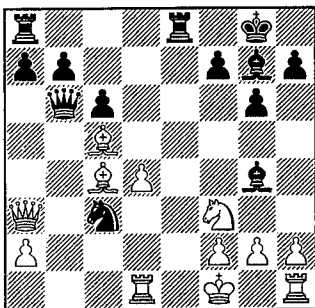
KM4/1: 3) White to play



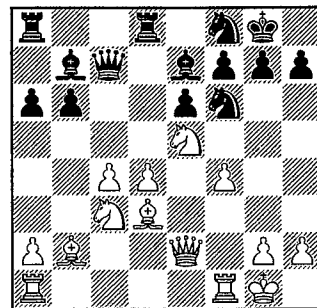
KM4/1: 4) White to play



A4/1: a) Black to play



A4/1: b) White to play



### Month 4/Week 2: Finding A Good Stable

The knight's preference for short-range work means that it has to be in the thick of the action to work most effectively. The ideal is to have a safe square near the front line, an outpost, and the location of this support point can be of great significance. The closer the knight is to enemy territory, the more dangerous it is.

In the following game White establishes a knight on the sixth rank, from where it effectively paralyzes his opponent's game.

### Lasker - Capablanca St. Petersburg 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6!

Brilliant psychology. Capablanca only needed a draw to be virtually certain of first place. Lasker's choice of the Exchange Variation leads to positions in which Black should energetically try to use his bishop pair rather than attempt to simplify. White's structural advantage will become more important with every piece that is exchanged.

4 ... dxc6 5 d4 exd4 6 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 7 ♗xd4

A closer look at this position reveals the ingenuity of Lasker's strategy. If we remove the remaining pieces it has been shown that

the pure pawn endgame is actually won for White. This is because Black's queenside pawn mass cannot yield a passed pawn whereas White's kingside majority can.

7 ... ♙d6 8 ♗c3 ♗e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 f4 ♗e8

Black could proceed more actively with 10 ... f5 with a strategy similar to the Bondarevsky - Smyslov game from the previous chapter.

11 ♗b3 f6

Once again 11 ... f5 was good.

12 f5 b6

The start of a poor plan. 12 ... ♙d7 was a better move and Reti recommended 12 ... g5!, taking away the f4 square from White's pieces and meeting 13 fxg6 ♗xg6 14 ♗xf6 with 14 ... ♙e5 followed by ... ♙xc3 and ... ♗xe4, recovering the pawn with an equal position.

13 ♙f4 ♙b7?

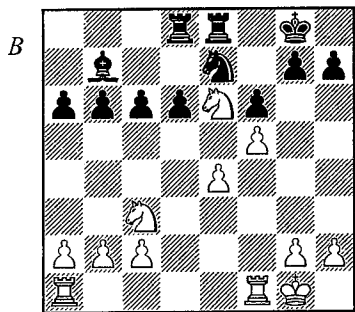
Continuing the faulty strategy which is starting to get Black into real trouble. 13 ... ♙xf4 14 ♗xf4 ♙d7 followed by 15 ... ♗ad8 would still have given good chances of equality.

14 ♙xd6! cxd6 15 ♗d4 ♗ad8

The exchange on d6 has undoubtedly Black's pawns but now the backward black d-pawn is instead a serious liability. After 15 ... ♙c8 White wins the d-pawn with 16 ♗ad1 followed by ♗d2 and ♗fd1.

16 ♗e6!

Arriving on a superb square. This knight will dominate proceedings for the rest of the game.



16 ... ♖d7 17 ♜ad1 ♘c8 18 ♜f2 b5 19 ♜fd2 ♜de7

A preliminary 19 ... b4 would have offered Black better prospects of resistance.

20 b4! ♙f7 21 a3 ♙a8 22 ♙f2 ♜a7 23 g4 h6 24 ♜d3 a5?

Black's first active move is somewhat unfortunate, as White would want to open the a-file himself with a later a3-a4 and axb5.

25 h4 axb4 26 axb4 ♜ae7 27 ♙f3 ♜g8 28 ♙f4 g6 29 ♜g3 g5+

29 ... gxf5 30 exf5 would not solve Black's problems as White would then play ♘e2-d4 and ♜dg1.

30 ♙f3!

30 hxg5 hxg5+ 31 ♙f3 ♜h8! is not good for White but there is no need to open the h-file yet.

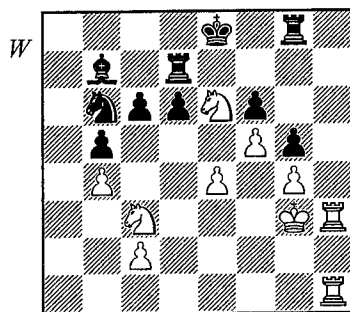
30 ... ♘b6

A good try, hoping for ... ♘c4 and ... ♘e5+.

31 hxg5 hxg5 32 ♜h3 ♜d7

If Black had not opened the a-file he could now have played 32... ♘c4. As it is, this move is met by 33 ♜h7+ ♙e8 34 ♜a1! ♙b7 35 ♘c7+ ♙d7 36 ♜xe7+ ♙xe7 37 ♜a7 ♜b8 38 ♘a6 etc.

33 ♙g3! ♙e8 34 ♜dh1 ♙b7



35 e5!

The decisive moment, White sacrifices a pawn in order to bring his second knight into a dominating position. The combined assault of White's entire army proves irresistible.

35 ... dxe5 36 ♘e4 ♘d5 37 ♘6c5!

Leaving its beautiful post to perform the last rites.

37 ... ♙c8 38 ♘xd7 ♙xd7 39 ♜h7 ♜f8 40 ♜a1 ♙d8 41 ♜a8+ ♙c8 42 ♘c5! 1:0

It is fitting that the last move should threaten mate by a knight landing on the e6 square.

The next game features Bobby Fischer getting a knight established on the 5th rank, following a beautiful exchange sacrifice.

### Fischer - Najdorf Varna Olympiad 1962

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 h3

A playable move though not a very good one. Fischer probably felt uncomfortable playing against his own favourite defence - a problem for many players.

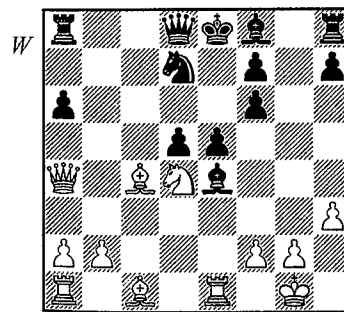
6 ... b5 7 ♘d5 ♙b7

7 ... ♘xe4 leads to unclear complications after 8 ♙f3.

8 ♘xf6+ gxf6 9 c4 bxc4 10 ♙xc4 ♙xe4 11 0-0 d5 12 ♜e1! e5

Fischer felt that 12 ... dxc4 13 ♜xe4 ♙d5 14 ♙f3 e6 was best.

13 ♙a4+! ♘d7



14 ♜xe4!

A beautiful exchange sacrifice, the point of which is to obtain an outpost on f5. From here the knight exerts a decisive influence.

14 ... dxe4 15 ♘f5!

Black might have been hoping for 15 ♙b3, which gives Black chances to hang on after 15 ... ♙b6 16 ♙xf7+ ♙d8.

15 ... ♙c5 16 ♘g7+! ♙e7 17 ♘f5+

Repeating the position but with Black having lost his castling rights.

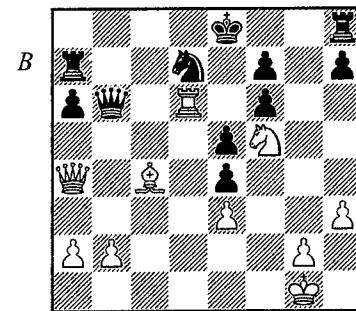
17 ... ♙e8 18 ♙e3 ♙xe3 19 fxg3 ♙b6 20 ♜d1!

Better than 20 ♙xf7+ ♙d8 21 ♜d1 ♙b5 which leaves White with no immediate forced win.

20 ... ♜a7

Black seems to be hanging on as either 21 ♙xf7+ ♙d8 or 21 ♘d6+ ♙e7 leave White with no clear win.

21 ♜d6!



Tightening the grip with crushing effect.

21 ... ♙d8

Fischer gave the lines 21 ... ♙c7 22 ♜xf6 and 21 ... ♙xb2 22 ♙xf7+ ♙d8 23 ♙a5+ ♙c8 (or 23 ... ♜c7 24 ♙e6) 24 ♘e7+ ♙b8 25 ♘c6+ ♙a8 26 ♘xa7 or 22 ... ♙xf7 23 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 24 ♙xd7+ ♙g6 25 ♙g7+ ♙h5 26 g4#

22 ♙b3 ♙c7 23 ♙xf7+ ♙d8

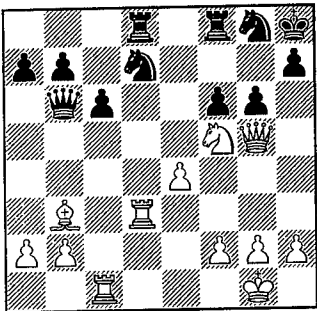
Or 23 ... ♙f8 24 ♙h5.

24 ♙e6 1:0

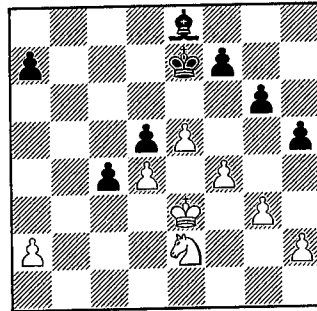
Black has had enough. If 24 ... ♜b7 then 25 ♙a4.



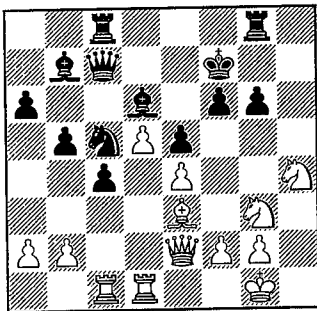
KM4/2: 1) White to play



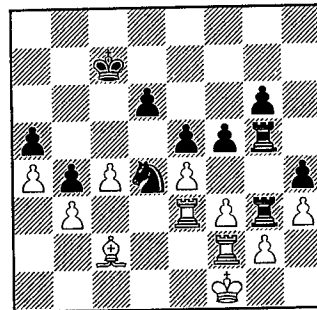
KM4/2: 2) White to play



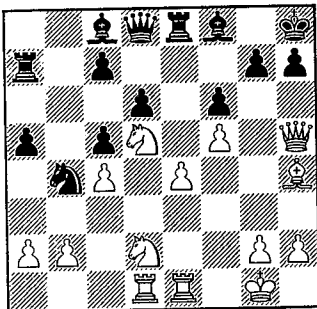
KM4/2: 3) White to play



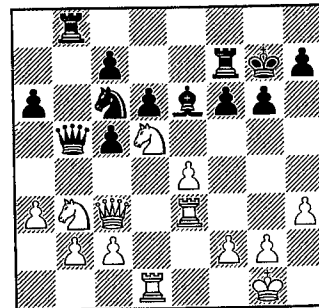
KM4/2: 4) Black to play



A4/2: a) White to play



A4/2: b) White to play

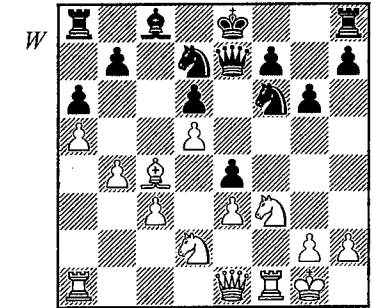


### Month 4/Week 3: Knight Manoeuvres

16 ... g6 17 ♖e1 c6 18 ♜hf3  
cxd5 19 exd5 e4

The knight's peculiar move can make it difficult to reach squares which are apparently quite close from a geometric point of view. This makes the enigmatic knight rather more difficult to handle than some of the more "straightforward" pieces.

The following games feature beautiful knight manoeuvres by two great masters. The first involves the future World Champion, Alexander Alekhine. The second sees the original thinker and strategist Aaron Nimzowitsch at work.



### Alekhine - Tarrasch Mannheim 1914

1 e4 e5 2 ♜f3 ♜c6 3 ♟c4 ♟c5 4  
c3 ♞e7 5 d4 ♟b6 6 0-0 d6 7 a4 a6  
8 ♟e3 ♟g4 9 d5 ♜b8 10 a5 ♟xe3  
11 fxе3 ♜f6 12 ♜bd2 ♜bd7 13  
♞e1 ♜c5 14 ♞b1 ♟c8

It would have been better to castle kingside. After the text, Black's position becomes very insecure.

15 b4 ♜cd7 16 ♜h4

This knight is destined for greatness. Should Black now defend against the threat of 17 ♜f5 with 16 ... ♜f8, White could effectively open up the queenside with 17 b5.

### 20 ♜g5!

A quite unexpected and brilliant idea. The obvious move is 20 ♜d4, placing the knight on the central outpost. Black could then obtain a satisfactory game, however, with 20 ... ♜e5 21 ♜f4 0-0!, when the e-pawn is immune because of 22 ♜gxe4 ♜xe4 23 ♜xe4 f5 or 22 ♞h4 ♜xd5!. These variations stem from Alekhine himself.

### 20 ... h6

Alekhine also claimed a clear advantage for White after 20 ... ♜e5 21 ♟b3! ♟f5 22 ♟a4+ ♜f8 23 ♟c2!, attacking the e4 pawn.

### 21 ♜h3 ♞e5

Black overestimates the strength of his counterattack. 21 ... ♜e5 was relatively best after which 22 ♜f4 ♟f5 23 h3 h5 24 ♟b3 ♜c8 25 c4 followed by ♜e2-d4 would give White the better prospects.

### 22 ♜c1! ♜g4

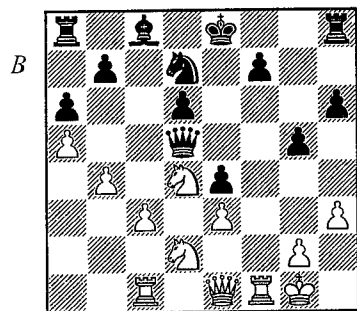
This leads to a further weakening of Black's position. Relatively best was simply 22 ... 0-0.

23 ♖f4 g5 24 h3 ♗gf6

24...gxf4 25 exf4 would be disastrous for Black.

25 ♖e2 ♗xd5 26 ♙xd5 ♖xd5 27 ♗d4!

Finally reaching the best square, but with Black having considerably weakened his position.



27 ... ♖e5

Alekhine pointed out that Black would lose his queen after 27 ... 0-0 28 ♙f5 ♗e5 (or 28 ... ♖a2 29 ♙a1 ♖b2 30 ♗c4) 29 c4 and 27 ... ♗f8 is bad because of 28 ♖e2 ♙e6 29 c4 ♖e5 30 c5 d5 31 c6 bxc6 32 ♙xc6.

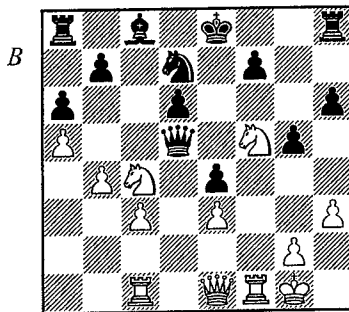
28 ♗c4 ♖d5 29 ♗f5!(D)

Deadly. If 29 ... ♖xc4 then 30 ♗xd6+ wins Black's queen.

29 ... ♗f8 30 ♗fxd6 ♙h7 31 ♙d1 ♖c6 32 ♙d4!

Simpler than any combination involving ♗xf7. Black has no move.

32 ... b6 33 axb6 ♙b7 34 ♗a5 1:0



### Nimzowitsch - Rubinstein Dresden 1926

1 c4 c5 2 ♗f3 ♗f6 3 ♗c3 d5 4 cxd5 ♗xd5 5 e4 ♗b4 6 ♙c4 e6

Many years later 6 ... ♙e6 became the fashionable theoretical line with complex play.

7 0-0 ♗8c6 8 d3 ♗d4

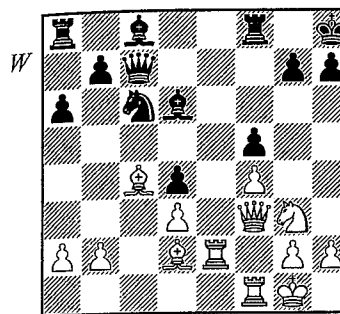
This lets White plug the "hole" on d4 but Black felt it necessary to make room on c6 for his other knight.

9 ♗xd4 cxd4 10 ♗e2 a6 11 ♗g3 ♙d6 12 f4 0-0 13 ♖f3 ♗h8 14 ♙d2 f5 15 ♙ae1 ♗c6 16 ♙e2 ♖c7

After the immediate 16 ... fxe4 White could answer with 17 ♗xe4 but now Black actually threatens 17 ... fxe4 18 ♗xe4 ♗e5 19 ♖g3 ♗xc4 20 dxc4 ♖xc4 etc. So the time has come for White to clarify the central tension.

17 exf5 exf5

How should White improve his position? It seems that Black will simply complete his development and put his rooks on the e-file.



18 ♗h1!!

Nimzowitsch finds a brilliant answer, one of the most remarkable knight moves in the history of the game. The point of this amazing idea is that the knight is to be brought to h3 and g5 via the f2 square!

18 ... ♙d7 19 ♗f2 ♙ae8 20 ♙fe1 ♙xe2 21 ♙xe2 ♗d8

If 21 ... ♙e8 White plays 22 ♖d5 ♗e7 (or 22 ... ♖b8 23 ♙xe8+ wins) 23 ♖f7.

22 ♗h3 ♙c6 23 ♖h5 g6 24 ♖h4 ♗g7 25 ♖f2 ♙c5

After 25 ... ♖b6 White would play 26 b4!, intending ♙c3. The immediate 26 ♙c3 falls short after 26 ... ♙c5 27 b4 dxc3 28 bxc5 ♖b1+ 29 ♙e1 c2 etc.

26 b4 ♙b6 27 ♖h4 ♙e8

A nice line given by Raymond Keene in his book about Nimzowitsch is 27 ... ♙f6 28 ♗g5 h6 29 ♗h7! etc.

28 ♙c5 ♗f7

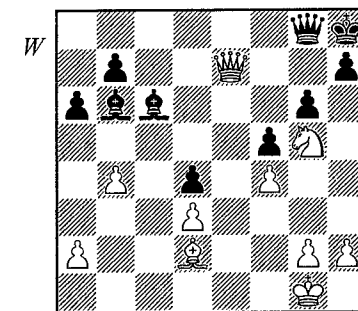
If 28 ... ♙xe5 29 fxe5 ♖xe5 then 30 ♖h6+ ♗h8 31 ♖f8 is mate. If Black tries to keep White's knight

out of g5 with 28 ... h6, White can take a can opener to Black's kingside with 29 g4 as 29 ... fxc4 30 f5 ♖xe5 leads to mate after 31 f6+ ♖xf6 32 ♖xh6.

29 ♙xf7 ♖xf7 30 ♗g5 ♖g8 31 ♙xe8 ♙xe8 32 ♖e1 ♙c6 33 ♖e7+ ♗h8

If 33 ... ♗h6 then 34 ♗e6 is good.

The stage is now set for an elegant finale, Nimzowitsch brings another piece into the attack with a neat pawn sacrifice.

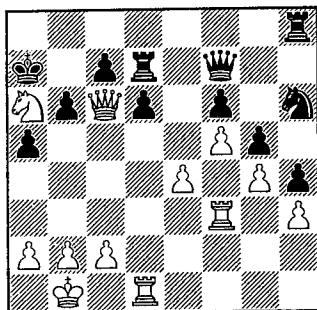


34 b5! ♖g7

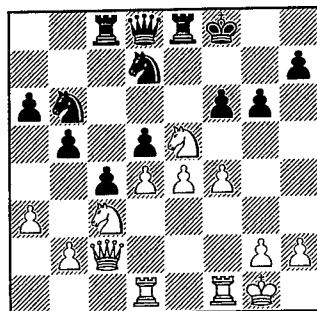
Going into a hopeless endgame but Black will lose in any case. The two main points are that 34 ... ♙xb5 loses to 35 ♖f6+ ♖g7 36 ♖xb6 and 34 ... axb5 allows 35 ♗e6 h5 36 ♖f6+ ♗h7 37 ♗g5+ ♗h6 38 ♙b4 h4 39 ♙f8+ ♗h5 40 ♗f3 followed by mate.

35 ♖xg7+ ♗xg7 36 bxc6 bxc6 37 ♗f3 c5 38 ♗e5 ♙c7 39 ♗c4 ♗f7 40 g3 ♙d8 41 ♙a5 ♙e7 42 ♙c7 ♗e6 43 ♗b6 h6 44 h4 g5 45 h5 g4 46 ♙e5 1:0

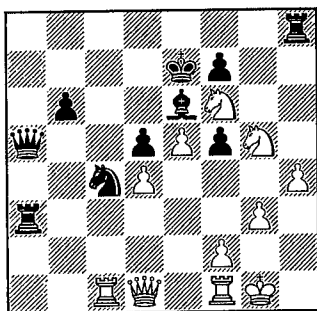
KM4/3: 1) White to play



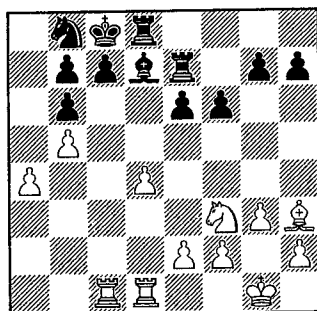
KM4/3: 2) Black to play



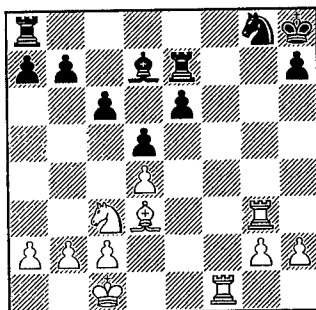
KM4/3: 3) White to play



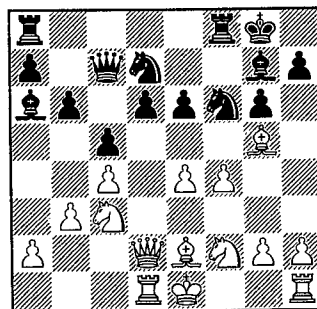
KM4/3: 4) White to play



A4/3: a) White to play



A4/3: b) Black to play.



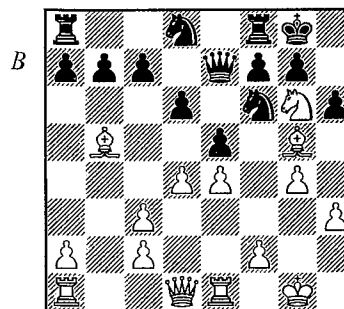
### Month 4/Week 4: Knights against Bishops

In the last section we saw how the bishop will usually outplay the knight in open positions. This month the boot is on the other foot! In positions in which the knights can gain secure outposts, they can often triumph over the longer stepping bishop.

The following games feature two knights outplaying the traditionally highly valued bishop pair. The first shows Akiba Rubinstein, normally thought of as a bishop man, using the knight pair with great effect.

#### Wolf - Rubinstein Teplits-Shoenu 1923

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♗c3 ♗f6 4 ♘b5 ♘b4 5 0-0 0-0 6 d3 d6 7 ♘g5 ♘xc3 8 bxc3 ♗e7 9 ♖e1 ♗d8 10 d4 ♘g4 11 h3 ♘h5 12 g4 ♘g6 13 ♗h4 h6 14 ♗xg6?



This leads to a favourable position for Black because he obtains

the f4 square as an outpost for his knights. The right way for White to play was with 14 ♗f5! ♘xf5 15 ♘xf6! ♗xf6 16 exf5 which John Nunn claims is better for White in his monograph on the Four Knights Game.

14 ... fxc6 15 ♘c4+ ♗h7 16 ♘h4 g5 17 ♘g3 ♗f7

We have arrived at a position in which White has the traditional “advantage” of two bishops against two knights. But in this particular case it might be that the knights are actually better; Black has a juicy outpost on f4 which will act as a base for operations. White doesn’t recognise the danger until it is too late.

18 ♗f3 ♖ae8 19 ♗e3 b6 20 ♘b5?

White plays a superficially active move but the strategic features of the position start to favour Black. He should have probably been thinking about exchanging his light-squared bishop for Black’s knight on f7. He should then defend his kingside with f2-f3 and ♗g1-g2 and lop off Black’s remaining knight when it arrives on f4. With just major pieces on the board he would have good drawing chances.

20 ... ♖d8 21 a4 ♗h8!

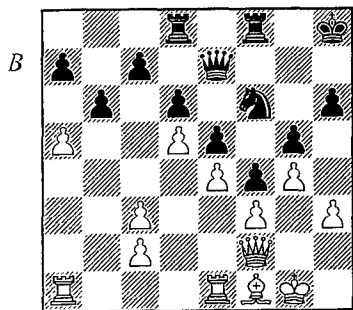
Not fearing the opening of the a-file.

22 a5 ♗g6 23 f3 ♗f4 24 ♘f1 ♗h8 25 ♘xf4

This exchange of bishop for knight is not so good, because White's remaining bishop is "bad", as we saw last month. Now Black has a definite edge.

**25 ... gxf4 26 ♖f2 g5 27 d5?**

White voluntarily puts another pawn on the same colour square as his bishop and removes the possibility of counter-play on the d-file. If he was hoping to draw by sealing up the position he was soon to be disappointed.



**27 ... h5 28 ♗g2 ♖g7 29 ♖e2 ♖h8 30 ♖f2**

The line 30 ♖a6 ♖g6 31 ♖xa7 ♖a8 32 ♖b7 ♖hb8 33 ♖c6 bxa5 shows that the threat to the a-pawn is not real.

**30 ... ♖a8 31 ♖eb1 ♖d7 32 ♖b5 hxg4 33 hxg4 ♖c5 34 ♖h1 ♖h4!**

An excellent way of sealing up the h-file. When White captures this rook, Black gains a passed h-pawn.

**35 ♖xh4 gxh4 36 ♗h3**

Black was threatening 36 ... h3 37 ♗xh3 ♖h4+ 38 ♖g2 ♖g3+ winning.

**36 ... bxa5!**

Gaining a passed a-pawn to add to his h-pawn trump. This guy Rubinstein knew how to play.

**37 ♖xa5**

37 ♖xa5 a6 38 ♖b1 ♖d8 would also give Black a decisive advantage.

**37... ♖d8 38 ♖b1 ♖b8 39 ♖b4 a6 40 ♖e2 ♖b6 41 ♖a1 ♖g6 42 ♖d2 ♖g5!**

Protecting the h-pawn and preventing counter-play based on g4-g5.

**43 ♖b1**

If 43 ♖a5 then 43 ... ♖b8 44 ♖a3 (44 ♖e2 ♖a7) 44 ... ♖a7 45 ♖a5 ♖b7 46 ♖a3 ♖xb4 47 cxb4 ♖f2+ would win. If White doesn't block the a-pawn in these lines it would advance decisively.

**43 ... ♖b8 44 ♖h1**

Hans Kmoch, in his book about Rubinstein, gave 44 ♖c1 ♖xb1+ 45 ♖xb1 ♖xb1+ 46 ♖xb1 ♖a4 47 c4 ♖c3+ 48 ♖c1 ♖e2+ 49 ♖d2 ♖g1 50 ♗g2 h3 51 ♗h1 a5, winning for Black.

**44 ... a5!!**

The a-pawn begins to march quite unexpectedly. 45 ♖xa5 ♖b2 46 ♖a3 ♖b3+ 47 ♖d3 ♖b5+ 48 c4 ♖b6 leads to a quick mate.

**45 ♗g2 a4 46 ♖e1 ♖h8 47 ♖c1 ♖a6 48 ♗f1 ♖a8 49 ♗c4 a3 50 ♗a2 ♖h7 51 ♖h3 ♖d7 52 ♖f1 ♖h8 53 ♖h1 ♖c5 54 ♖c1 ♖b8!!**

The start of a beautiful finale. The threat is 55 ... ♖b2.

**55 ♖xa3 ♖a8 56 ♖b2 h3!**

Opening a doorway for Black's queen.

**57 ♗c4 ♖h4 58 ♗e2 ♖f2! 59 ♖xh3 ♖e3+ 60 ♖e1 ♖a4 0:1**

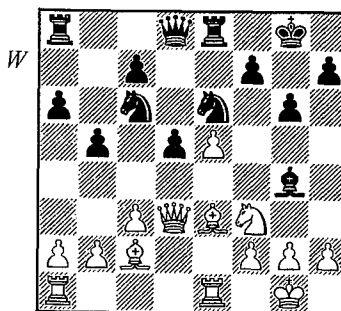
The knight delivers the final blow. After the queen moves, 61 ... ♖xc3 leads to utter carnage.

The second game sees Bent Larsen fighting with knights against bishops, and this time the bishops belong to the great Bobby Fischer himself!

### Fischer - Larsen Santa Monica 1966

**1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♖xe4 6 d4 b5 7 ♗b3 d5 8 dxe5 ♗e6 9 c3 ♗c5 10 ♖bd2 0-0 11 ♗c2 ♗f5 12 ♖b3 ♗g4 13 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 14 ♖e1 ♖e8 15 ♗c3 ♖e6 16 ♖d3 g6!?**

There was a good solid move available in 16 ... ♖f8, but typically, Larsen chooses a fighting line. Black weakens the dark squares around his king but judges that White will be unable to exploit this. He soon throws down the gauntlet by giving up his remaining bishop.



**17 ♗h6 ♖e7 18 ♖d4 ♗f5!? 19 ♖xf5 ♖xf5 20 ♗d2 ♖h4 21 ♖f1**

Larsen pointed out that 21 ♖xd5? loses to 21 ... ♖ad8 22 ♖c6 ♖e7.

**21 ... ♖c5 22 g3**

22 ♗xf5 looks superficially attractive as it doubles Black's pawns, but White would be weak on the light squares and his king position vulnerable.

**22 ... ♖c4 23 ♖g2**

After 23 ♖h3 ♖e4 the knights are becoming quite frisky. 23 b3 was another possibility but the endgame after 23 ... ♖xf1+ was fairly even. After the text, White must part with his bishop pair.

**23 ... ♖d3 24 ♗xd3 ♖xd3 25 ♗g5 c6 26 g4 ♖g7 27 ♖e3**

And not 27 ♖ad1? ... ♖xe5!! etc.

**27 ... ♖d2 28 b3**

After 28 ♗f6 Larsen pointed out that Black defends with 28 ... ♖xb2 29 ♖d1 (29 ♖f1 d4!) 29 ... ♖xa2 30 ♖h3 ♖c2 31 ♖f1 g5! and that 28 f3 ♖xg2+ 29 ♖xg2 ♖e6 prevents the threat of 32 ♖h6 ♖e6 33 ♖xh7+.

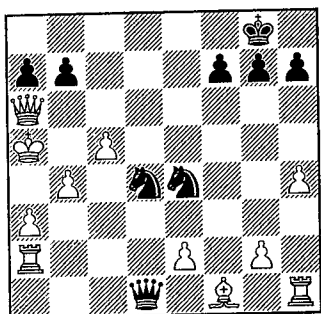
**28 ... b4!?**

More active than either 28 ... a5 or 28 ... c5. White should now play 29 f3 after which both 29 ... bxc3 30 ♖xd2 cxd2 31 ♖d1 and 29 ... ♖xg2+ 30 ♖xg2 a5 are rather equal. Instead of this, Fischer blunders....

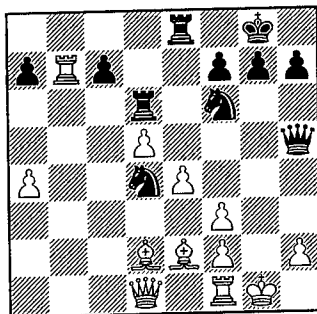
**29 ♖h3?? bxc3 30 ♖h6 ♖e6 0:1**

31 ♗f6 d4 32 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 33 ♖h3+ ♖h6! may be what Fischer had overlooked.

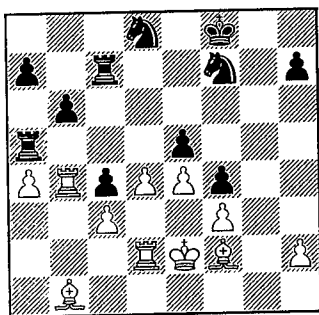
KM4/4: 1) Black to play



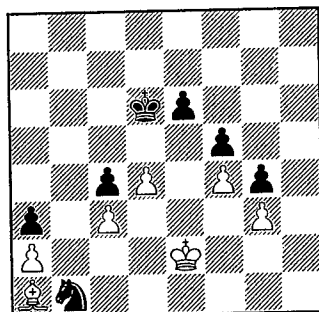
KM4/4: 2) Black to play



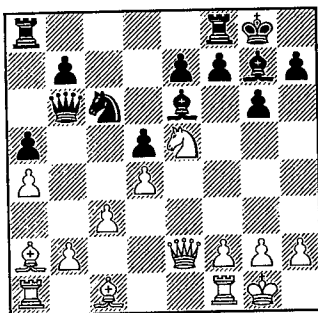
KMP4/4: 3) Black to play



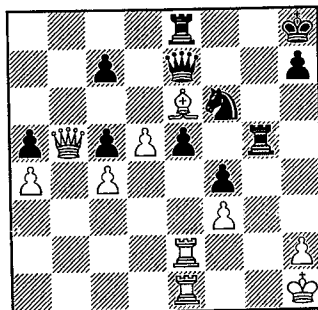
KMP4/4: 4) Black to play



A4/4: a) Black to play



A4/4: b) Black to play



## 5 The Mighty Queen

The queen is by far the strongest piece on the chess-board, able to strike out along ranks, files and diagonals. Reaching its maximum strength in open positions, the queen is especially valuable in attack.

In week one of this month we will look at the queen's attacking powers. In week two we will see the dangers of having a badly positioned queen, week three is devoted to the queen sacrifice and in week four we will look at queen-less middle-games.

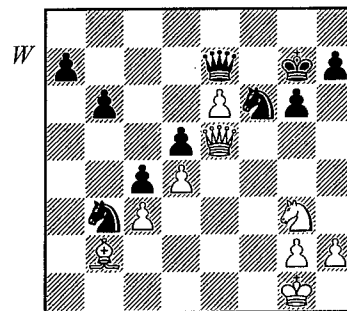
### Month 5/Week 1: Queen Power

Everyone knows the ease with which mate can be delivered if a queen is on the board. One of the most graphic illustrations of queen power is the following famous combination of Mikhail Botvinnik's in which he first gives up a bishop just to distract Black's queen.

### Botvinnik - Capablanca Amsterdam 1938

(See Diagram Top Next Column)

30 ♖a3!! ♜xa3  
30 ... ♜e8 31 ♜c7+ ♜g8 32 ♙e7  
♞g4 33 ♜d7 is no better.



31 ♘h5+! ♜xh5

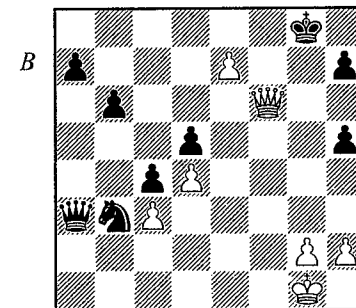
Rejecting the second offer does not help either: 31 ... ♙h6 32 ♘xf6 ♜c1+ 33 ♙f2 ♜d2+ 34 ♙g3 ♜xc3+ 35 ♙h4 ♜xd4+ is defeated by 36 ♘g4+!

32 ♜g5+ ♙f8 33 ♜xf6+ ♙g8

33 ... ♙e8 allows mate in two with 34 ♜f7+ ♙d8 35 ♜d7#

34 e7!

Precision play. 34 ♜f7+ ♙h8 35 e7 ♜c1+ 36 ♙f2 ♜d2+ 37 ♙g3 ♜xc3+ 38 ♙h4 ♜xd4+ 39 ♙xh5 ♜e5+ gives Black perpetual check.



34 ... ♖c1+ 35 ♜f2 ♖c2+ 36 ♜g3 ♖d3+ 37 ♜h4 ♖e4+ 38 ♜xh5 ♖e2+ 39 ♜h4 ♖e4+ 40 g4

Even now White must be careful. 40 ♜h3 h5!! threatens 41 ... ♖g4 mate and would leave him with nothing more than a draw.

40 ... ♖e1+ 41 ♜h5 1:0

The remarkable attacking powers of the queen make it a favourite piece with many amateurs ... and a number of professionals too. Mikhail Tal, the "Magician from Riga", often seemed to sacrifice with what seemed like complete abandon to open up the enemy defences. In his hands the queen could perform some truly remarkable feats:

### Tal - Panno

#### Portoroz Interzonal 1958

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙a4 ♘f6 5 0-0 ♙e7 6 ♚e1 b5 7 ♙b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ♘d7 10 d4 ♘b6 11 ♙e3 exd4 12 cxd4 ♘a5 13 ♙c2 c5 14 e5?!

A rash move by the young Tal. He should play either 14 ♘c3 or 14 ♘bd2 with a balanced position in either case.

14 ... dxe5 15 ♘xe5 ♘bc4 16 ♖d3

After this White should be in serious trouble ... with best play. Tal no doubt rejected 16 ♖h5 because after 16 ... g6 he would have to force an immediate draw with 17

♘xg6 fxg6 18 ♙xg6 hxg6 19 ♖xg6+ ♜h8 20 ♖h6+ etc, whilst 20 ♙h6 ♙g8 21 ♖h5 fails to 21 ... ♖e8.

16 ... f5!

A far more active treatment than 16 ... g6. Panno plays superbly at this stage.

17 ♙b3 f4 18 ♙d2

18 ♘xc4 bxc4 19 ♙xc4+ ♘xc4 20 ♖xc4+ ♜h8 21 ♙d2 cxd4 would be good for Black.

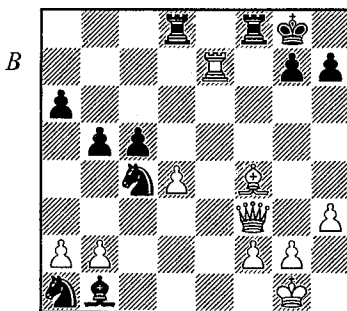
18... ♘xb3

Things are not going too well for Tal, e.g. 19 ♖xb3 ♙f6 20 ♘xc4 bxc4 21 ♖xc4+ ♜h8 22 ♖xc5 ♙xd4!? gives Black a tremendous initiative. So he resorts to some conjuring tricks.

19 ♘c6!? ♘xa1 20 ♘xd8 ♙f5

20 ... ♙xd8 21 b3 would pick up the cornered knight on a1.

21 ♖f3 ♙axd8 22 ♙xe7 ♙xb1 23 ♙xf4



This is the position that Tal had envisaged when playing his 19th move. White is seriously down on material, yet he had correctly judged that he had good practical

chances. Panno was already starting to drift into time-trouble and White's few remaining pieces are very actively posted for pressure against g7.

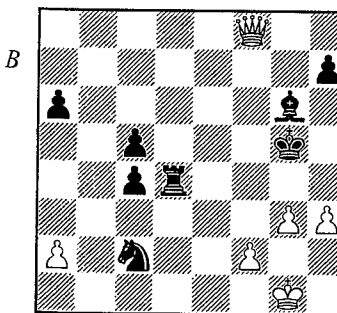
23 ... ♙xd4

The queen's remarkable powers are also shown in the line 23 ... cxd4 24 b3 ♙g6! (24 ... d3? 25 ♖g4!) 25 bxc4 d3 26 ♖g4!! d2 (or 26 ... ♙xf4 27 ♖xf4 d2 28 ♙xg7+! ♜h8 29 ♙d7) 27 ♙d7! etc.

24 ♖g4 ♙g6 25 ♖e6+ ♙f7 26 ♖f5 ♘c2 27 b3 ♙g6

Black is still well in the game at this stage and after 27 ... ♙xf4 28 ♖xf4 ♘4a3, it is impossible to see how White could hope to win. After the text, Tal throws more wood onto the fire in order to increase Black's practical difficulties.

28 ♙xg7+ ♜xg7 29 ♙h6+ ♜xh6 30 ♖xf8+ ♜g5 31 bxc4 bxc4 32 g3!



Conjuring up attacking chances out of thin air. The threat is now 33 f4+ ♜h5 35 f5!

32 ... ♙e4 33 h4+ ♜g4! 34 ♜h2 ♙f5! 35 ♖f6!

Tal is trying to confuse his opponent. Instead 35 f3+ ♜xf3 36 ♖xf5+ ♜e3 would win a piece but ease Black's problems and Tal also rejected this idea a couple of moves later when he chose 37 ♖g7+.

35 ... h6 36 ♖e5! ♙e4 37 ♖g7+ ♜f3 38 ♖c3+ ♘e3

This gives White chances. 38 ... ♜xf2 39 ♖xc2+ ♜f3 would leave White with no decent way to avoid perpetual check.

39 ♜g1! ♙g4! 40 fxe3 h5!

If 40 ... ♜xg3 then 41 ♖e1+ ♜h3 42 ♖f2 wins or if 40 ... ♙xe3? 41 ♖f6+! ♜e2 42 ♖f1+ ♜d2 43 ♖f4 c3 44 ♜f2 c2 45 ♖xe3+ ♜d1 46 ♖e1#

41 ♖e1 ♙xe3?

Panno finally starts to crack. 41... ♙e6 would leave White with nothing as all Black's pieces defend one another.

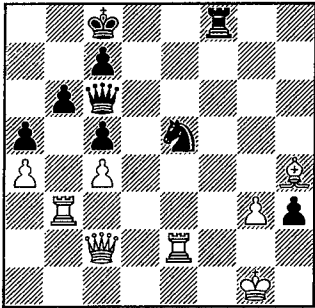
42 ♖f1+ ♜e4 43 ♖xc4+ ♜f3 44 ♖f1+ ♜e4 45 ♖xa6 ♜d4

Surely the critical line must be to capture the g-pawn. The Yugoslav master Vukovic claimed that Black could hold a draw like this.

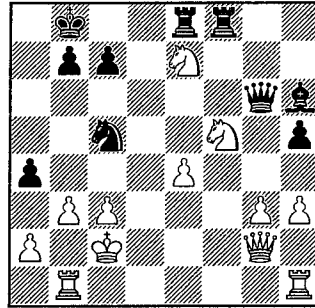
46 ♖d6+ ♜c4 47 a4 ♙e1+ 48 ♜f2 ♙e2+ 49 ♜f1 ♙a2 50 ♖a6+ ♜d4 51 a5 c4 52 ♖b6+ ♜d5 53 a6 ♙a1+ 54 ♜f2 c3 55 a7 c2 56 ♖b3+ ♜d6 57 ♖d3+ 1:0

If 57 ... ♜c6 or 57 ... ♜e5 then 58 ♖c3+ or if 57 ... ♜e6 then 58 ♖xc2 ♙xa7 59 ♖e4+ ♜f7 (59 ... ♜f6 60 ♖d4+) 60 ♖h7+ or 57 ... ♜e7 58 ♖xc2 ♙xa7 59 ♖c5+ etc.

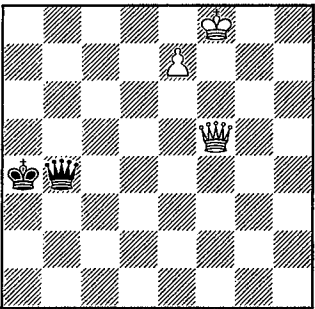
KM5/1: 1) Black to play



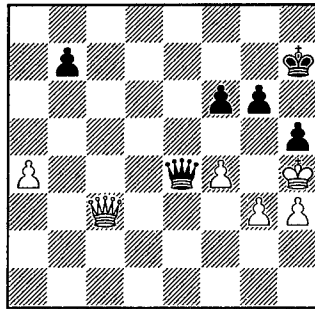
KM5/1: 2) Black to play



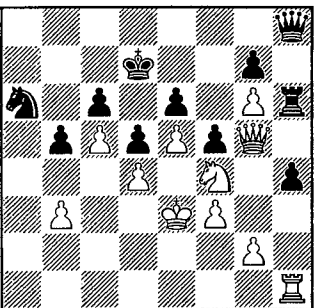
KM5/1: 3) White to play



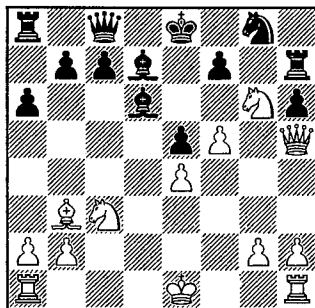
KM5/1: 4) Black to play



A5/1: a) White to play



A5/1: b) White to play



### Month 5/Week 2: The Queen Offside

Just as every strength carries with it an inherent weakness, the queen's immense power brings its own problems. The first and most common of these is the danger of this invaluable piece being ensnared by pieces of a smaller value. This makes it of paramount importance to send the queen into the thick of battle with great care. The first of this week's games is another Tal effort which graphically illustrates this point.

The second game was played by the great Alexander Alekhine and shows what happens if the queen drifts away from the scene of battle. In fact Alekhine is able to sacrifice two rooks in order to get the enemy queen offside.

#### Hodos - Tal USSR 1962

1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4 3 ♖f3 ♜f6 4 e3 ♙g4

Tony Miles has recently started playing this again. He says it's a solid line.

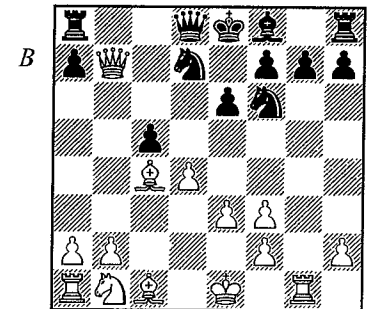
5 ♙xc4 e6 6 ♜b3

Whether or not one should snatch a b-pawn with your queen is one of the thorniest issues on the chessboard. Beginner's books recommend that you should never do it, but in reality this is far too simplistic. The Poisoned Pawn Vari-

ation of the Sicilian Najdorf (1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♜f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♙g5 e6 7 f4 ♜b6 8 ♜d2 ♜xb2) has stubbornly resisted all attempts at refutation.

6 ... ♙xf3 7 gxf3 ♜bd7 8 ♜xb7 c5 9 ♙g1

After this it is difficult for White's king to find long-term security. 9 ♘c3 is better, after which 9 ... cxd4 10 exd4 ♙d6 11 ♘e4 is a possible sequel. Another possibility is 9 0-0 intending to give back the pawn with 9 ... cxd4 10 ♙d1.



9 ... ♙g6 10 ♘c3 ♙e7! 11 dxc5

After 11 d5 ♘e5 12 ♙b5+ ♙f8 13 dxe6 ♜b8, White is unable to defend against the fork on f3.

11... ♘xc5 12 ♜c6+?!

The queen gets into trouble on this square. All the same Black would have good compensation for his pawn after 12 ♜b5+ ♙f8 due to White's king's problems.

12 ... ♙f8!

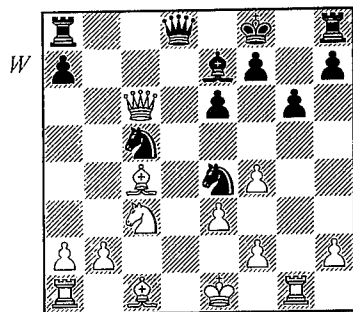
Perhaps White was expecting 12 ... ♘fd7 after which 13 f4 gives White the f3 square for his queen

and takes away e5 from Black's d7-knight.

13 f4

And not 13 e4 ♖c8 14 ♕h6+ ♗g8 15 ♖b5 ♖b8 16 ♖c6 ♖b6 when White loses his queen.

13 ... ♗fe4!



14 ♕a6

Stopping Black's rook coming to c8. 14 ♗xe4 is met by 14 ... ♖c8 15 ♖b5 (15 ♖xc8 ♖xc8 16 ♗xc5 ♖xc5 17 ♕b3 ♕f6) 15 ... a6+

14 ... ♖b8

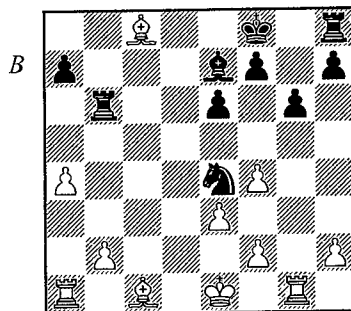
There was a good alternative in 14 ... ♗xc3 15 bxc3 ♖b8 16 ♕a3? ♖a5 17 ♕b4 (17 ♕xc5 ♖xc3+ 18 ♗f1 ♕xc5) 17 ... ♖xa6.

15 ♗xe4 ♖b6 16 ♖c8

White had no doubt been relying on this move but even after the exchange of queens his difficulties persist. Shamkovich pointed out that by sacrificing the queen with 16 ♖xc5! ♕xc5 17 ♗xc5 ♖xa6 18 ♗xa6 ♖a5+ 19 ♕d2 ♖xa6 20 ♕c3 ♖g8 21 0-0-0 ♗e7 (21 ... ♖xa2? is met by the unpleasant 22 ♕f6!) 22 ♕b4+, White could make it hard for Black to win.

16 ... ♖xc8 17 ♕xc8 ♗xe4 18 a4

Hoping to get in 19 a5 which would give his bishop a vital escape square at b7 or a6. White's bishop gets trapped after either 18 ♕d7 ♗c5! or 18 a3 ♗g7 19 ♕d7 ♗c5!.



18 ... ♕b4+ 19 ♗e2 ♗c5 20 ♖g5

Hoping to get in 21 ♖xc5. Of course 20 a5 ♖c6 is hopeless

20 ... f5! 21 e4 ♗g7 0:1

22 exf5 ♖xc8 23 fxg6 hxg6 24 ♕e3 ♖a6 is quite hopeless

### Alekhine - Lowenfisch St Petersburg 1912

1 d4 c5

Alekhine had a rather dim view of the Benoni and I have to say that I share his opinion. White gets a permanent space advantage after d4-d5.

2 d5 ♗f6 3 ♗c3 d6 4 e4 g6 5 f4 ♗bd7?

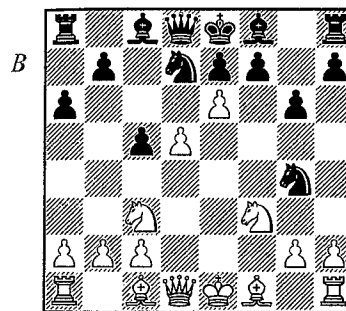
A very serious mistake as Black's knight on f6 will need this square when White plays e4-e5. Black should play 5...♕g7.

6 ♗f3 a6

The reason for this move is that 6 ... ♕g7 7 e5 dxe5 8 fxe5 ♗g4 9 e6 ♗de5 10 ♕b5+ deprives Black of castling rights and leaves him with a horrible game. This is an unfortunate consequence of Black's mistaken 5 ... ♗bd7.

7 e5 dxe5 8 fxe5 ♗g4 9 e6!

Ripping Black's position apart.



9 ... ♗de5 10 ♕f4 ♗xf3+

As Alekhine pointed out, 10 ... ♕g7 would also be deeply unpleasant after 11 ♖e2 ♗xf3+ 12 gxf3 ♗f6 13 exf7+ ♗xf7 14 0-0-0 etc.

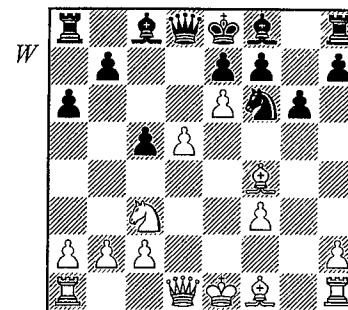
It is possible that Black was now hoping for 11 ♖xf3?! fxe6! 12 ♖xg4 e5 which is quite playable for him. Alekhine's next move destroys his illusions.

11 gxf3! ♗f6 (D) 12 ♕c4!

Even stronger than the immediate capture on f7, a case of the threat being stronger than the execution.

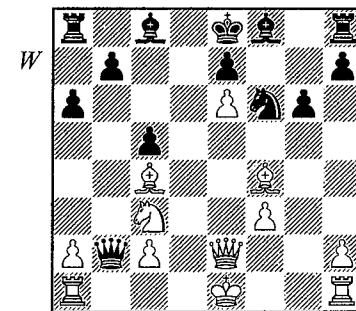
12 ... fxe6 13 dxe6 ♖b6

The exchange of queens would not ease Black's defence: 13 ... ♖xd1+ 14 ♖xd1 ♕g7 15 ♕c7 0-0 16 ♕b6 is the extremely painful line pointed out by Alekhine.



14 ♖e2! ♖xb2

Had Black been hoping to escape with 15 ♗d2 ♗h5 16 ♕e5 ♕h6+ 17 ♗d3 ♕xe6! 18 ♕xe6 ♖d8+, he was reckoning without Alekhine's genius for combinations.



15 ♗b5!!

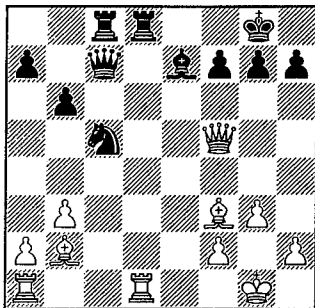
A brilliant solution to the problem, 15 ... axb5 is answered by 16 ♕xb5+ ♗d8 17 ♖d1+.

15 ... ♖xa1+ 16 ♗f2 ♖xh1 17 ♗c7+ ♗d8 18 ♖d2+ ♕d7 19 exd7 1:0

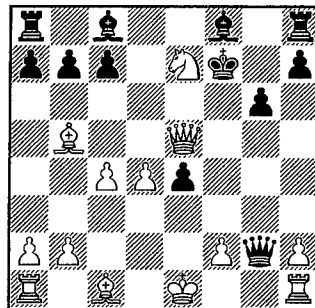
White threatens 20 ♗e6 mate and neither 19 ... ♗xd7 20 ♕e6 nor 19 ... e5 20 ♗e6+ ♗e7 21 d8(♖)+ ♖xd8 22 ♖xd8+ ♗f7 23 ♗xf8+ ♗g7 24 ♖e7# would help.



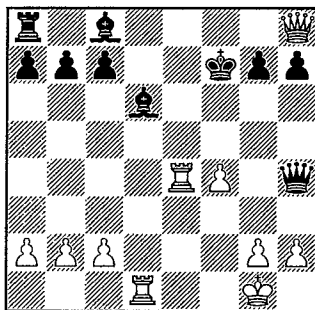
KM5/2: 1) White to play



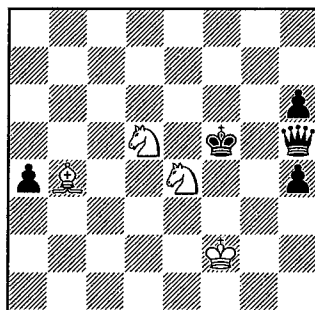
KM5/2: 2) White to play



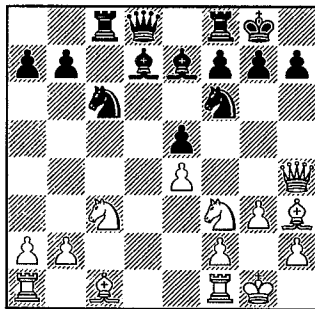
KM5/3: 3) Black to play



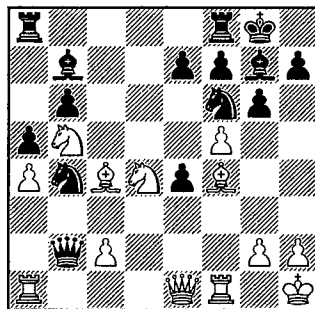
KM5/2: 4) White to play



A5/2: a) Black to play



A5/2: b) Black to play



### Month 5/Week 3: The Queen Sacrifice

The great value of the queen makes the queen sacrifice one of the most attractive concepts on the chess board. I am not talking about the kind of pseudo-sacrifice in which there is a clear variation leading to a win. I have in mind ideas that give up the queen for a variety of material and positional compensation which cannot be calculated during play.

The first of this week's games is arguably the most beautiful game won against the Cuban maestro Capablanca. The second features one of the most brilliant combinative players in history, Rashid Nezhmetdinov.

#### Lilienthal - Capablanca Hastings 1934

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♗b4 4 a3

The Sämisch Variation is one of the sharpest methods of play against the Nimzo-Indian. White immediately gains the two bishops and hopes to build up a broad pawn centre in subsequent play.

4 ... ♗xc3+ 5 bxc3 b6

A good reply, the modern interpretation of which is to lay siege to c4 with ... ♗a6 followed by ... ♘c6 and ... ♘a5. On his next move, Capablanca renounces this in favour of a rather more old-fashioned treatment.

6 f3 d5 7 ♗g5 h6 8 ♗h4 ♗a6 9 e4

This pawn sacrifice was first used by Alekhine the year before in his game against Eliskases. The point is that 9 ... dxe4 10 fxe4 g5 11 ♗g3 ♘xe4 12 ♗e5 followed by 13 ♗d3 or 13 ♖c2 gives White a strong attack.

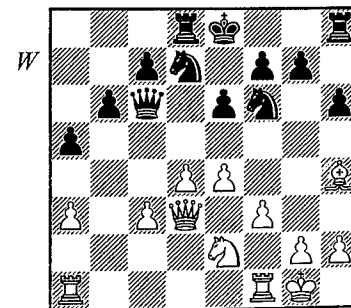
9 ... ♗xc4 10 ♗xc4 dxc4 11 ♖a4+ ♖d7 12 ♖xc4 ♖c6

In the abovementioned Alekhine - Eliskases game Black obtained a satisfactory position with 12 .. ♘c6 13 ♘e2 ♘a5 14 ♖d3 ♖c6 15 0-0 0-0-0 16 ♖ab1 g5 17 ♗g3 ♘h5 18 f4 f6. White might also try 16 e5!? g5 17 exf6 gxh4 18 ♖e4 according to Lilienthal.

13 ♖d3 ♘bd7 14 ♘c2 ♖d8

Capablanca prepares to meet White's intended 15 c4 with 15 ... ♘e5. In Lilienthal's view, 14 ... 0-0-0 would not achieve this because of 15 c4 ♘e5 16 ♖c3 ♘xc4 17 ♖c1 b5 18 a4 a6 19 0-0 ♘b7?! 20 axb5 axb5 21 ♖b4, winning quickly due to the threat of 22 ♘c3.

15 0-0 a5



White opens the position to his advantage after 15 ... ♖e5 16 ♖c2 ♗c4 17 d5! according to Lilienthal.

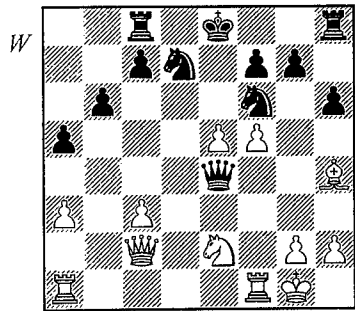
16 ♖c2

Intending 17 c4 on his next move, but Lilienthal pointed out that White could also play this immediately. 16 c4! ♖e5 17 ♖c3 ♗xc4 is met by 18 ♖ac1 b5 19 a4! etc.

16 ... ♖c4 17 f4 ♖c8 18 f5 e5 19 dxe5 ♖xe4

In view of what follows, several commentators later suggested the line 19 ... ♖c5+ 20 ♗d4 ♗xe5 21 ♖xf6 gxf6 with an edge for Black. But White does much better with 20 ♖f2! ♖xe5 21 ♖d4 ♖xe4 22 ♖xe4+ ♗xe4 23 ♖xg7 ♖h7 24 f6! or 21 ... ♖e7 22 e5 ♗xe5 23 ♗g3 0-0 (23 ... ♗fd7 24 f6) 24 ♖ae1 ♗fd7 25 f6 gxf6 26 ♗h5.

Lilienthal himself felt that 19 ... ♗xe5 was relatively best but then 20 ♗f4 ♗fd7 21 ♖ad1 0-0 22 ♗d5 threatens 23 ♗e7+ and 23 f6.



20 exf6! ♖xc2 21 fxd7 ♖g8 22 ♗d4

Black's queen is attacked and a deadly check on e1 is threatened. 22 ... ♖d2 is met by 23 ♖ae1+ ♗e5 24 ♖xe5+ ♗d7 25 ♖d5+ ♗e8 26 ♖e1+- and 22 ... ♖xc3 by 23 ♖ae1+ ♗e5 24 ♖xe5+ ♗d7 25 ♖e7+ ♗d6 26 ♗b5+ etc.

22 ... ♖e4 23 ♖ae1 ♗c5 24 ♖xe4+ ♗xe4 25 ♖e1 ♖xg7 26 ♖xe4+ ♗d7 1:0

Capablanca tendered his resignation without waiting for White's next move. 27 ♖e7+ ♗d6 28 f6 followed by 29 ♖g3+ is crushing.

### Polugaevsky - Nezhmetdinov USSR Ch., Sochi 1958

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 d6 3 ♗c3 e5 4 e4 exd4 5 ♖xd4 ♗c6 6 ♖d2 g6 7 b3 ♖g7 8 ♖b2 0-0 9 ♖d3 ♗g4 10 ♗ge2 ♖h4!

After this energetic lunge Black obtains excellent play. Probably White should have prevented this move with 10 ♗f3.

11 ♗g3 ♗ge5 12 0-0 f5!

After the attractive-looking 12 ... ♗g4, White had devised the remarkable 13 h3 ♗xf2 14 ♖xf2! ♖d4 15 ♖xd4!! ♗xd4 16 ♗d5, sacrificing the queen to obtain a devastating attack. 'Long diagonal' combinations like this do crop up quite frequently.

13 f3

13 f4 is met by 13 ... ♗g4

13 ... ♖h6 14 ♖d1 f4 15 ♗ge2 g5 16 ♗d5 g4

Threatening 17 ... g3 18 h3 ♖xh3!. Since 17 fxd4 ♖xg4 is clearly rather good for Black, Polugaevsky is forced to take radical measures.

17 g3!?! fxd4 18 hxd3 ♖h3 19 f4 ♖c6!

This renders the knight on e5 immune because of 20 fxe5?? ♖xd5 21 cxd5 ♖e3+-+. 19 ... ♗f3+? is bad because of 20 ♗f2 ♖h2+ 21 ♗e3! making White's king safe and threatening 22 ♖h1.

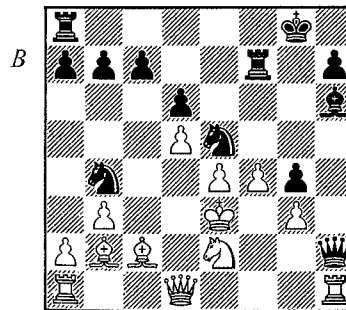
20 ♖c2 ♖f7 21 ♗f2!?

With his castled position disintegrating, White's king decides to head for the hills

21 ... ♖h2+ 22 ♗e3 ♖xd5 23 cxd5

And not 23 exd5 ♖e8!.

23 ... ♗b4 24 ♖h1



24 ... ♖xf4!!

Initiating a stunningly beautiful combination involving the sacrifice of Black's queen. This is what Nezhmetdinov said about this concept: "Obviously I could not calculate all probabilities at the board. The combination was intuitive and

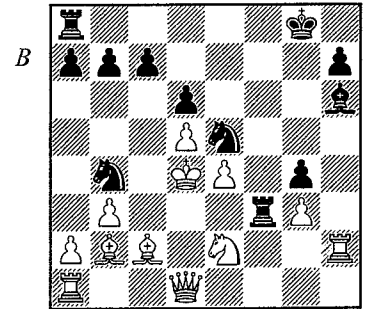
this is precisely why I found it so difficult to take the plunge."

25 ♖xh2

If 25 ♗xf4 then 25 ... ♗xc2+. 25 gxf4 is met by 25 ... ♖xf4+ 26 ♗xf4 (26 ♗d4 ♖f2+-) 26 ... ♗xc2++ and 25 ♖xe5 by 25 ... ♖f3+ 26 ♗d4 ♖f2+-.

25 ... ♖f3+ 26 ♗d4

An amazing position that Black had to assess in his preliminary calculations. White's king is caught in a net, but it is not easy to see how to land it on the shore; neither 26 ... ♖e3+ 27 ♗c3 nor 26 ... c5+ 27 dxc6 bxc6 28 ♖d3 lead to a clear win for Black.



26 ... ♖g7!!

Threatening 27 ... b5 followed by 28 ... ♗ec6 mate. White has only one way to parry this.

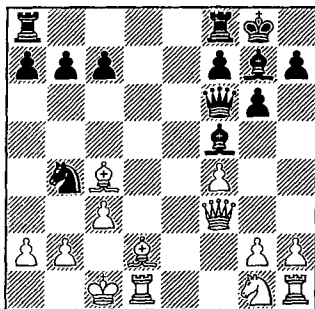
27 a4 c5+ 28 dxc6 bxc6 29 ♖d3 ♗exd3+ 30 ♗c4 d5+!

30 ... ♗xb2+ would also win but this leads to mate.

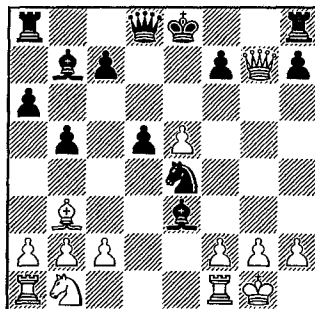
31 exd5 cxd5+ 32 ♗b5 ♖b8+ 33 ♗a5 ♗c6+ 0:1

34 ♗a6 leaves Black with a choice of mates in one.

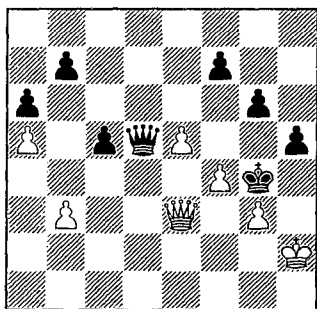
KM5/3: 1) Black to play



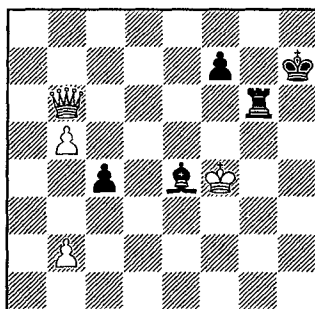
KM5/3: 2) Black to play



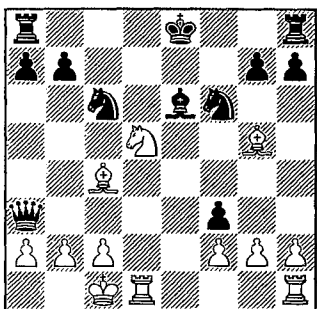
KM5/3: 3) White to play



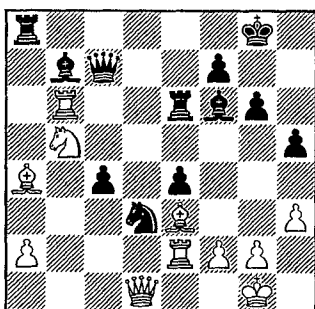
KM5/3: 4) White to play



A5/3: a) White to play



A5/3: b) Black to play



### Month 5/Week 4: Queenless Middlegames

Many amateur players tend to avoid the exchange of queens like the plague. There are a number of reasons for this, the main one being that the widely understood method of winning a game with a mating attack is rendered much more difficult without the queens on.

The problem with the “keep queens on” approach is that the logical line of play often involves the exchange of queens and the purely positional exploitation of an advantage in the endgame. Keeping the queens on at all costs may therefore mean playing for complications at the expense of position, which is not good for one’s development as a player.

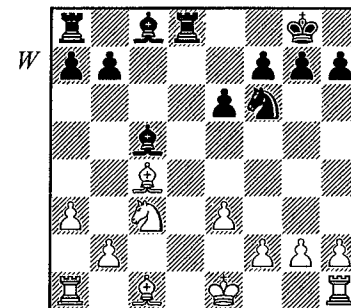
In the following two games I hope to show that chess can be every bit as full of interesting combinations without the presence of queens. They both feature Mikhail Tal, one win and one loss.

#### Mukhin - Tal Moscow 1972

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♗e2 d5 6 a3 ♗e7 7 ♗f4 c6 8 ♙d3 dxc4 9 ♙xc4 ♗bd7 10 ♗d3 c5 11 dxc5 ♗xc5 12 ♗xc5 ♙xc5 13 ♗xd8 ♗xd8

A quiet opening has produced a symmetrical and indeed drawish

position in which one might expect the players to split the point and shake hands at any moment. Yet even this position can lead to beautiful combinative ideas.



#### 14 b4

After 14 ♗e2 followed by 15 ♗d1, further simplification would follow and even Tal would have difficulty in squeezing some life out of the position. White’s last move seems to suggest that White considered the game easily drawn, in fact it is rather careless and weakens squares on the c-file

#### 14 ... ♙e7 15 ♙b2 ♗d7 16 ♗e2

In principle this is a good move, as the king belongs in the centre in the endgame. But in this case the game still has many middle-game features. White should have played 16 0-0.

#### 16 ... ♗ac8 17 ♙d3

White’s position is becoming uncomfortable. 17 ♙b3 would be met by 17 ... ♙c6 18 f3 ♗d5!

#### 17 ... ♙c6 18 f3 ♗d7!

This move is tactically justified by the fact that 19 b5 gives Black a

clear advantage after 19 ... ♖e5 20 bxc6 ♖xd3 21 cxb7 ♖b8. Black's threat of 19 ... ♖e5 is not easy to meet.

19 ♖e4 f5!

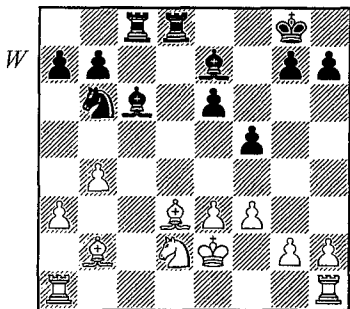
19 ... ♗b5 20 ♗xb5 ♖c2+ 21 ♖d2 ♖xb2 22 ♖ab1! just leads to simplification.

20 ♖d2?

White could still have obtained a playable game with 20 ♖f2! protecting the bishop on d3. After the text he soon finds himself with a lost game.

20 ... ♖b6!

A simple move with the terrible threat of 21 ... ♖xd3 followed by 22 ... ♗b5+ and 21 b5 fails to prevent this because of 21 ... ♖xd3 22 bxc6 ♖cd8 23 ♗d4 ♖xd2+ 24 ♖xd2 e5 25 cxb7 (25 c7 ♖d7 26 ♖ac1 ♖c8+) 25 ... exd4++ and 21 ♖b3 is inadequate because of 21 ... ♖xd3 22 ♖xd3 ♗b5+ 23 ♖d2 ♖c4++.



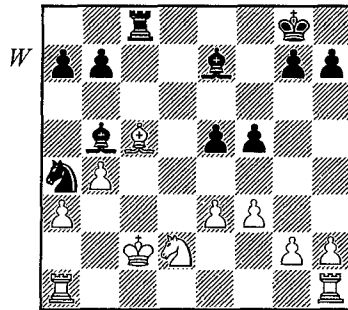
21 ♗d4 e5! 22 ♗c5

If 22 ♗xb6 then 22 ... ♖xd3!. Tal pointed out that 22 ♗xe5 can also be met by 22 ... ♖xd3 with the sequel 23 ♖xd3 ♗b5+ 24 ♖d4

♖a4 25 ♖d5 ♖f7 26 ♗d4 ♗f6 27 ♗xf6 gxf6 28 ♖d6 ♖c6+ 29 ♖d5 ♖c7 30 ♖e4 ♖d7+ 31 ♖d6+ ♖e7 and mate next move.

22 ... ♖xd3! 23 ♖xd3 ♗b5+ 24 ♖c2 ♖a4!

Threatening 25 ... b6. Black's coordinated attack runs like clockwork.



25 ♖b3

If 25 ♖d1 then 25 ... ♗f6! 26 e4 b6 27 ♗e3 ♖c3 28 ♗f2 (28 ♖e1 ♖b2#) 28 ... ♖b2+ 29 ♖e1 ♗g5 is deadly and 25 ♖b1 b6! 26 ♗xe7 ♗d3+ 27 ♖a2 ♖c2+ 28 ♖b3 ♖b2+ 29 ♖xa4 a6! wins more material.

25 ... b6

Winning material whilst keeping the attack.

26 ♖c4

If 26 ♗xe7 then 26 ... ♖c3+ 27 ♖a2 ♖c2+ 28 ♖b1 (or 28 ♖b3 ♖b2#) 28 ... ♗d3 wins.

26 ... bxc5

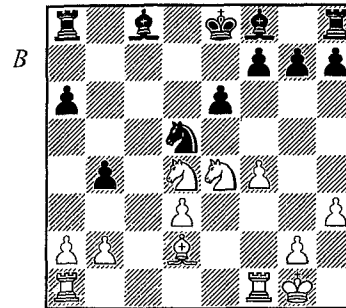
With an advantage in material, and White's king still under attack, the rest is easy

27 ♖xe5 cxb4 28 ♖ac1 ♖c5+ 29 ♖xb4 a6! 0:1

Even stronger than the immediate 29 ... ♖d3+. White must lose more material and chose instead to resign.

### Nezhmetdinov - Tal Moscow 1959

1 e4 c5 2 ♖f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♖xd4 a6 5 ♖c3 ♖c7 6 ♗d3 ♖c6 7 ♗e3 ♖f6 8 0-0 ♖e5 9 h3 b5 10 f4 ♖c4 11 ♗xc4 ♖xc4 12 ♖d3 d5 13 exd5 ♖xd3 14 cxd3 b4 15 ♖e4 ♖xd5 16 ♗d2



16 ... a5?!

From a strategic point of view this is a good move; Black wishes to bring his bishop to a6 from where it bears down on the d3-pawn. The flaw in Tal's calculations is that White has a strong initiative in spite of the exchange of queens; 16 ... f5 17 ♖g5 ♗c5 would have been better, with chances for both sides.

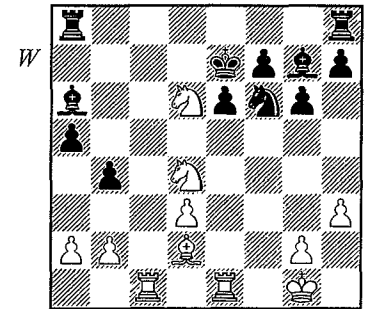
17 ♖ac1 ♗a6 18 ♖fe1 g6

It turns out that the pawn on d3 can not be taken in any case; 18 ... ♗xd3? 19 f5 gives White a tremendous attack.

19 f5 ♗g7 20 f6! ♖xf6

20 ... ♗xf6 21 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 22 ♖xe6 fxe6 23 ♖xe6+ ♖f7 24 ♖cc6 is the point of Nezhmetdinov's brilliant play; both a6 and f6 are hanging.

21 ♖d6+ ♖e7



22 ♖xf7! ♖xf7 23 ♖c7+ ♖g8 24 ♖xe6 ♖e8 25 ♖d7 ♗f6?

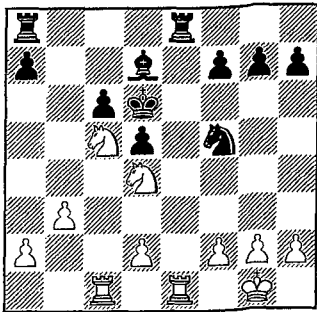
White was threatening 26 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 27 ♗f4 followed by 28 ♗e5. Yet Black could still defend himself with either 25 ... ♗b5 26 ♖b7 ♗a6 or 25 ... ♗c8 26 ♖d8 ♗b7, both of which leave White wondering how he can possibly avoid a draw by repetition.

26 ♖f1!

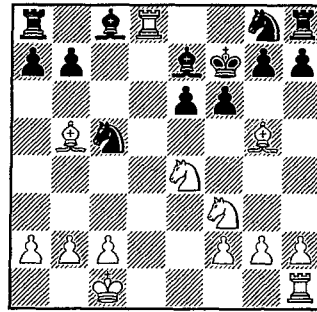
Presumably Tal had missed this move. White threatens 27 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 28 ♖g7 mate against which there is no good defence.

26 ... ♖g7 27 ♖xf6 ♖xe6 28 ♖xe6 ♗b5 29 ♖c7 h5 30 ♖xg6+ ♖f8 31 ♗h6+ ♖e8 32 ♖e6+ ♖d8 33 ♖c5 ♖d7 34 ♖b6 ♗xd3 35 ♗f4 ♖hf8 36 ♖d6+ ♖e7 37 ♖c7+ ♖e8 38 ♗g5 ♖f1+ 39 ♖h2 ♗b1 40 ♖h6 1:0

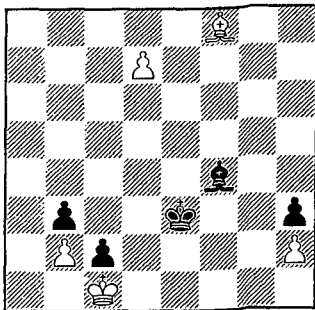
KM5/4: 1) White to play



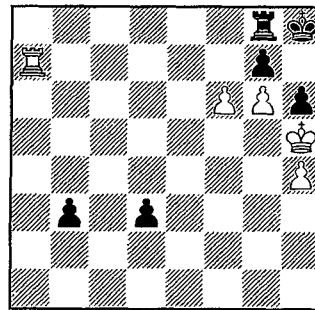
KM5/4: 2) White to play



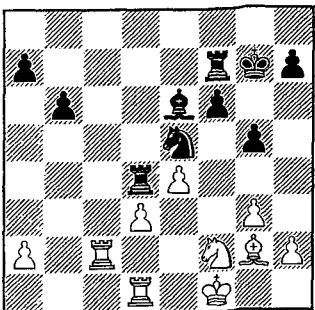
KM5/4: 3) White to play



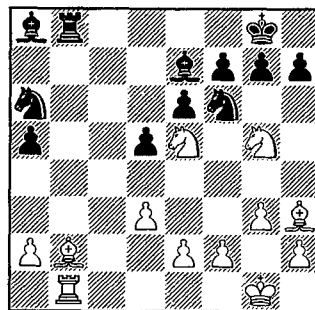
KM5/4: 4) White to play



A5/4: a) Black to play



KM5/4: b) White to play



## 6 The Soulful Pawn

According to Philidor, the brilliant 18th century strategic thinker, “pawns are the soul of chess”. When Philidor first proposed this idea, it was not widely understood by his contemporaries, but more than two hundred years after his death we know just how right he was. The pawn structure might be thought of as the skeleton of a position; an understanding of this structure enables us to formulate good plans.

In this chapter I will not be dealing so much with pawn structure as such, but rather with the pawn as a fighting unit in its own right. In the first week I will examine positions in which pawns fight against pieces, weeks two and three deal with the passed pawn and the art of the blockade, and in week four I will examine the idea of a queen-side pawn majority.

### Month 6/Week 1: Pawn Power

According to some primitive numerical scales, three pawns are needed to counterbalance a minor piece, and five pawns equate to a rook. But this is only a very rough approximation, as the real value of these pieces varies rather wildly according to the position. In the

endgame, two connected pawns on the sixth are usually more than a match for a rook, while a large number of isolated and doubled pawns may be no match for a bishop.

The value of pawns usually rises as the endgame approaches. But now take a look at the following game in which David Bronstein sacrifices a piece for two pawns as early as move eight:

### Bronstein - Rojahn Moscow Olympiad 1956

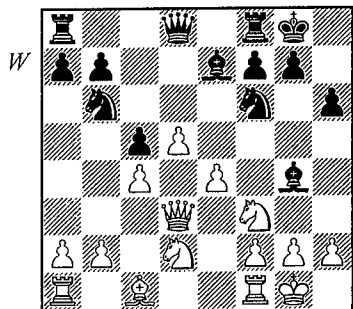
1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙c4 ♘f6 4 ♘g5 d5 5 exd5 ♗a5 6 d3

Morphy's move which supposedly gives Black a promising game after 6 ... h6 7 ♘f3 e4 8 ♙e2 ♘xc4 9 dxc4 and now 9 ... ♙e7 or 9 ... ♙c5. But Bronstein asked himself if Morphy would really be the kind of player to take on such a defensive position rather than pursue his own initiative. Looking once again at this variation he found a fascinating alternative.

6 ... h6 7 ♘f3 e4 8 dxe4!? ♘xc4 9 ♙d4 ♗b6 10 c4 c5

10 ... c6 11 c5 ♗bxd5 12 exd5 ♙xd5 would have given Black a good game, but Rojahn wanted to keep his extra piece.

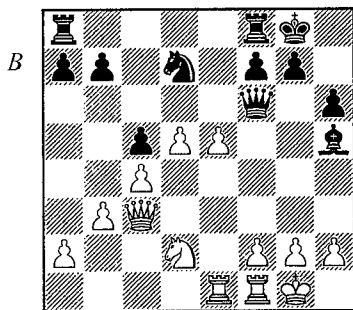
11 ♖d3 ♙g4 12 ♘bd2 ♙e7 13  
0-0 0-0



This was Black's last chance to exchange on f3. After missing this opportunity, the bishop gets shut out of play.

14 ♘e5 ♙h5 15 b3 ♘bd7 16 ♙b2  
♘xe5 17 ♙xe5 ♘d7 18 ♙c3 ♙f6 19  
♙ae1 ♙xc3 20 ♖xc3 ♖f6 21 e5

The most consistent continuation. Black would meet 21 ♖h3 with 21 ... ♖b2 22 ♘b1 ♙e2 23 ♙xe2 ♖xe2 24 ♖xd7 ♖xe4.



21 ... ♖f5 22 f4 ♙g6 23 ♘e4 ♙ab8  
Black might also have considered 23 ... ♖xe4, but 24 ♙xe4 ♙xe4 25 f5! leaves him with a hopeless position.

24 ♖f3 ♙h7

Returning the piece with 24 ... ♘xe5 doesn't help much either after 25 fx5 ♖xe5 26 ♘xc5. And 24 ... ♙h5 25 ♘g3 ♙xf3 26 ♘xf5 ♙g4 27 ♘e7+ ♙h8 28 f5 is also good for White.

25 ♙g4 ♖g6 26 f5 ♖b6 27 ♖g3 f6  
28 e6

The triumphant march of the White pawns continues. Black's pieces can do little against such a relentless and united army.

28 ... ♘e5 29 h4 ♙h8 30 g5  
♙bc8 31 ♙h1 ♖d8 32 g6 ♙xg6 33  
fxg6 b5 34 d6 ♖b6 35 d7 ♘xd7 36  
exd7 ♙cd8 37 ♘xf6 ♖c6+ 38 ♖g2  
♖xg2+ 39 ♙xg2 gxf6 40 ♙e7 1:0

One might justifiably argue that the standard of Bronstein's opposition in this game was not a sufficient test, and that he would never have ventured upon such a course against a stronger opponent. In the following game the extra piece could hardly have been in more dangerous hands, those of the great attacking genius, Alexander Alekhine.

### Euwe - Alekhine Netherlands 1935

1 d4 e6 2 c4 f5 3 g3 ♙b4+ 4 ♙d2  
♙e7 5 ♙g2 ♘f6 6 ♘c3 0-0 7 ♘f3  
♘e4 8 0-0 b6 9 ♖c2 ♙b7 10 ♘e5  
♘xc3 11 ♙xc3

Alekhine's last move offered an interesting exchange sacrifice

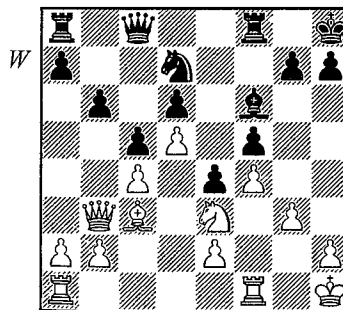
which is known in positions of this type. White would be ill-advised to accept, as after 11 ♙xb7 ♘xe2+ 12 ♙g2 ♘xd4 13 ♖d3 ♘bc6 14 ♘xc6 both 14 ... dxc6!? and 14 ... ♘xc6 give excellent play.

11... ♙xg2 12 ♙xg2 ♖c8 13 d5!

A strong positional move securing White more space in the centre and giving him the better bishop.

13 ... d6 14 ♘d3 e5 15 ♙h1 c6  
16 ♖b3 ♙h8 17 f4 e4 18 ♘b4! c5  
19 ♘c2 ♘d7 20 ♘e3 ♙f6

Understandably Alekhine wishes to exchange off White's stronger bishop on c3, but White has a powerful continuation at his disposal. I suspect that Alekhine invited this complicated line of play rather than suffer in silence.



21 ♘xf5!

Embarking on a "sacrifice" of a piece for three pawns. What makes this game especially interesting are Alekhine's ingenious attempts to complicate the struggle by using his extra piece to attack White's king.

21 ... ♙xc3 22 ♘xd6 ♖b8 23  
♘xe4 ♙f6 24 ♘d2! g5!

White's last move made way for his central pawn advance and Alekhine in turn finds the best available counter-chance. He must try to conjure up some sort of play on the kingside before being crushed by White's centre.

25 e4 gxf4 26 gxf4 ♙d4 27 e5  
♖e8 28 e6 ♙g8 29 ♘f3

29 exd7? was bad because of 29 ... ♖e2 but 29 ♖h3! ♘f6 30 ♘f3 ♙xb2 31 ♙ab1 was the right way to play it, with an overwhelming position. Now things get messy.

29 ... ♖g6 30 ♙g1!

The point of Euwe's 29th move. 30 ♘g5 would be met by 30... ♘e5.

30 ... ♙xg1 31 ♙xg1 ♖f6? 32 ♘g5!

It now becomes clear that 31 ... ♖f5 should have been played because 32 ♘g5 could have been met by 32 ... h6!. White would therefore have had to meet 31... ♖f5 with 32 exd7 ♙xg1+ 33 ♙xg1 ♖xd7 34 ♙f2, with even chances.

32 ... ♙g7 33 exd7 ♙xd7 34 ♖e3  
♙e7 35 ♘e6 ♙f8 36 ♖e5 ♖xe5 37  
fxe5 ♙f5

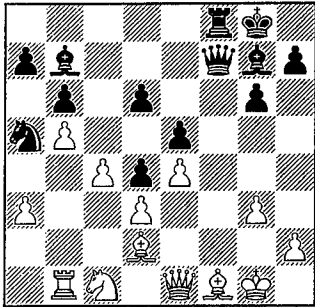
According to Euwe Black should play 37 ... ♙xe6 38 dxe6 ♙f5 39 ♙e1 ♙g8 after which 40 ♙e3! ♙f8 41 ♙a3 ♙xe5 [41 ... a5 42 ♙b3] 42 ♙xa7 ♙xe6 43 b3 ♙e2 44 ♙xh7 ♙xa2 45 ♙b7 is the best.

38 ♙e1 h6?

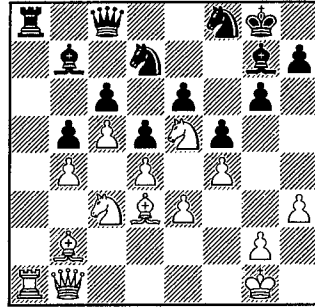
Again missing 38 ... ♙xe6!

39 ♘d8 ♙f2 40 e6 ♙d2 41 ♘c6  
♙e8 42 e7 b5 43 ♘d8 ♙g7 44 ♘b7  
♙f6 45 ♙e6+ ♙g5 46 ♘d6 ♙xe7  
47 ♘e4+ 1:0

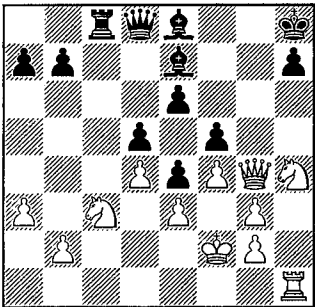
KM6/1: 1) Black to play



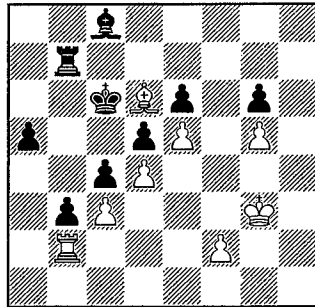
KM6/1: 2) White to play



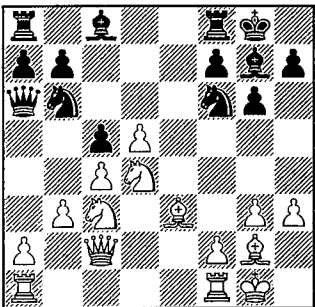
KM6/1: 3) White to play



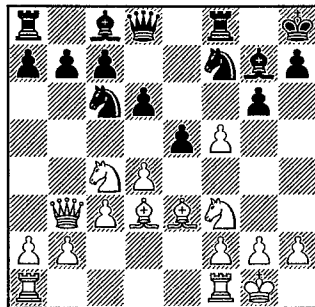
KM6/1: 4) Black to play



A6/1: a) Black to play



A6/1: b) Black to play



**Month 6/Week 2:  
Pushing Passed Pawns**

Passed pawns should be pushed! The nearer they get to the eighth rank the closer they get to promotion. That is not to say that they should be thrown recklessly towards the enemy lines but an advanced passed pawn can be very dangerous.

Alekhine considered the following game to be one of his best. In order to secure the promotion of pawns he sacrifices two queens and two rooks with a further queen sacrifice in the notes!

**Bogolyubov - Alekhine  
Hastings 1922**

1 d4 f5 2 c4 ♖f6 3 g3 e6 4 ♔g2 ♘b4+ 5 ♙d2 ♙xd2+ 6 ♜xd2?!

The knight is misplaced on this square, 6 ♜xd2 followed by 7 ♜c3 is better.

6 ... ♜c6 7 ♜gf3 0-0 8 0-0 d6 9 ♜b3 ♙h8 10 ♜c3 e5! 11 e3

And not 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 ♜xe5?? ♜xe5 13 ♜xe5 ♜xd2 which loses a piece.

11 ... a5!  
Preventing b2-b4.

12 b3 ♜e8! 13 a3 ♜h5! 14 h4

Renewing the threat of capturing on e5. 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♜xe5?? loses to 15 ... ♜xe5 16 ♜xe5 ♜g4 etc.

14 ... ♜g4 15 ♜g5

The cool 15 b4 would have been better, but Bogolyubov wants to drive Black's knight from g4.

15 ... ♙d7 16 f3 ♜f6 17 f4

Black's was threatening ... f5-f4.

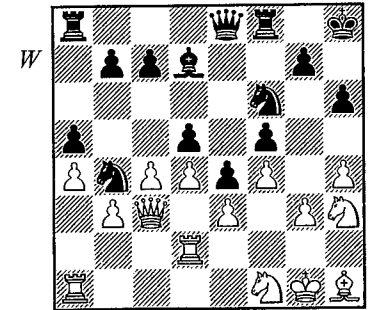
17 ... e4 18 ♜fd1

White prepares to defend his g-pawn with 19 ♜f1 but a preliminary 18 d5! would have been better. Now Black gains more space in the centre.

18 ... h6 19 ♜h3 d5! 20 ♜f1 ♜e7!

Threatening to undermine White's control of d5, provided by the c4 pawn, with the move ...a5-a4. White's next move prevents that but he thereby creates a new weakness on b4.

21 a4 ♜c6! 22 ♜d2 ♜b4 23 ♙h1 ♜e8!



A very strong and unexpected idea. Black's queen retreats from its apparently threatening position on the kingside to put pressure on White's a4-pawn. The point is that 24 ... dxc4 is now threatened, after which 25 bxc4 loses the a-pawn and 25 ♜xc4 concedes the d5-

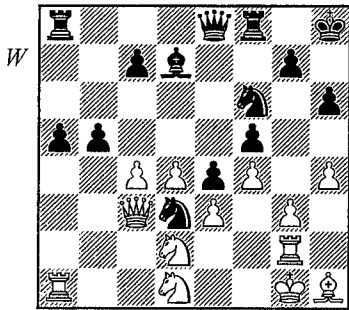
square. Bogolyubov, rather typically, decides to choose the active approach, giving up a4 in order to activate his pieces.

24 ♖g2 dxc4 25 bxc4 ♕xa4 26 ♜f2 ♕d7 27 ♜d2 b5!

Having won a pawn, Alekhine continues his struggle for the d5-square.

28 ♜d1 ♜d3!

Already Black is preparing the following magnificent combination. 28 ... bxc4 would not be good because White's knight would gain access to e5.



29 ♖xa5

After 29 cxb5 ♕xb5 30 ♖xa5 ♜d5 31 ♖a3 ♖xa5 32 ♖xa5 ♖c6, Black's pieces would penetrate decisively.

29 ... b4! 30 ♖xa8

If 30 ♖a1 ♖xa5 31 ♖xa5 ♖a8! 32 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 Black's rook would penetrate decisively in the endgame.

30 ... bxc3! 31 ♖xe8 c2!!

The brilliant point is that the pawn must queen.

32 ♖xf8+ ♜h7 33 ♜f2 c1(♖)+ 34 ♜f1 ♜e1!

Threatening smothered mate with 35 ... ♜f3.

35 ♖h2 ♖xc4

This time threatening a mating attack with 36 ... ♕b5. White is compelled to sacrifice the exchange.

36 ♖b8 ♕b5 37 ♖xb5 ♖xb5 38 g4 ♜f3+! 39 ♕xf3 exf3 40 gxf5

After 40 g5 Black would obtain two united passed pawns after 40 ... ♜g4.

40 ... ♖e2!!

Another brilliant move which places White in zugzwang. If 41 ♜h3 ♜g4! or 41 ♜g4 then 41 ... ♜xg4! wins. And 41 ♖h3 or 41 ♖h1 are also met by 41 ... ♜g4 with mate on g2 should White capture. So after a couple of useless pawn moves, White is compelled to lose material.

41 d5 ♕g8! 42 h5 ♕h7! 43 e4 ♜xe4 44 ♜xe4 ♖xe4 45 d6 cxd6 46 f6 gxf6 47 ♖d2 ♖e2!

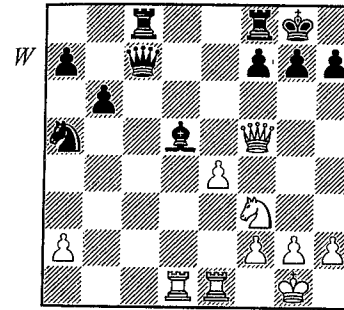
Yet another queen sacrifice to force a winning endgame.

48 ♖xe2 fxe2 49 ♜f2 exf1(♖)+ 50 ♜xf1 ♕g7 51 ♜e2 ♜f7 52 ♜e3 ♜e6 53 ♜e4 d5+ 0:1

In the above game Alekhine's passed pawns arose rather unexpectedly, while the following is a more typical example of a White passed d-pawn emerging from a standard opening set-up. Spassky uses this pawn to tie up the enemy forces, and combines this with threats against the black king.

### Spassky - Petrosian Moscow (World Ch.) 1969

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 e6 3 ♜f3 d5 4 d4 c5 5 exd5 ♜xd5 6 e4 ♜xc3 7 bxc3 cxd4 8 cxd4 ♕b4+ 9 ♕d2 ♕xd2+ 10 ♖xd2 0-0 11 ♕c4 ♜c6 12 0-0 b6 13 ♖ad1! ♕b7 14 ♖fe1 ♖c8 15 d5! exd5 16 ♕xd5 ♜a5 17 ♖f4 ♖c7 18 ♖f5 ♕xd5



After having been outplayed in the opening, Petrosian no doubt realised he was in trouble and thought twenty minutes over this move. He was no doubt loathe to give White a powerful passed d-pawn but 18 ... h6 19 ♕xb7 ♖xb7 20 ♖d7 ♖c7 21 ♖ed1 is not very attractive.

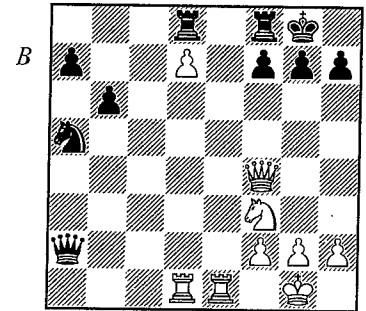
19 exd5 ♖c2

White gains a strong attack after 19 ... ♜c4 20 ♜g5 g6 21 ♖h3 h5 22 ♜e4 ♜d6 23 ♜f6+ ♕g7 24 ♖g3 and 19 ... ♖d6 20 ♜g5 ♖g6 21 ♖xg6 hxg6 22 d6 ♜b7 23 d7 ♖cd8 24 ♖e7 ♜c5 25 ♖d6 gives Black a horrible endgame.

20 ♖f4 ♖xa2 21 d6 ♖cd8 22 d7

The pawn's arrival on the 7th rank spells the beginning of the end

for Black. His pieces will shortly be bound hand and foot, which prevents them from defending their king.



22 ... ♖c4 23 ♖f5 h6

Black could also try 23 ... ♖c6 but then 24 ♜e5 ♖e6 25 ♖c2 followed by 26 ♖c7 is decisive.

24 ♖c1 ♖a6 25 ♖c7 b5 26 ♜d4 ♖b6

Petrosian could have defended more tenaciously with 26 ... ♖d6 27 ♜xb5 ♖d2 28 ♖f1 ♜b3 29 ♖xa7 ♜d4 30 ♜xd4 ♖xd4 31 ♖b7 g6 32 ♖b5 ♕g7, but White would eventually win by opening up Black's kingside.

27 ♖c8! ♜b7

There is no longer any defence, 27 ... ♖xd4 is met by 28 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 29 ♖e8+, 27 ... b4 by 28 ♖e8! ♖xd4 29 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 30 ♖xf8+ ♜xf8 31 ♖c5+! ♖xc5 32 d8(♖)# and 27 ... g6 by 28 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 29 ♖xb5.

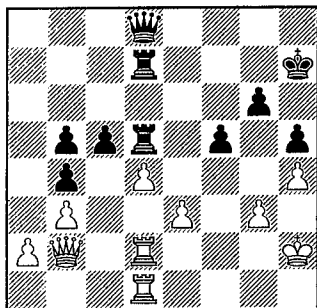
28 ♜c6 ♜d6

Black's last try, but Spassky has prepared an elegant finale.

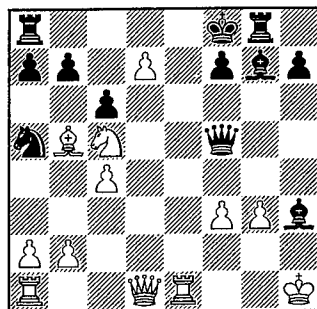
29 ♜xd8! ♜xf5 30 ♜c6 1:0



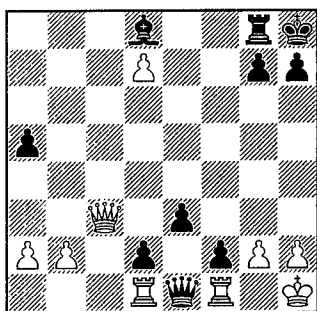
KM6/2: 1) Black to play



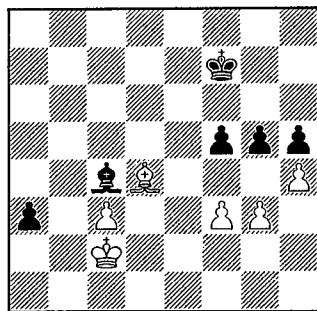
KM6/2: 2) Black to play



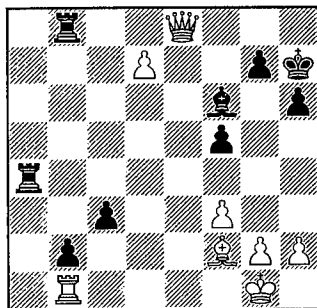
KM6/2: 3) Black to play



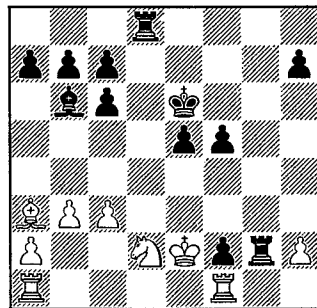
KM6/2: 4) Black to play



A6/2: a) White to play



A6/2: b) Black to play



### Month 6/Week 3: Locking Up The Criminals

According to the highly original chess thinker, Aaron Nimzowitsch, “the passed pawn is a criminal that must be kept under lock and key”. We have seen in the previous two sections just how dangerous these criminal pawns can be. The way to lock them up is to plant a piece firmly in front of them as a blockader.

The piece best suited to the role of blockader is the knight, whose activity is not diminished by such a task and even benefits by being shielded from frontal attack. Bishops also make good blockaders but rooks and queens do not. Major pieces are too valuable to be engaged in a mainly defensive duty and their lateral activity is severely reduced.

The following game is a masterpiece of blockade by that follower of Nimzowitsch, Tigran Petrosian. His brilliant 25th move stops two menacing White pawns in their tracks.

### Reshevsky - Petrosian Zurich (Candidates) 1953

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♙d3 d5 6 ♘f3 c5 7 0-0 ♘c6 8 a3 ♙xc3 9 bxc3 b6 10 cxd5 exd5 11 ♙b2 c4 12 ♙c2 ♙g4 13 ♖e1 ♘e4 14 ♘d2 ♘xd2 15 ♖xd2 ♙h5 16 f3 ♙g6 17 e4 ♖d7 18 ♙ae1 dxe4

An interesting moment. Petrosian presents White with two connected pawns in the centre but will try to restrain their further advance, and hopefully arrange an eventual blockade.

19 fx4 ♖fe8 20 ♖f4

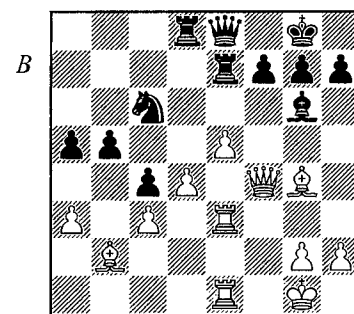
Should White try to restrain Black’s queenside majority with 20 a4, Black can play 20 ... ♘e5 21 ♙a3 ♘d3 22 ♙xd3 cxd3 23 ♖xd3 ♖xa4 according to Bronstein.

20 ... b5 21 ♙d1

Rerouting the bishop to g4 with a view to a further advance of his central pawns.

21 ... ♖e7 22 ♙g4 ♖e8 23 e5 a5 24 ♖e3 ♙d8 25 ♖fe1

White is now threatening to break through with 26 e6, which looks very difficult for Black to meet. Petrosian finds a brilliant reply in order to maintain the blockade.



25 ... ♖e6!!

A really beautiful move. Black calmly puts the rook en prise in order to free e7 for his knight. This in turn is en route for the wonderful d5-square when White’s central

pawns will be firmly blockaded. Possibly White would have done better now with 26 h4 intending to attack Black's kingside with 27 h5 and 28 ♖g3. Reshevsky, however, hopes to take the material and win.

**26 a4 ♖e7**

26 ... b4 27 d5 ♖xd5 28 ♙xe6 fxe6 29 ♗xc4 was probably what Reshevsky had in mind, but Petrosian sticks to his strategy of blockade.

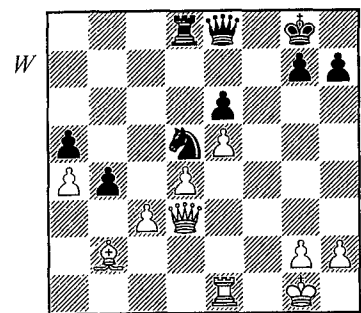
**27 ♙xe6 fxe6 28 ♗f1**

28 ♗f2 ♖d5 29 ♖f3 b4 is unpleasant for White

**28 ... ♖d5 29 ♖f3 ♙d3 30 ♖xd3**

If White is to have any chance of winning then he must start challenging for the light squares

**30 ... cxd3 31 ♗xd3 b4**



**32 cxb4**

In time-trouble, Reshevsky chooses the simplest move. 32 c4 ♖b6 33 ♗c1 ♖xa4 34 ♙a1 ♗c6 and 33 d5 exd5 34 c5 ♖xa4 35 ♙d4 ♖c8 36 ♗f3 ♗e6 are given by Bronstein.

**32 ... axb4**

32 ... ♖xb4 was also possible.

**33 a5 ♖a8 34 ♙a1 ♗c6 35 ♙c1 ♗c7 36 a6 ♗b6 37 ♙d2 b3 38**

**♗c4 h6 39 h3 b2 40 ♖b1 ♖h8 41 ♙e1 1/2-1/2**

Black's position is slightly superior but during the adjournment he found no way to win. A very interesting struggle.

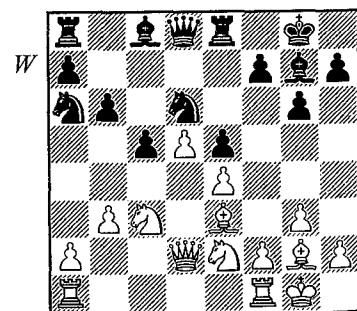
Nimzowitsch had a saying with regard to the art of blockade: "First restrain, next blockade and lastly destroy." The following game is a marvellous illustration of the three stages of this process:

**Euwe - Pilnik  
Amsterdam 1950**

**1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 d5 4 cxd5 ♖xd5 5 ♙g2 ♙g7 6 e4 ♖b6 7 ♖e2 c5 8 d5 0-0 9 0-0 e6 10 ♖bc3 ♖a6 11 ♖f4 e5 12 ♖fe2 ♖c4!**

Black's top priority is to blockade White's passed d-pawn and on d6 this knight will also exert pressure against the pawn on e4. White should challenge this idea with 13 ♖b5! ♙d7 14 ♖ec3 ♗b6 15 a4 or 13 ... ♖c7 14 ♗c2!.

**13 b3?! ♖d6 14 ♙e3 b6 15 ♗d2 ♖e8**



Not so much to avoid the exchange of dark-squared bishops, as restraint against White's next move **16 f4?!**

White should content himself with 16 f3 followed by 17 ♖fd1.

**16 ... ♖c7 17 ♖f2?**

This is a very serious mistake which presents Black with the e5-square. Black would get a good position anyway with ... ♙a6 and ... ♖7b5, but it would not be as serious as in the game.

**17 ... exf4! 18 ♙xf4**

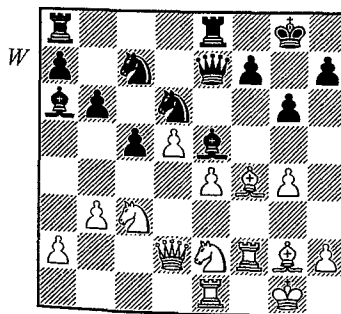
White has to concede e5 as 18 gxf4 ♖xe4 19 ♙xe4 ♖xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♙xa1 loses a pawn.

**18 ... ♙a6!**

18 ... ♖xe4 19 ♙xe4 ♖xe4 20 ♖xe4 ♙xa1 21 ♖2c3! is no longer good, White would have an irresistible attack.

**19 ♖e1 ♗e7 20 g4 ♙e5!**

The blockading pieces on d6 and e5 prove to be immensely strong.



**21 ♙xe5 ♗xe5 22 ♖g3?**

White should try to regain control of e5 with 22 ♖h1 intending 23 ♖g1 and 24 ♖f3.

**22 ... ♖e7 23 ♙f1 ♙c8 24 ♙e2 ♙d7 25 ♖ef1 ♖f8 26 ♗c1 ♖ce8 27 ♖h1 f6 28 ♖g1 ♖g7?!**

Black should have played 28 ... ♖f7 intending 29 ... ♖ed6 and then set about putting the f7 knight on e5. But even now Black is better.

**29 ♙f3? ♗g5!!**

A superb positional move. Black is willing to give White two connected passed pawns, the point being that they will be blockaded.

**30 ♗xg5 fxg5 31 ♖gf1 ♖ge8 32 ♙e2 ♖xf2 33 ♖xf2 ♖g7 34 h3 ♖f6 35 ♙f3 ♙e8 36 ♖e2 ♖d7 37 ♖d2 ♖e5!**

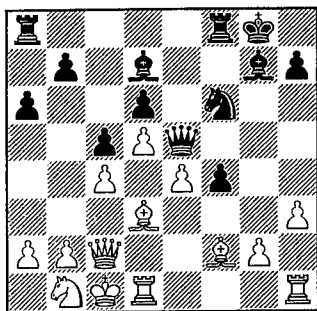
Now everything is clear, White's pawns are immobile and Black will create a passed pawn on the queen-side. The rest of the game is beautifully conducted by Black.

**38 ♙e2 b5! 39 ♖c2 ♖c7 40 ♖d1 c4 41 bxc4 bxc4 42 ♖c3 ♖f6 43 ♖b1 ♖b7 44 ♖d2 ♙a4! 45 ♖c1 ♖b2 46 ♖xc4 ♖exc4 47 ♙xc4 ♙c2 48 ♙b3 ♖b1! 49 ♖xb1 ♖xb1 50 ♖e2 ♙xe4+**

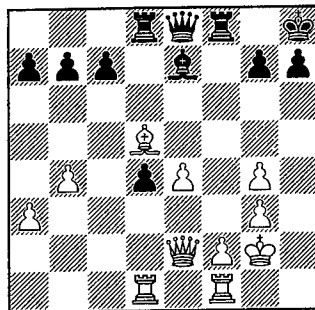
The destruction stage arrives.

**51 ♖h2 ♖e5 52 ♖c3 ♙d3 53 ♖g3 ♖e4+ 54 ♖xe4 ♙xe4 55 d6 ♖xd6 56 ♙g8 h6 57 ♙f7 ♙d5 58 ♙xg6 ♙xa2 59 h4 a5 60 hxg5 hxg5 61 ♖f3 a4 62 ♖e3 ♙e6 63 ♖d4 ♙xg4 64 ♖c3 ♙d1 65 ♙f5 ♖e5 66 ♙d7 ♖f4 67 ♖b4 ♙c2 68 ♖c3 ♙b3 69 ♖b4 ♙f7 70 ♖xa4 ♙g6 71 ♖b4 ♙f5 72 ♙c6 g4 73 ♖c5 ♙e4 74 ♙d7 g3 75 ♙h3 ♖e3 76 ♖d6 ♙f5! 77 ♙g2 ♖f2 0:1**

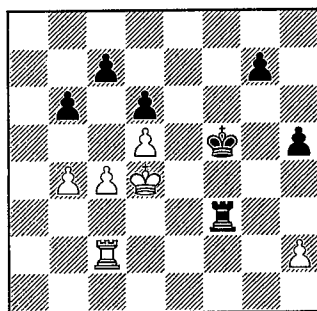
KM6/3: 1) Black to play



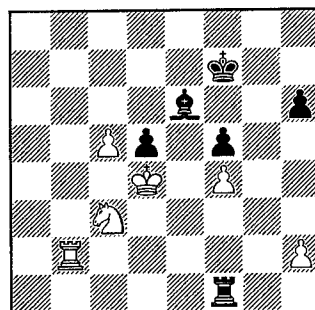
KM6/3: 2) White to play



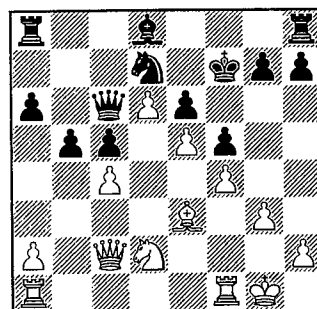
KM6/3: 3) Black to play



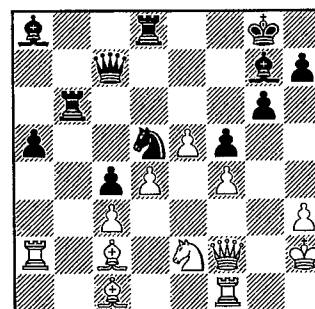
KM6/3: 4) White to play



A6/3: a) Black to play



A6/3: b) Black to play



### Month 6/Week 4: The Queenside Majority

In many games an unbalanced pawn structure will arise in which one of the sides will have a pawn majority on the queenside. The great chess thinker Wilhelm Steinitz held that such a queenside majority was an advantage, because it could yield a passed pawn far from the opposing king. But although there are some positions in which such majorities are valuable, modern day practice has not confirmed this idea as an unshakable tenet of chess strategy.

In the first of this week's games we see the supremely gifted Capablanca use such a majority to deadly effect. In the second we see Alekhine champion the other side of this case, winning with a kingside majority because of his superior piece placements.

### Marshall - Capablanca New York 1909

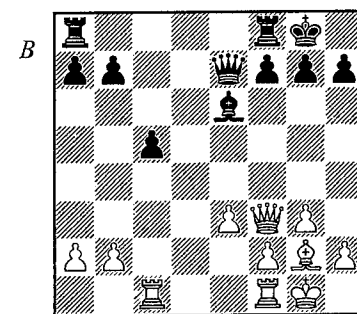
1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 c5 4 cxd5  
exd5 5 ♘f3 ♘c6 6 g3 ♗e6 7 ♗g2  
♗e7 8 0-0 ♘f6 9 ♗g5?!

9 dxc5 is better and after 9 ...  
♗xc5 White should proceed with  
either 10 ♘g5 or 10 ♘a4 ♗e7  
11 ♗c3.

9 ... ♘e4! 10 ♗xe7 ♗xe7 11 ♘e5  
♘xd4 12 ♘xe4 dxe4 13 e3 ♘f3+  
14 ♘xf3?

14 ♗xf3 should have been played with an approximately even game. Now Black starts to assume the initiative.

14 ... exf3 15 ♗xf3 0-0! 16 ♗ac1  
White should have tried to mobilize his own pawn majority with 16 e4. Marshall plays tactically in a position that calls for strategy and his game goes quickly downhill.



16 ... ♗ab8 17 ♗e4

Threatening to simplify with 18  
♗h3, but again it was better to try  
and mobilise the kingside pawn  
majority with 17 e4.

17 ... ♗c7 18 ♗c3 b5 19 a3 c4 20  
♗f3

20 b3 ♗a5 21 b4 gives Black a  
passed c-pawn but 20 ♗d1! ♗fd8  
21 ♗cc1 looks more tenacious.

20 ... ♗fd8 21 ♗d1 ♗xd1+ 22  
♗xd1 ♗d8 23 ♗f3 g6

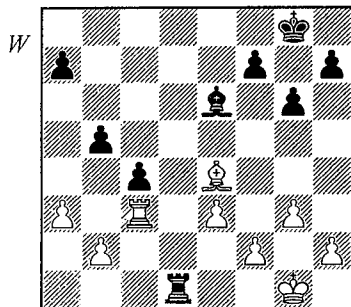
A simple and very strong move  
which threatens to win a piece with  
24 ... ♗d5 25 ♗g4 h5 and also frees  
Black's rook from the need to defend  
the eighth rank.

24 ♖c6 ♜e5!

After the immediate exchange of queens with 24 ... ♜xc6 25 ♙xc6, Black would have to waste time defending the b-pawn. Now White has to beat a hasty retreat because of the threat of 25 ... ♞d2!

25 ♜e4 ♜xe4 26 ♙xc4 ♞d1+!

Stopping White's king from coming to the centre with ♙f1 and ♙e2. White is now helpless against the advance of Black's queenside pawn majority.



27 ♙g2 a5!

"Forward patrol!" as Tartakower liked to put it.

28 ♞c2 b4 29 axb4 axb4 30 ♙f3 ♞b1 31 ♙e2 b3 32 ♞d2

32 ♞c3 ♞xb2 33 ♙xc4 ♞c2 wins a piece.

32 ... ♞c1

Threatening ♞c2. In order to prevent this, White must lose a piece.

33 ♙d1 c3 34 bxc3 b2 35 ♞xb2

If 35 ♙c2 there is 35 ... ♞xc2!+ 35 ... ♞xd1 36 ♞c2

Marshall liked to say that "nobody ever won a game by resign-

ing". On this particular occasion he might have made an exception.

36 ... ♙f5 37 ♞b2 ♞c1 38 ♞b3 ♙e4+ 39 ♙h3 ♞c2 40 f4 h5 41 g4 hxg4+ 42 ♙xg4 ♞xh2 43 ♞b4 f5+ 44 ♙g3 ♞e2 45 ♞c4 ♞xe3+ 46 ♙h4 ♙g7 47 ♞c7+ ♙f6 48 ♞d7 ♙g2 49 ♞d6+ ♙g7 0:1

### Yates - Alekhine The Hague 1921

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 ♙b4 6 ♙d3?! e5 7 ♘e2 d5 8 exd5 ♘xd5 9 0-0 ♘c6 10 ♘xd5 ♜xd5 11 a3 ♙a5 12 b4 ♙c7 13 ♞e1 f5

Alekhine himself admitted that this was rather a risky move and that White could now get a dangerous attack with 14 ♘f4! ♜f7 15 b5! ♘e7 16 b6! axb6 17 ♙b5+ ♘c6 18 ♜d3!. In a later game against Euwe he played 13 ... ♙e6.

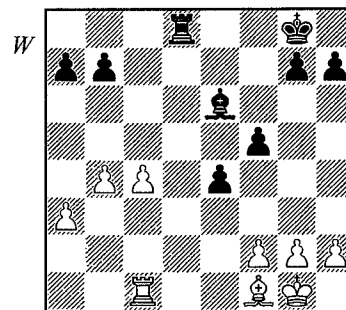
14 c4 ♜f7 15 ♘c3 0-0 16 ♘d5 ♙e6 17 ♙b2 e4 18 ♘xc7 ♜xc7 19 ♙f1 ♘e5! 20 ♙xe5 ♜xe5 21 ♜c2 ♞ad8 22 ♞ad1 ♞xd1!

Alekhine unexpectedly gives his opponent temporary control of the d-file. The point is that after 23 ♞xd1 Black will play 23 ... f4! followed by either getting a passed pawn on the e-file or setting up a direct attack on White's king.

23 ♜xd1 ♜c3! 24 ♜c1 ♜xc1 25 ♞xc1 ♞d8

This is what Alekhine had to say about this endgame: "The ending in this game is noteworthy in the

sense that White's celebrated queenside pawn majority proves to be completely illusory. Regarding this I must remark that one of the most characteristic prejudices of modern theory is the widely-held opinion that such a pawn majority is important in itself without any evaluation of the pawns which comprise this majority or of the placing of the pieces. In the given position Black has the following compensation: 1) Great freedom for his king in comparison with the White king 2) Dominating position of the rook on the only open file. Used correctly, these two advantages should provide the basis for a win."



26 g3 ♙f7 27 c5 ♙f6

Avoiding the exchange of bishops, which would lead to a drawn rook endgame, and bringing the king further towards the centre.

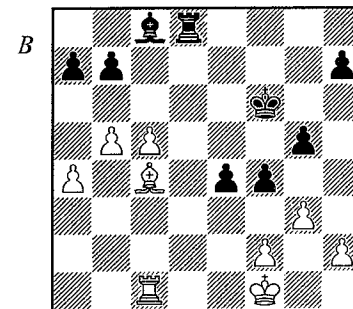
28 ♙c4 ♙c8! 29 a4?!

Bringing the king to e1 should have had a higher priority than this advance of the queenside

pawns, though even in this case White would have had a difficult position.

29 ... g5 30 b5?! f4 31 ♙f1

Finally getting the right idea but rather too late in the day.



31 ... ♞d2! 32 ♙e1 ♞b2 33 gxf4 gxf4 34 ♙e2

After 34 ♞d1 ♙g4 35 ♞d6+ ♙e7 36 ♞d4, 36... ♙f3 followed by 37...e3 would have been decisive.

34 ... ♙e5! 35 c6 bxc6 36 ♞xc6

After the alternative 36 bxc6 Alekhine gave 36 ... f3 37 ♙d1 (37 ♙f1 e3 38 fxe3 f2+ 39 ♙d1 ♙g4+ 40 ♙e2 ♙xe2#) 37 ... e3 38 ♙xf3 exf2+ 39 ♙f1 ♙a6++.

36 ... ♙e6 37 ♙d1 ♞b1

With the double threat of ... ♙b3 and ... ♙g4.

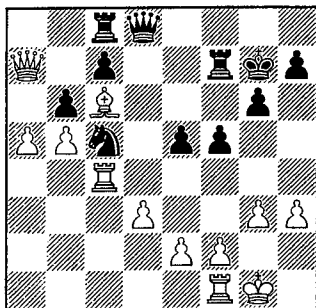
38 ♞c5+

If 38 ♙d2 then 38 ... e3+ 39 fxe3 fxe3+ 40 ♙c2 ♙f5+ wins a piece.

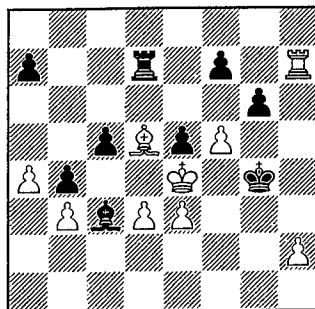
38 ... ♙d4 39 ♞c2 e3 40 fxe3+ fxe3 41 ♞c6 ♙g4 42 ♞d6+ ♙e5 43 h3 ♙h5 0:1

The threat of 44 ... e2 wins both the rook and the bishop.

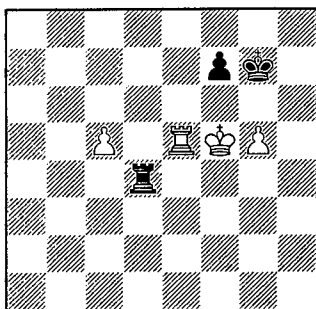
KM6/4: 1) White to play



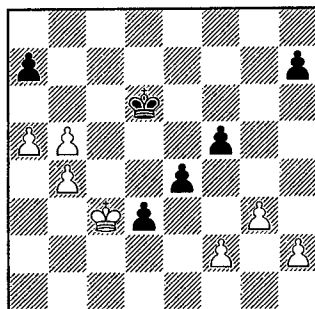
KM6/4: 2) White to play



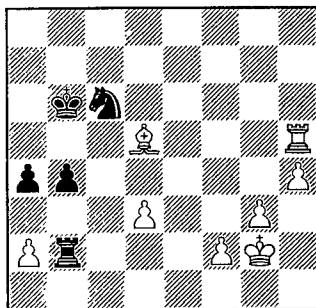
KM6/4: 3) White to play



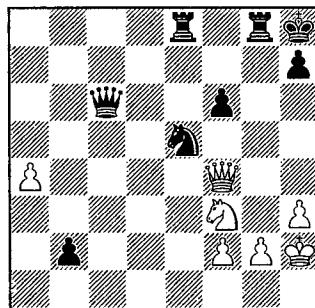
KM6/4: 4) White to play



A6/4: a) Black to play



A6/4: b) Black to play



## 7 The Classical Centre

A united duo of pawns in the middle of the board, on e4 and d4 for example, is known as a classical centre. The benefits of such central fortifications are manifold, one of the main ones being that it enables you to post your pieces more effectively than those of your opponent. It has long been known that centralised pieces are generally stronger than those at the edge, and a strong pawn centre will deny the opponent central squares on which to post his pieces.

There are a number of openings in which a player will try to establish a classical pawn centre from the outset. This month we will be taking a look at games from four different openings to see how the pawn centre dynamics work in practical play.

The first two weeks cover the venerable and romantic King's and Evans Gambits which remain popular to this day. In weeks three and four we will be looking at two modern openings in which White sets up a central pawn duo, the Exchange Grünfeld and the Petrosian Variation of the Queen's Indian Defence.

### Month 7/Week 1: King's Gambit

The King's Gambit is the most romantic of all chess openings and

enjoyed its peak popularity over a century ago. Today it is seen as being a risky proposition, but it is occasionally played by enterprising Grandmasters such as Spassky, Bronstein, Shirov, Hebden, Gallagher, and most recently, Nigel Short.

One of the main ideas of the move 2 f4 is to wrench Black's e-pawn away from the centre and open the f-file. White will often be able to build an attack along the f-file, as for example in the following game.

### Bronstein - Dubinin USSR Ch., Leningrad 1947

1 e4 e5 2 f4

At the time of this game the King's Gambit was Bronstein's darling. He has maintained his affection for it throughout his career.

2 ... exf4! 3 ♖f3 g5 4 h4

Probably the best move, White gives Black no time to consolidate his pawn structure with ... h6 and ... ♗g7

4 ... g4 5 ♘e5

This move defines the Kieseritzky Gambit. White could also try the Allgaier Gambit with 5 ♘g5 after which 5 ... h6 forces White to give up a piece with 6 ♘xf7 ♗xf7, which was for many years thought

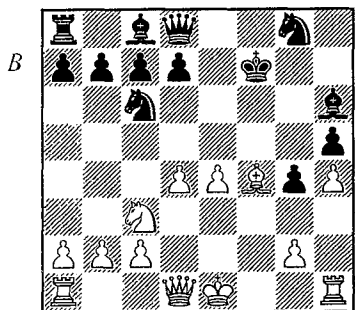
to be inadequate. Spanish GM Miguel Illescas has, however, revived it with the move 7 ♖c3.

5 ... h5

The so-called “long-whip” variation which was discredited by this game. The modern preference is for either 5 ... ♗g7 or 5 ... ♜f6.

6 ♗c4 ♖h7 7 d4 ♗h6 8 ♖c3 ♜c6 9 ♜xf7 ♖xf7 10 ♗xf7+ ♜xf7 11 ♗xf4!

Black forced his opponent to sacrifice on f7, but this further sacrifice must have been most unexpected and unwelcome. White prises open the f-file, after which Black’s king comes under serious pressure.

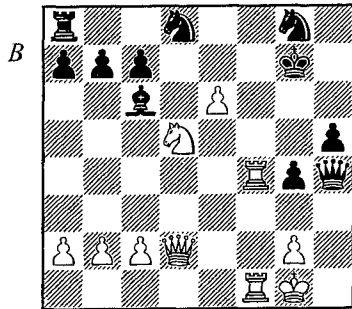


11 ... ♗xf4 12 0-0 ♖xh4 13 ♖xf4+ ♜g7 14 ♖d2!

The key move. White transfers his queen to a dark square and prepares to double rooks on the f-file with 15 ♖af1.

14 ... d6 15 ♖af1 ♜d8 16 ♜d5 ♗d7 17 e5! dxe5 18 dxe5 ♗c6 19 e6!

Preparing the final assault by prising open the c3-h8 diagonal for the queen.



19 ... ♗xd5 20 ♖f7+ ♜xf7 21 ♖xf7+ ♜h8 22 ♖c3+ ♜f6 23 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 24 ♖xf6+ ♜h7 25 ♖f5+ ♜h6 26 ♖xd5 ♜g6 27 ♖d7 1:0

The following game features another great King’s Gambiteer, Boris Spassky. The opening goes badly for White but he causes problems with the inherent advantage of the strong centre.

### Spassky - Portisch Budapest 1967

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 ♜f3 d6

The so-called “Fischer Defence” which the great Bobby once mistakenly claimed was a “refutation” of the move 3 ♜f3. The modern antidote is 4 d4 g5 5 h4 g4 6 ♜g1.

4 ♗c4 h6 5 d4 g5 6 g3 ♜c6 7 gxf4?

This move was later criticised by the theoreticians, though this tends to be an easier thing to do with the benefit of hindsight. Instead of this, 7 0-0 ♗g7 8 gxf4 was suggested, with very complex play in prospect.

7 ... g4 8 ♜g1 ♖h4+ 9 ♜f1 ♜f6 10 ♜c3 g3!

The storm clouds are gathering around White’s king and he only escapes at the cost of material.

11 ♜g2 gxf2 12 ♖xh2 ♗g8+ 13 ♜h1 ♖xh2+

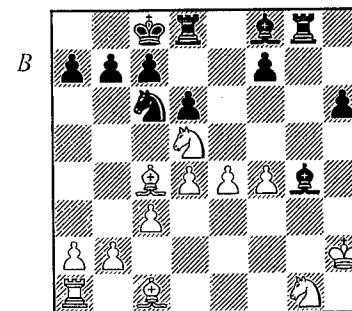
Winning the exchange, but various commentators later claimed that Black should instead play 13 ... ♖g3, maintaining the attack. Yet this also is not very clear after, for example, 14 ♗e2 ♜g4 15 ♗xg4 ♗xg4 16 ♖d3 ♖xd3 17 cxd3 ♜xd4 18 ♜d5 0-0-0 19 ♗e3 ♜f3 20 ♖c2 with pressure for the pawn.

14 ♜xh2 ♜g4+ 15 ♖xg4

After 15 ♜g2 ♜e3+ 16 ♜f2 ♜xd1+ White would have to misplace his queen’s knight when recapturing on d1.

15 ... ♗xg4 16 ♜d5 0-0-0 17 c3!

Black has won material but it is far from easy for him to realise this advantage. White’s “King’s Gambit” centre makes it difficult for Black to activate his pieces.



17 ... ♗e7 18 ♜e3 ♖df8 19 ♗d2 ♜d8 20 ♜xg4 ♖xg4 21 ♗f1 ♜b8 22 ♗h3 ♖g7 23 d5!

Restricting Black’s knight

23 ... ♗h4 24 ♖f1 ♗e8 25 ♗f5 ♖eg8 26 ♗h3 f5?!

In his efforts to win, Portisch sacrifices a pawn, but he is starting to take serious risks. 26 ... f6 on the other hand, is certainly not worse for White after 27 ♜f3 ♗g3+ 28 ♜h1 ♜f7 29 ♜d4 as his pieces are jumping in to f5 and e6.

27 exf5! ♗e8 28 ♖f3 c6 29 dxc6 ♜xc6?!

I don’t like this as it loses control of d5 and e6. Instead, I think he should prefer the modest 29 ... bxc6 intending ... d6-d5 followed by activating the knight via b7 to d6.

30 ♗e3 ♜c7 31 ♗f2 ♗f6 ?!

31 ... ♗xf2 looks better. Now White starts to take over.

32 ♖d3 h5 33 ♖d2 ♗e4 34 ♜e2 h4 35 ♗g2 ♖e8 36 ♗d5 a6 37 ♜h3 ♜e7 38 ♗e6 ♜g8 39 c4 ♗e7 40 ♜c3 ♜f6 41 ♖d3 ♖f8 42 ♗d4 ♜b8 43 b4!

A mark of class. Before playing ♜c3-e4, White first improves his position to the maximum extent.

43 ... ♗d8 44 a4 b6 45 ♜e4!

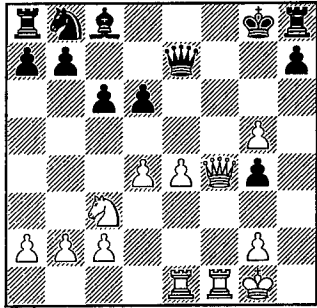
Now White is winning.

45 ... ♜xe4 46 ♗xg7 ♜f2+ 47 ♜g2 ♜xd3 48 ♗xf8 ♜c7

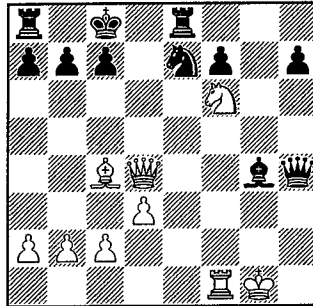
Or 48 ... ♜xf4+ 49 ♜f3 ♜xe6 50 fxe6 etc.

49 ♗h6! ♜xb4 50 ♗g5 ♜d3 51 ♜h3 ♜c5 52 ♜xh4 ♜xa4 53 f6 ♜c5 54 ♗f5 ♜d7 55 f7 ♜f8 56 ♜h5 1:0

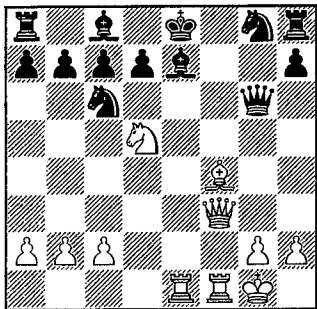
KM7/1: 1) White to play



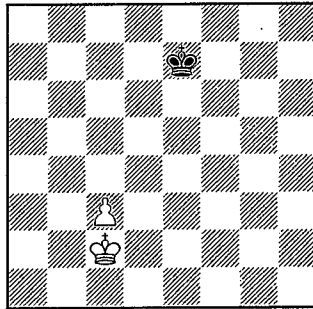
KM7/1: 2) White to play



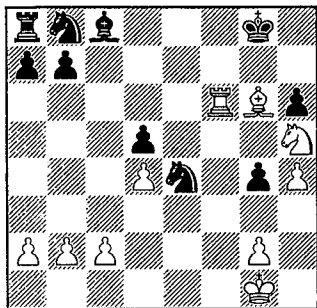
KM7/1: 3) White to play



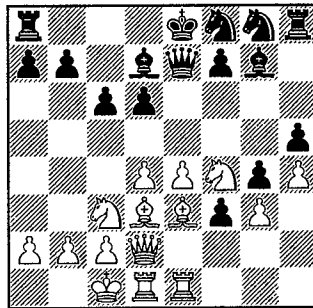
KM7/1: 4) White to play



A7/1: a) White to play



A7/1: b) White to play



**Month 7/Week 2:  
Evans Gambit**

The Evans Gambit is a romantic opening of the same ilk as the King's Gambit. After the moves 1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♗c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5 White accelerates his plan of playing 4 c3 and 5 d4 by giving Black a pawn. It looks like a mad and reckless thing to do with one's pawns but the Evans is a serious opening. It has been adopted by two of the greatest players in the history of the game, Bobby Fischer and Gary Kasparov.

The Evans used to feature heavily in top events, its merits having been debated by Mikhail Chigorin and Wilhelm Steinitz in their two Championship matches.

**Chigorin - Steinitz  
World Ch. Havana 1889**

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♗c6 3 ♙c4 ♙c5 4 b4 ♙xb4 5 c3 ♙a5 6 0-0 ♚f6

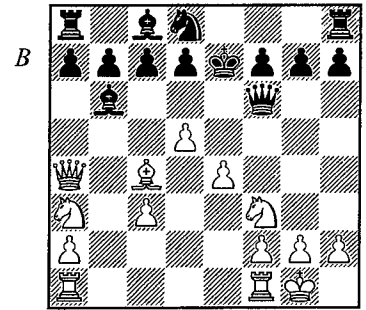
Wilhelm Steinitz stubbornly preferred this move, despite some rather poor results with it. His eventual successor, Emanuel Lasker, would later introduce the rational 6 ... d6 7 ♚b3 ♚d7 8 dxe5 ♙b6, giving back the pawn for freedom.

7 d4 ♗ge7 8 ♙g5 ♚d6 9 d5 ♗d8 10 ♚a4 ♙b6 11 ♗a3 ♚g6

This position is already very unpleasant for Black, 11 ... a6 12 ♙b3 threatens 13 ♗c4 and 11 ... ♗g6 is

met by 12 ♗b5 ♚f8 13 ♙e3 c6 14 ♙xb6 cxb5 15 ♙xb5. On 11 ... c6, Chigorin pointed out the line 12 ♚ad1 f6 13 dxc6 ♚xc6 14 ♗b5! fxe5 15 ♗xe5 ♚c5 16 ♗d6+ ♗f8 17 ♚xd7!! threatening mate.

12 ♙xe7 ♗xe7 13 ♗xe5 ♚f6 14 ♗f3



14 ... ♚xc3?

Suicide chess. Black should play 14 ... d6 after which 15 e5 dxe5 16 ♗xe5 ♗f8 (and not 16 ... ♚e8 17 ♚ae1 ♗f8 18 ♗g4!) 17 ♚ae1 g6 but then 18 ♙b3 ♗g7 19 ♗b5 a6 20 ♗d4 leaves Black with a difficult position because of his awkwardly placed pieces.

15 e5! c6

As Chigorin himself noted, "Black has no moves that could help develop his game". 15 ... d6 is met by 16 exd6+ cxd6 17 ♚fe1+.

16 d6+ ♗f8 17 ♙b3!

A very strong move which allows the transfer of White's queen to the kingside.

17... h6 18 ♚h4 g5 19 ♚h5 19 ♗xg5? ♚xe5 is not good. 19 ... ♚d3 20 ♚ad1!

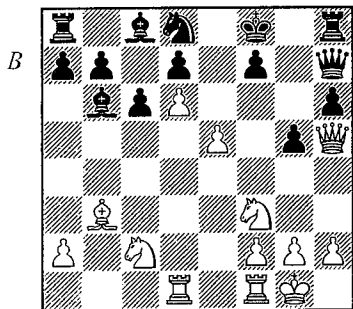
And not 20 ♖xcg5? ♜f5.

20 ... ♜h7

Attempting to bail out by exchanging queens with 20 .. ♜g6 is decisively met by 21 ♜xg6 fxg6 22 e6 ♖g7 23 ♜fe1.

21 ♖c2

21 e6 ♖xe6 22 ♖xe6 fxe6 23 ♖c5 was given by Steinitz as being even stronger, but Bogolyubov pointed out that Black can answer this with 23 ... ♜g8 24 ♜d3 g4! intending 25 ... ♜g5.



21 ... ♖g7?

21 ... ♖e6 was more tenacious according to Steinitz.

22 ♖cd4 ♜g6

The threat was 23 ♖c2 and 22 ... ♖xd4 23 ♖xd4 followed by f2-f4 would have led to a massacre.

23 ♜g4 h5

The line 23 ... ♖e6 24 ♖c2 h5 25 ♜g3 h4 26 ♜g4 ♜h5 was given by Steinitz, but Bogolyubov pointed out that 24 ♖f5+ and ♖e7 is good.

24 ♖f5+ ♖f8 25 ♜xg5 ♜xg5 26 ♖xg5 h4

Steinitz also gave 26 ... ♖e6 27 ♖xe6+ fxe6 28 ♖e7 ♜h7 29 ♖h1

♖d8 30 ♖xc8 ♜xc8 31 f4 ♜f7 32 f5 ♜xf5 33 ♜xf5+ exf5 34 ♜f1 etc.

27 ♖h1 ♜h5 28 f4 ♖e6 29 g4! hxg3 30 ♖xg3 ♜h6 31 ♖xf7 ♖xf7 32 f5 ♖e8 33 fxe6 dxe6 34 ♖e4 1:0

The threat is simply 35 ♖f6+ and if 34 ... ♖d8 then 35 d7+ ♖xd7 36 ♖d6+ ♖e7 37 ♜f7# or 34 ... ♖d7 35 ♖f6+ ♖d8 36 ♖g8 ♖e8 37 d7.

The following game is one of those in which Kasparov brought back the Evans Gambit, much to the surprise of the chess world. His demolition of a player of the strength of Jeroen Piket shows that it is an opening not to be sneezed at.

**Kasparov - Piket  
Amsterdam 1995**

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♖c4 ♖c5 4 b4 ♖b6

Declining the gambit may seem like a safe option, but it gives White a good game without material investment.

5 a4 a5 6 b5 ♖d4 7 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 8 c3 ♖b6 9 d4 exd4?!

Giving up the centre like this is not a very good idea, Piket might have been hoping for 10 cxd4 d5! 11 ♖xd5 ♖e7 (12 ♖c3 c6) but he is in for a disappointment. The normal way to play it would be with 9 ... ♜e7 followed by 10 ... d6, strong-pointing the e5 square.

10 0-0! ♖e7

Deciding that discretion is the better part of valour.

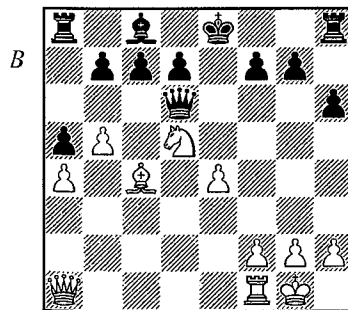
11 ♖g5! h6 12 ♖xe7 ♜xe7 13 cxd4 ♜d6?!

If Piket imagined he would be able to get away with snatching White's d-pawn like this he was in for a big disappointment. After the superior 13 ... ♜b4, Kasparov gave 14 ♖a3 0-0 15 ♜d3 d5 16 exd5 (or maybe 16 ♖xd5! ♜xd4 17 ♜xd4 ♖xd4 18 ♜ad1 ♖c5 19 ♖c4) 16 ... ♖d7 17 ♖c2 ♜d6 18 ♖e3, when being a pawn up is better than being a pawn down.

14 ♖c3! ♖xd4

After 14 ... ♜xd4 Kasparov gave the spectacular 15 ♖d5!! ♜xc4 (15 ... ♜e5!?) 16 ♜c1 ♜a2 17 ♜xc7! ♖xc7 18 ♖xc7+ ♖e7 and now 19 ♖xa8 d6 20 ♜c1+- looks like the most convincing way. An equally spectacular reply awaits Piket's choice.

15 ♖d5! ♖xa1 16 ♜xa1



16 ... 0-0?

According to Kasparov this is the decisive mistake (he gave 16 ... f6 17 b6 cxb6 18 e5 fxe5 19 ♜e1 ♖d8

20 ♜xe5) though one can understand Piket's desire to get castled! Black's queen now gets chased from pillar to post.

17 e5 ♜c5 18 ♜c1! c6

This loses, but what else can Black do? After 18 ... d6 Kasparov gave the line 19 ♖b3 ♜a7 20 ♜xc7 dxe5 21 ♜xe5 when neither 21 ... ♖h8 22 ♜xf7 ♜xf7 23 ♜e8+ ♖h7 24 ♜xf7+- nor 21 ... ♖e6 22 b6 ♜b8 23 ♖e7+ ♖h8 24 ♖xe6+- would bring any joy.

19 ♖a2

Another good move was 19 ♖b3 after which Kasparov gave 19 ... ♜a7 20 b6 ♜b8 21 ♖c7 d5 22 exd6 ♖d7 23 ♜e1+-.

19 ... ♜a3

Neither could Black save himself by giving up his queen, Kasparov's analysis ran 19 ... ♜xc1+ 20 ♜xc1 cxd5 21 ♖xd5 d6 22 exd6 ♖e6 23 ♖xb7 ♜ab8 24 ♜c7 ♜fc8 25 ♖xc8 ♜xc8 26 ♜xc8+ ♖xc8 27 b6 ♖f8 28 d7 ♖xd7 29 b7 with a coronation in the offing. After 19 .. ♜a7 White would win with 20 b6 ♜b8 21 ♖e7+ ♖h8 22 ♜d4 d5 23 exd6+-.

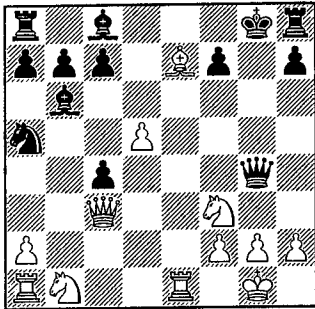
20 ♖b6

Kasparov also gave some lengthy analysis to show that 20 ♜c3! was also good. But his actual choice seems to win fairly convincingly.

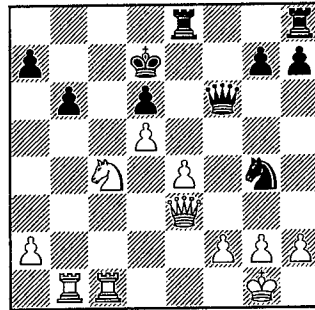
20 ... d5 21 ♖xa8 ♖h8 22 ♖b6 ♖e6 23 h3 ♜d8 24 bxc6 bxc6 25 ♜c3 ♜b4 26 ♜xc6 ♜b8 27 ♖xd5 ♜xa4 28 ♜c1 ♜a3 29 ♖c4 1:0



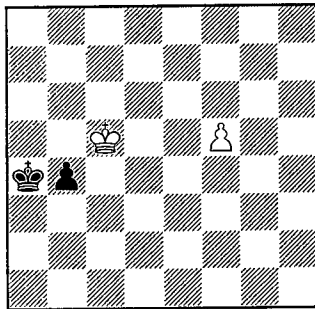
KM7/2: 1) White to play



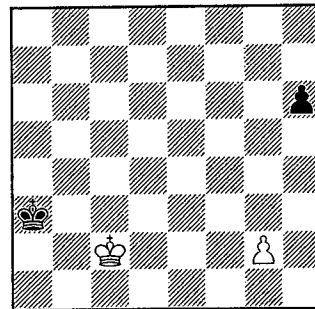
KM7/2: 2) White to play



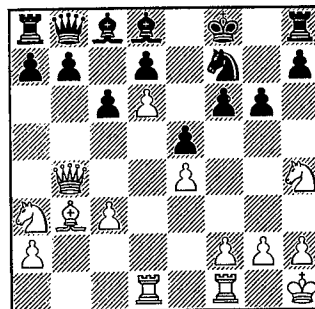
KM7/2: 3) White to play



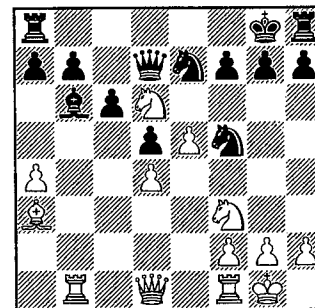
KM7/2: 4) White to play



A7/2: a) White to play



A7/2: b) White to play



### Month 7/Week 3: Exchange Grünfeld

In the 1920s and 30s, a number of young masters came to question various classical notions, including the necessity of occupying the centre with pawns. They argued that controlling it with pieces was equally valid, and that in some cases you could actually let your opponent occupy the centre and then spend time attacking it.

In the light of these new ideas the so-called “Hypermoderns” or “Neo-Romantics” worked out a whole range of exciting new openings. Defences such as the Nimzo-Indian (1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♗b4) control the centre with pieces whilst the Alekhine (1 e4 ♖f6) and Grünfeld (1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 d5) invite White to set up a pawn centre with the idea that it will then be subject to attack.

These last two openings have been subject to continual debate and controversy, their risky nature leading many theoreticians to claim “refutations” at one time or another. In spite of this, both these openings are still going strong, the Grünfeld in particular enjoying the patronage of some of the World’s leading players to this day. Kasparov, Kamsky, Ivanchuk and Timman, to name but a few, are among the illustrious players who include the opening in their repertoire.

At the present time I want to concentrate mainly on the merits of having the central pawns.

### Knaak - Uhlmann East German Ch. 1978

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♘c3 d5 4 cxd5 ♗xd5 5 e4

The direct acceptance of Black’s invitation to occupy the centre is clearly one of the critical lines. It is this line which has caused Black his most awkward moments.

5 ... ♗xc3 6 bxc3 ♗g7 7 ♗c4 0-0 8 ♗e3!?

An interesting twist in the move-order by Knaak. It is designed to go for a more aggressive set-up than usual should Black play one of the early ... b6 lines.

8 ... b6

After 8 ... c5 9 ♗e2 the game would return to normal lines but now Knaak gets a chance to implement the idea behind 8 ♗e3.

9 h4!? ♗b7 10 ♖f3!

Using the rather slow pace of Black’s development to launch an immediate attack. Knaak is widely feared for his direct attacking style.

10 ... ♖d7 11 ♗e2

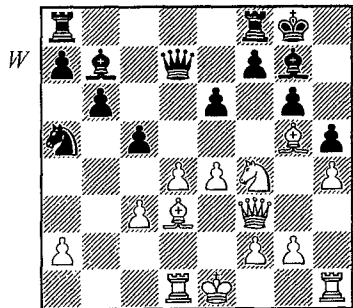
The immediate 11 h5? is met by 11 ... ♖c6.

11 ... h5 12 ♗g5 ♗c6 13 ♖f4 e6!

After 13 ... ♗a5 Knaak gave 14 ♖xg6 ♗xc4 15 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 16 ♗xe7 ♖fe8 17 ♗g5 and on 13 ... ♖h7 he intended 14 ♖xh5 gxh5 15 ♖xh5+ ♖g8 16 ♖h3.

**14 ♖d1! ♖a5 15 ♙d3 c5?**

After defending with great circumspection, Uhlmann allows a decisive sacrificial breakthrough. Black had to try 15...♙c6!

**16 ♖xh5! gxh5**

16 ... f6 also gives White a winning attack after 17 ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 18 ♙xf6 ♖f8 19 ♙g4 ♖xf6 20 e5 ♖f5 21 ♙xg6+-.

**17 ♙f6 ♙xf6 18 ♙xf6 ♙d8**

After 18 ... ♖fc8 19 ♖h3 ♖f8 20 ♖f3! White has threats such as ♙b5 and d5.

**19 ♙h6 f6**

After 19 ... f5 (intending 20 ♖h3 f4 or 20 ♙xe6+ ♖f7) Knaak gave 20 ♙g6+ ♖h8 21 ♙xh5+ ♖g8 (or 21 ... ♖g7 22 ♖h3 f4 23 e5+-) 22 cxf5 exf5 (22 ... ♙e7 23 f6!! ♖xf6 24 ♖h3) 23 ♙g6+ ♖h8 24 ♙h6+ ♖g8 25 ♙xf5!! etc.

**20 ♙g6+ ♖h8 21 e5 f5**

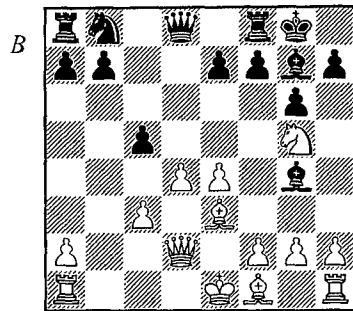
After 21 ... ♙e7 White wins with 22 ♙h6+ ♖g8 23 ♖h3 ♖f7 24 ♖g3+ ♖g7 25 ♙h7+ according to Knaak.

**22 ♙h6+ ♖g8 23 ♖h3 ♖f7 24 ♖g3 1:0**

The Grünfeld has featured heavily in the championship matches between Karpov and Kasparov, which shows the high regard in which Kasparov holds this defence. Unfortunately for him, the results have favoured Karpov, particularly in the Exchange Variation. Here is the 17th game of their 1990 match.

**Karpov - Kasparov  
Lyons World Ch. (17) 1990**

**1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♖c3 d5 4 cxd5 ♖xd5 5 e4 ♖xc3 6 bxc3 ♙g7 7 ♙e3 c5 8 ♙d2 0-0 9 ♖f3 ♙g4 10 ♖g5!?**



A very interesting idea, avoiding the exchange of the valuable knight on f3. After 10 ... h6, White wants to hit the bishop on g4 with 11 h3, and when it retreats he will calmly drop the knight back to f3.

**10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 ♖c6**

After the ensuing sad retreat, the move 9 ... ♙g4 looks rather point-

less. The way to try and justify it was with Efim Geller's interesting suggestion of 11 ... h6!? 12 h3 hxg5 13 hxg4 ♙d7! (After 13 ... ♖c6 14 ♖d1 ♙d7 15 ♙e2 Black would be unable to increase the pressure on d4) 14 ♙e2 ♖d8 15 ♖d1 ♙a4 16 f3 ♖a6! or 16 ... ♖c6!? 17 d5 ♖ac8.

**12 h3 ♙d7 13 ♖b1**

Kasparov's next move makes this attack on b7 seem less relevant. It would therefore have been better to play 13 ♖f3.

**13 ... ♖c8! 14 ♖f3**

On 14 ♖xb7 Kasparov had prepared 14 ... ♖xd4! 15 ♙xd4 ♙xd4 16 ♙xd4 ♖c1+ 17 ♖d2 ♖d1+ 18 ♖xd1 ♙a4+-

**14 ... ♖a5 15 ♙d3 ♙e6 16 0-0**

With White completing his development, we can take a look at the prospects for the forthcoming middlegame. White has maintained his pawn duo on d4 and c4 but Black's grip on the c4 square gives him compensation.

**16 ... ♙c4 17 ♖fd1 b5 18 ♙g5 a6 19 ♖bc1 ♙xd3 20 ♖xc8 ♙xc8 21 ♙xd3 ♖e8?**

A strange and passive move after which Black's position becomes desperate. The immediate 21 ... ♙b7 is better.

**22 ♖c1 ♙b7 23 d5 ♖c4 24 ♖d2!**

By exchanging this knight White manages to invade on the open c-file.

**24 ... ♖xd2**

White is also in control after 24 ... h6 25 ♙h4 g5 26 ♙g3 ♖xd2 27

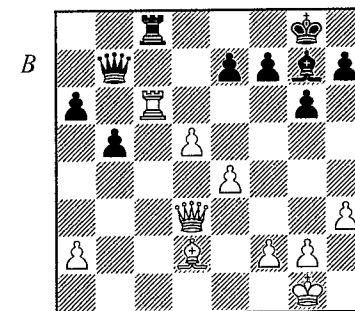
♖c7 or 27 ♙xd2 ♖c8 28 ♖xc8+ ♙xc8 29 e5.

**25 ♙xd2!**

After 25 ♙xd2 Black would get some play with 25 ... b4.

**25 ... ♖c8 26 ♖c6!**

The decisive move, from a strategic point of view. By gaining an outpost on the c-file White ensures that he will control it.

**26 ... ♙e5**

Black gets mated after 26 ... ♖xc6 27 dxc6 ♙xc6 28 ♙d8+ ♙f8 29 ♙h6 etc.

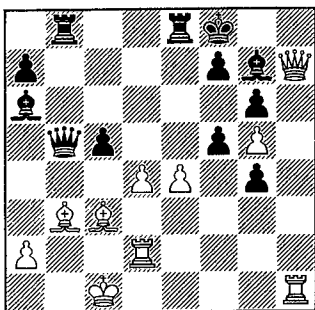
**27 ♙c3! ♙b8**

27 ... ♙xc3 28 ♙xc3 ♖xc6 29 ♙xc6 ♙a7 30 e5 ♖f8 31 ♙c8+ ♖g7 32 d6 gives White a winning queen and pawn ending.

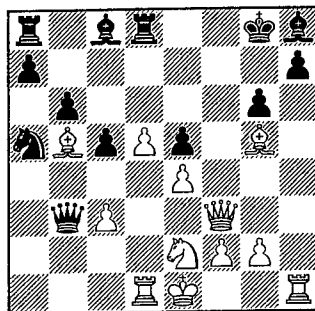
**28 ♙d4 f6 29 ♙a5 ♙d6 30 ♙c3 ♖e8 31 a3 ♖g7 32 g3 ♙e5 33 ♙c5 h5 34 ♙c7 ♙a1 35 ♙f4 ♙d7 36 ♖c7 ♙d8 37 d6! g5 38 d7 ♖f8 39 ♙d2 ♙e5 40 ♖b7 1:0**

Black is defenceless, one of the threats being 41 ♙a5!. If 40 ... ♖g6 then 41 ♙c6 is good.

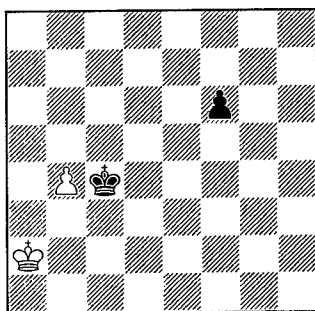
KM7/3: 1) White to play



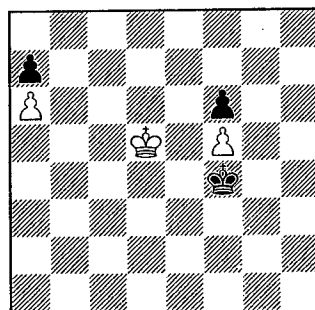
KM7/3: 2) White to play



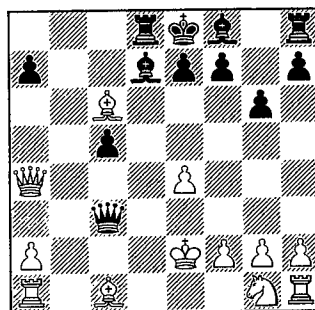
KM7/3: 3) White to play



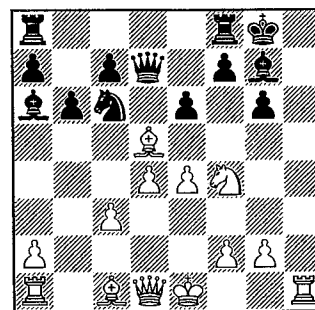
KM7/3: 4) White to play



A7/3: a) White to play



A7/3: b) White to play



### Month 7/Week 4: 4 a3 Queen's Indian

When Petrosian used to play 4 a3 against the Queen's Indian Defence nobody took it very seriously. But when Garry Kasparov first appeared on the scene and started using this move to annihilate his opponents, it soon became high fashion.

The idea is very logical, White wants to fight for the e4 and d5 squares with ♖b1-c3, without having to worry about this knight being pinned with ...♗b4. He is willing to invest a tempo in order to do this.

It has now become fairly well established that the main line runs 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 b6 4 a3 ♗b7 5 ♘c3 d5 6 cxd5 ♘xd5 after which White often obtains a classical pawn centre, Black a queenside pawn majority.

One of the greatest exponents of 4 a3 is Boris Gelfand. In the following game he shows us how to win with a passed d-pawn.

### Gelfand - Lerner Norilsk 1987

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 b6 4 ♘c3 ♗b7 5 a3 d5 6 cxd5 ♘xd5 7 ♗c2

A rather modern refinement on the old 7 e3. White intends to create a pawn centre with 8 e4 and he can also castle queenside.

7 ... ♗e7 8 e4 ♘xc3 9 bxc3 0-0 10 ♗d3 c5 11 0-0 cxd4

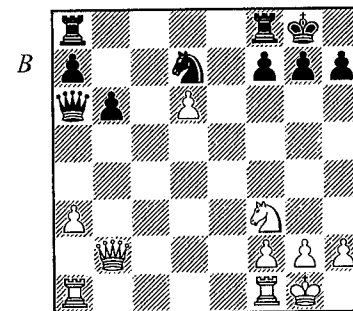
I suspect that 11...♖c8 12 ♗e2 ♗a6 is the most precise move order when 13 ♗b2 would not be good because of 13 ... ♗xd3 14 ♗xd3 ♗a6 15 ♗xa6 ♘xa6 16 ♘e5 ♗fc8. The exchange of queens increases the importance of Black's queenside majority.

Having said that, 13 ♗f4 is also very reasonable. Sakaev - Alterman, USSR 1978 continued with 13 ... ♗xd3 14 ♗xd3 ♗a6 15 ♗e3 ♘d7 16 ♗fd1 ♗a4! 17 h4! cxd4 18 cxd4 ♘f6 19 ♗d3 with the freer game for White.

12 cxd4 ♗c8 13 ♗e2 ♗a6 14 ♗b2

14 ♗f4 is also possible, but White uses the fact that Black has already exchanged pawns on d4 to post his bishop on a more active diagonal.

14 ... ♗xd3 15 ♗xd3 ♗a6 16 ♗d2 ♘d7 17 d5 exd5 18 exd5 ♗f6 19 d6 ♗xb2 20 ♗xb2



The game reaches a position very much akin to the Spassky - Petrosian encounter in last month's notes. In such positions White's

classic plan is to use the advanced d-pawn to tie up Black's forces and then create threats on the kingside

**20 ... b5 21 ♖ad1 ♜fe8 22 ♖d5 ♜ab8 23 ♜fd1 ♜c6 24 h4!**

Commencing action against Black's kingside, the further advance of this pawn will create weaknesses. Black's queenside majority is relatively ineffective in this position, the creation of a passed pawn will take too much time.

**24 ... a6 25 h5**

White could also consider 25 ♖g5 g6 26 h5, with strong pressure against Black's king.

**25 ... h6 26 ♘e5!**

Very instructive. Black's knight is an ideal blockader because its activity is in no way inhibited by the d-pawn. A queen would be much worse and a rook worse still.

**26 ... ♘xe5 27 ♜xe5 ♜d7 28 ♜de1 ♜e6 29 ♜xe6 fxe6 30 ♜e5 ♜d8 31 ♜d1 a5 32 ♜d3**

The immediate 32 ♜c3! was stronger. White finds this idea slightly later.

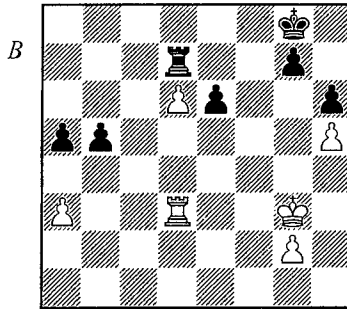
**32 ... ♜c8 33 ♘h2 ♜f8 34 ♜c3!**

The passed pawn on d6 is so strong that White maintains his advantage even after the sacrifice of the pawn on f2. The most important thing for White is to activate his king.

**34 ... ♜xf2 35 ♜c7 ♜f7 36 ♜xd7**

White could also keep the advantage with 36 ♜xa5.

**36 ... ♜xd7 37 ♘g3!**



The king is "en route" for e5 and in fact there is no way to stop it reaching this square. 37 .. e5 38 ♘g4 ♘f7 39 ♘f5 e4 40 ♜d1 e3 41 ♘e5 e2 42 ♜e1 ♜d8 43 ♘d5 ♜e8 44 d7 ♜c3 45 ♘d4! wins for White.

**37 ... ♘f7 38 ♘f4 ♘e8 39 ♘e5 ♜f7 40 ♜c3**

Black would draw easily after 40 ♘xe6? ♜f6+ 41 ♘e5 ♘d7. After Gelfand's 40 ♜c3, 40 ... ♘d7 41 ♜c7+ ♘e8 42 ♘xe6 would win for White.

**40 ... ♘d8 41 ♘xe6 b4 42 axb4 axb4 43 ♜g3! ♜b7?**

After this Black finds himself in zugzwang. 43 ... ♜f6+ 44 ♘e5 ♜f2 was necessary.

**44 ♜g4! ♘e8 45 ♜c4 ♜b8**

45 ... ♘d8 46 g4 b3 47 ♜a4 ♜b8 48 ♜f4 ♘e8 49 d7+ is the winning procedure once again.

**46 ♜c7 b3**

Or 46 ... ♘f8 47 ♜f7+ ♘g8 48 d7 b3 49 ♜f1 etc.

**47 ♜xg7 ♘f8 48 ♜f7+ ♘g8 49 d7 b2 50 ♜f1 ♘g7 51 ♜b1 ♜b6+ 52 ♘e7 ♜b7 53 ♘e8 1:0**

An instructive game by Gelfand. The next one is a more dramatic

example in which White uses the pawn centre to launch his pieces into the attack.

### Cebalo - Miralles Marseilles 1986

**1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘f3 b6 4 a3 ♘b7 5 ♘c3 d5 6 cxd5 ♘xd5 7 ♜c2 c5 8 e4 ♘xc3 9 bxc3 ♘d7 10 ♘f4**

It is important to prevent 10 ... ♜c7 as 10 ♘d3 ♜c7 11 ♘b2 cxd4 12 cxd4 ♜xc2 13 ♘xc2 ♘a6 gives Black equality.

**10 ... cxd4 11 cxd4 ♜c8 12 ♜b3 ♘e7**

After 12 ... ♜f6 White should play 13 ♜e3 ♜g6 14 ♘d3 and 12 ... ♘xe4 is dangerous for Black after either 13 ♘a6 ♜c2 14 0-0 or 13 ♘b5.

**13 ♘d3 0-0**

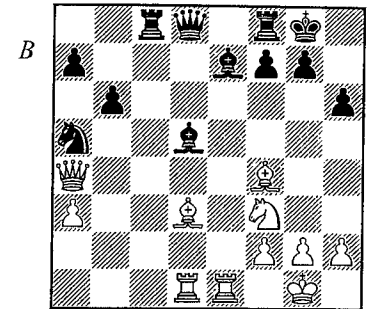
13 ... ♘f6!? hits e4 before White can defend it with 14 ♜fe1. White could keep an edge with 14 ♜b5+ ♜d7 15 ♘e5 ♜xb5 16 ♘xb5+ ♘f8 17 f3 or try for more with 14 ♘b5+ ♘f8 15 d5!?

**14 0-0 ♘b8 15 ♖ad1 h6 16 ♜fe1 ♘c6 17 d5! ♘a5 18 ♜a4 exd5**

If 18 ... ♜c3 there follows 19 d6 ♘f6 20 e5 ♘xf3 21 gxf3 ♘g5 22 ♘g3 which leaves Black paralysed.

**19 exd5 ♘xd5 (D) 20 ♘xh6!**

Commencing a sacrificial attack which is especially impressive because of Black's counter-chances.



**20 ... ♘f6**

If 20 ... gxf6 then 21 ♜g4+ ♘g5 22 ♜f5 wins easily enough but 20 ... ♘c4 demands accurate play by White. He would have to find 21 ♘e5! ♘b2 22 ♜g4! ♘f6 23 ♘b1 ♘xd1 24 ♜f5 g6 25 ♘xg6 etc.

**21 ♜g4 ♜e8 22 ♜xe8+ ♜xc8 23 ♜f5 ♘e6 24 ♜h7+ ♘f8**

Black has defended against the first wave of the attack but his position has been severely compromised White should now play 25 ♘g5! intending ♜h8+ and ♜xg7.

**25 ♘d2 ♘b3 26 ♘f4 ♜d8 27 ♜e1 ♘c5 28 ♘c2 ♜d5! 29 h4 ♘e7 30 ♘g5 ♜d8 31 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 32 h5 ♜d4 33 ♘e3 ♜c4 34 h6 gxf6 35 ♘b3 ♜c6 36 ♘xh6 ♜h8?**

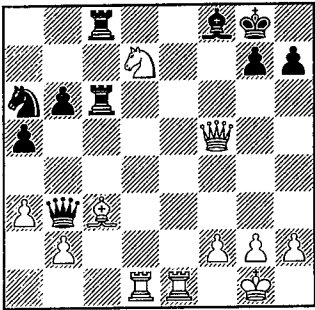
The final mistake. 36 ... ♜d4 37 ♜g8 ♜d8 would hold on.

**37 ♜e4 ♜c8 38 ♜b4+**

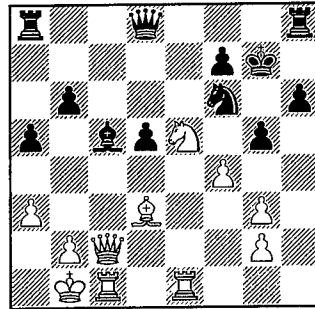
Forcing Black's king into the open and winning material.

**38 ... ♜c5 39 ♘xe6 fxe6 40 ♘e3 a5 41 ♘xc5+ ♜xc5 42 ♜e4 ♜d6 43 ♜h7+ 1:0**

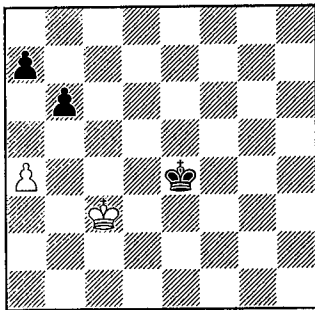
KM7/4: 1) White to play



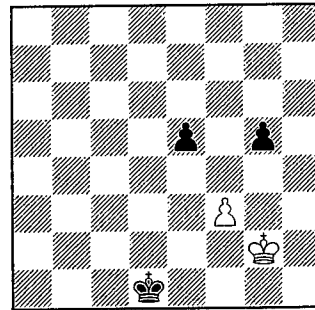
KM7/4: 2) White to play



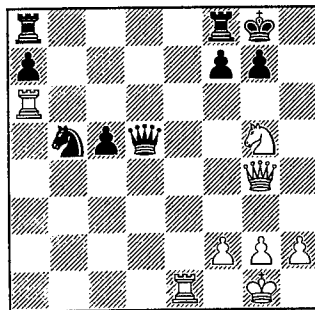
KM7/4: 3) White to play



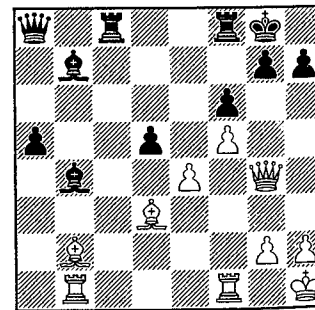
KM7/4: 4) White to play



A7/4: a) White to play.



A7/4: b) White to play



## 8 Hanging Pawns

A pawn duo, with no support from colleagues on either their left or right, are known as hanging pawns. Standing side by side, they can have all of the advantages of the broad pawn centre in that they cover a wide range of squares. The disadvantage is that they are more vulnerable to attack. Should one of them be forced to advance, holes will appear which can be occupied by the opposing forces.

In the first two weeks we will look at the most usual scenario in which the hanging pawns stand on the d- and c-files, and come under pressure along these half-open files. In weeks three and four we will look at hanging centre pawns.

### Month 8/Week 1: Hanging Pawn Heaven

Just as with a united centre, hanging pawns can represent a powerful attacking force. The energy of forces massed behind them can suddenly be unleashed with devastating force and the typical d4-d5 thrust occurs time and time again.

The first game this week was played by Paul Keres, one of the strongest players never to become World Champion. The second was a spectacular effort by one of the

greatest champions, Garry Kasparov.

### Keres - Taimanov USSR Ch., Moscow 1951

1 c4 ♖f6 2 ♗f3 e6 3 ♘c3 d5 4 e3 ♙e7 5 b3 0-0 6 ♙b2 b6 7 d4 ♙b7 8 ♙d3 dxc4 9 bxc4 c5 10 0-0 cxd4 11 exd4 ♗c6 12 ♖e2

Setting a trap which Black sees through. After 12 ... ♗xd4? White wins with 13 ♗xd4 ♖xd4 14 ♗d5! ♖c5 15 ♙xf6! ♙xf6 (or 15 ... gxf6 16 ♖g4+ ♖h8 17 ♖h4 f5 18 ♗xe7) 16 ♖e4.

Nevertheless White should have played 12 ♖c1 so that after 12 ... ♗b4 his bishop could retreat to b1 without shutting in his rook on a1.

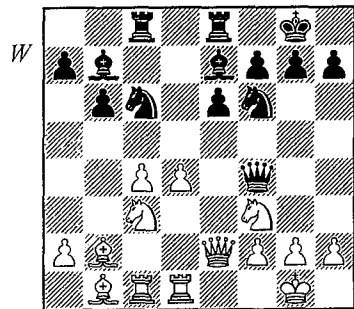
12 ... ♖e8?!

12 ... ♗b4! was better after which 13 ♙b1 ♙xf3 14 ♖xf3 ♖xd4 15 a3 ♗a6 16 ♖b7 ♙d6! 17 ♖xa6 ♙xh2+ at least draws. Keres recommended either 14 gxf3!? ♖xd4 15 ♗e4 or 13 ♖fd1!? ♗xd3 14 ♖xd3.

13 ♖fd1 ♖c8 14 ♖ac1 ♖d6

According to Keres, 14 ... ♗b4 15 ♙b1 ♙xf3 16 ♖xf3!? ♖xc4 17 d5 exd5 18 a3 ♗c6 19 ♙a2 ♖c5 20 ♗xd5 gives dangerous attacking chances.

15 ♙b1 ♖f4

**16 d5!**

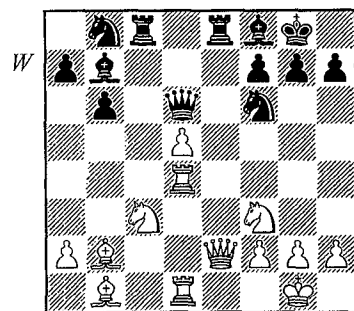
Unleashing White's pieces in typical style.

**16 ... exd5 17 cxd5**

Keres reported that he also spent time considering 17  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{dxd5}$  18  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{ef6}$  19  $\text{dxc6}$ !  $\text{fxe2}$  20  $\text{cxb7}$  which would also have been strong. But he chose the simple continuation of the game because he was unable to fully calculate the consequences.

**17...  $\text{b8}$** 

After 17 ...  $\text{a3}$  there is 18  $\text{dxc6}$ !  $\text{fxe2}$  19  $\text{cxb7+}$  and 17 ...  $\text{a5}$  18  $\text{d4}$   $\text{d6}$  19  $\text{d3}$  leaves the knight out of play.

**18  $\text{d4}$   $\text{d6}$  19  $\text{d1}$   $\text{f8}$ ?**

Taimanov underestimated the strength of White's next move. 19

...  $\text{bd7}$  would have been a better defence, but even so the position is dangerous after 20  $\text{g5}$ !?

20  $\text{e4}$ !  $\text{xe4}$  21  $\text{fxe4}$   $\text{fxe4}$ ??  $\text{fxe4}$   $\text{wh6}$

22 ...  $\text{g6}$  was better after which White should avoid 23  $\text{d4}$   $\text{f6}$  24  $\text{g5}$ ?  $\text{xd5}$ ! He should play either 24  $\text{h4}$ !  $\text{d7}$  25  $\text{h5}$  or 23  $\text{g5}$   $\text{og7}$  24  $\text{wh4}$   $\text{h5}$  (24 ...  $\text{h6}$  25  $\text{og7}$   $\text{og7}$  26  $\text{wh6+}$ !) 25  $\text{e4}$   $\text{d8}$  26  $\text{ef6+}$   $\text{gh8}$  27  $\text{of5}$   $\text{ic5}$  28  $\text{wg5}$  threatening 29  $\text{oxg6}$ .

**23  $\text{g5}$ !  $\text{d6}$** 

And not 23 ...  $\text{g6}$  24  $\text{xf7}$ ! etc.

**24  $\text{h4}$ !  $\text{d7}$  25  $\text{wf5}$   $\text{ef6}$  26  $\text{oxf6}$** 

In time-trouble, a few errors appear. 26  $\text{xf7}$ !  $\text{xf7}$  27  $\text{we6+}$   $\text{cf8}$  28  $\text{xd6+}$   $\text{cg8}$  29  $\text{we6+}$   $\text{gh8}$  30  $\text{d6+}$  is simpler.

**26 ...  $\text{gxf6}$** 

After 26 ...  $\text{xf6}$  27  $\text{wh7+}$   $\text{cf8}$  White should play 28  $\text{e1}$ !  $\text{g6}$  29  $\text{xf7}$   $\text{ic7}$  (or 29 ...  $\text{xf7}$  30  $\text{wh8+}$   $\text{wg8}$  31  $\text{wf6+}$   $\text{wf7}$  32  $\text{xd6+}$ ) 30  $\text{e8+}$ !  $\text{xe8}$  31  $\text{xd6+}$   $\text{xd6}$  (31 ...  $\text{d8}$  32  $\text{xc7+}$ !) 32  $\text{oxg6+}$  with a winning attack.

**27  $\text{xf7}$ !  $\text{c1}$** 

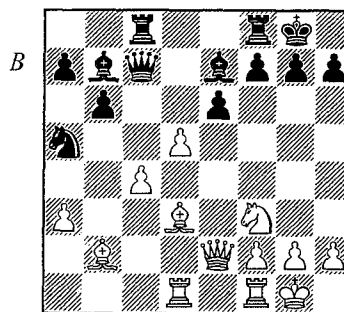
27 ...  $\text{xf7}$ ! was better when White wins with 28  $\text{d7+}$   $\text{cg8}$  (28 ...  $\text{e7}$ ? 29  $\text{d6}$   $\text{ic1}$  30  $\text{we7+}$   $\text{cg8}$  31  $\text{wh7+}$ ) 29  $\text{xd6}$   $\text{ic1}$  30  $\text{wb8+}$   $\text{oc8}$  31  $\text{ixc1}$   $\text{wxc1+}$  32  $\text{gh2}$   $\text{wxb1}$  33  $\text{wxc8+}$   $\text{cf7}$  34  $\text{d6}$ .

28  $\text{wh7+}$   $\text{cf8}$  29  $\text{xd6}$   $\text{wd1+}$  30  $\text{gh2}$   $\text{xd5}$  31  $\text{xb7}$   $\text{we5+}$  32  $\text{g3}$   $\text{ic7}$  33  $\text{wh8+}$   $\text{cf7}$  34  $\text{h5}$ !  $\text{ixb7}$  35  $\text{wh7+}$   $\text{ce6}$  36  $\text{wxb7}$   $\text{wh5+}$  37  $\text{og2}$  1:0

### Kasparov - Portisch Niksic 1983

1  $\text{d4}$   $\text{ef6}$  2  $\text{c4}$   $\text{e6}$  3  $\text{f3}$   $\text{b6}$  4  $\text{dc3}$   $\text{ob7}$  5  $\text{a3}$   $\text{d5}$  6  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{dxd5}$  7  $\text{e3}$   $\text{dxc3}$  8  $\text{bxc3}$   $\text{oe7}$  9  $\text{ob5+}$   $\text{c6}$  10  $\text{od3}$   $\text{c5}$  11 0-0  $\text{dc6}$  12  $\text{ob2}$   $\text{ic8}$  13  $\text{we2}$  0-0 14  $\text{fad1}$   $\text{wc7}$  15  $\text{c4}$ !

An excellent move which accepts hanging pawns. In an earlier game, Polugaevsky played 15  $\text{e4}$   $\text{a5}$  16  $\text{ife1}$  against Portisch but offered a draw because of Black's counter-play on the c-file.

**15 ...  $\text{cxd4}$  16  $\text{exd4}$   $\text{a5}$  17  $\text{d5}$ !****17...  $\text{exd5}$** 

After 17 ...  $\text{c4}$  18  $\text{we4}$   $\text{g6}$  19  $\text{xc4}$   $\text{wxc4}$  20  $\text{we5}$   $\text{f6}$  21  $\text{we6+}$   $\text{if7}$  22  $\text{ic1}$   $\text{wa6}$  23  $\text{d4}$  (and not 23  $\text{d6}$ ?!  $\text{b5}$ !) White obtains a very strong attacking position.

18  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{xd5}$  19  $\text{oxh7+}$   $\text{oxh7}$  20  $\text{ixd5}$   $\text{og8}$

A sensible precaution against the threat of 21  $\text{we4+}$   $\text{cg8}$  22  $\text{ih5}$ , but the position is about to explode anyway. After 20 ...  $\text{c2}$  there is 21  $\text{id2}$   $\text{wc5}$  22  $\text{de5+}$ .

**21  $\text{oxg7}$ !!  $\text{oxg7}$  22  $\text{de5}$ !  $\text{ifd8}$** 

The only move that does not lose immediately according to Kasparov. After 22 ...  $\text{f5}$  there is 23  $\text{id7}$   $\text{wc5}$  24  $\text{d3}$ , 22 ...  $\text{ih8}$  can be met by 23  $\text{wg4+}$   $\text{cf8}$  24  $\text{wf5}$   $\text{f6}$  25  $\text{ie1}$ !  $\text{dc6}$  (or 25 ...  $\text{wc1}$  26  $\text{idd1}$ !) 26  $\text{d7+}$   $\text{cf7}$  27  $\text{ixe7+}$   $\text{dxe7}$  28  $\text{wxf6+}$   $\text{ce8}$  29  $\text{wxh8+}$  and 22 ...  $\text{c2}$  is answered by 23  $\text{wg4+}$   $\text{gh7}$  24  $\text{id3}$   $\text{ic6}$  25  $\text{wf5+}$ ! etc.

**23  $\text{wg4+}$   $\text{cf8}$  24  $\text{wf5}$   $\text{f6}$** 

After 24 ...  $\text{d6}$  White starts a mating attack with 25  $\text{wf6}$ !  $\text{cg8}$  26  $\text{wg5+}$   $\text{cf8}$  27  $\text{wh6+}$   $\text{cg8}$  (27 ...  $\text{e8}$  28  $\text{ie1}$ ) 28  $\text{dg4}$ . Heading for the hills with 25 ...  $\text{c4}$  26  $\text{dg6+}$   $\text{ce8}$  doesn't help after 27  $\text{ie1+}$   $\text{d7}$  28  $\text{ie7+}$   $\text{c6}$  29  $\text{ixc7+}$   $\text{xc7}$  30  $\text{wxf7+}$  and 31  $\text{h4}$ .

**25  $\text{d7+}$ !**

Not 25  $\text{dg6+}$   $\text{cg7}$  (25 ...  $\text{ce8}$ ? 26  $\text{wh5}$ !) 26  $\text{d4}$   $\text{ixd5}$  27  $\text{wg6+}$   $\text{gh8}$  which gives White a draw at best.

**25 ...  $\text{ixd7}$** 

Or 25 ...  $\text{cg7}$  26  $\text{id4}$  etc.

**26  $\text{ixd7}$   $\text{wc5}$  27  $\text{wh7}$** 

27  $\text{wh3}$   $\text{ic7}$  28  $\text{id3}$  was rather more precise.

**27 ...  $\text{ic7}$ ! 28  $\text{wh8+}$ !**

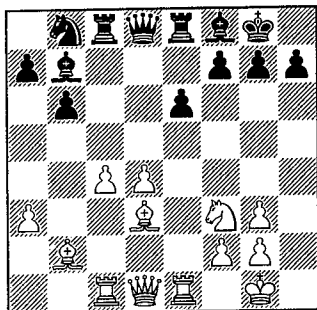
28  $\text{id3}$   $\text{wxf2+}$ ! 29  $\text{xf2}$   $\text{oc5+}$  30  $\text{cg3}$   $\text{ixh7}$  leads to a draw.

28 ...  $\text{cf7}$  29  $\text{id3}$   $\text{dc4}$  30  $\text{ifd1}$   $\text{de5}$ ?

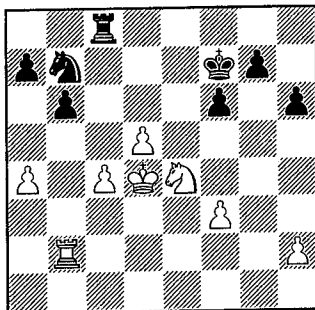
30 ...  $\text{d6}$  was stronger though 31  $\text{id5}$   $\text{wc6}$  (31 ...  $\text{wa3}$ ? 32  $\text{ixd6}$   $\text{dxd6}$  33  $\text{wh7+}$ ) 32  $\text{h4}$  is still very good for White.

31  $\text{wh7+}$   $\text{ce6}$  32  $\text{wg8+}$   $\text{cf5}$  33  $\text{g4+}$   $\text{cf4}$  34  $\text{id4+}$   $\text{cf3}$  35  $\text{wb3+}$  1:0

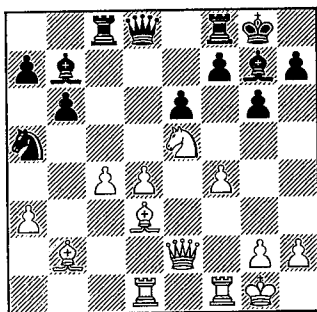
KM8/1: 1) White to play



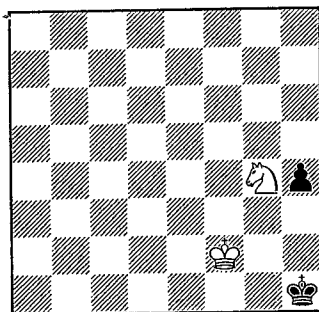
KM8/1: 2) White to play



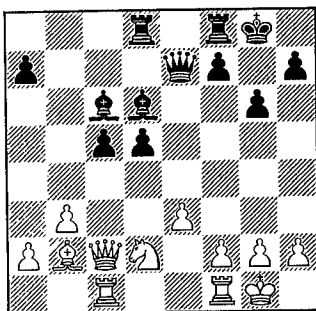
KM8/1: 3) White to play



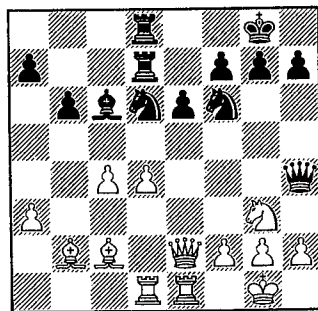
KM8/1: 4) White to play



A8/1: a) Black to play



A8/1: b) White to play



### Month 8/Week 2: Hanging Pawn Hell

Just as every silver lining has a cloud, hanging pawns have their downside too. If one of them is forced to advance, serious weaknesses can show up.

Hanging pawns will tend to be more of a liability as pieces are exchanged, as there are less attacking pieces to unleash and their cramping effect on the opposing camp will be less noticeable.

The following two games show different aspects of the hanging pawns in defence. In the first game Bobby Fischer exploits them in classic style and in the second Tigran Petrosian defends their honour against less than perfect play by his opponent.

#### Fischer - Spassky Reykjavik 1972

1 c4 e6 2 ♘f3 d5 3 d4 ♘f6 4 ♘c3 ♙e7 5 ♙g5 0-0 6 c3 h6 7 ♙h4 b6

The Tartakower Defence to the Queen's Gambit was a firm favourite of Spassky's and later Anatoly Karpov. The merits of hanging pawns are often debated in this opening

8 cxd5

An alternative treatment with 8 ♙e2 ♙b7 9 ♙xf6 ♙xf6 10 cxd5 exd5 was subsequently debated quite heavily in the 1984-5

Kasparov - Karpov World Championship Match. Fischer's play in this game, when analysed in detail, does not trouble Black.

8 ... ♘xd5 9 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 10 ♘xd5 exd5 11 ♖c1! ♙e6 12 ♖a4 c5 13 ♖a3! ♖c8 14 ♙b5!

White is directing his fire against the c5-pawn, and this move aims to hinder the development of Black's knight by introducing the idea of exchanging it. Black therefore resorts to some contorted manoeuvres to eject the bishop before developing his knight.

14 ... a6

Black later tried 14 ... ♖b7 to threaten 15 ... c4. If White captures the pawn on c5 with 15 dxc5 bxc5 16 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 17 ♖xc5 there is 17 ... ♘a6 18 ♙xa6 ♖xa6 19 ♖a3 ♖c4 20 ♖c3 and now 20 ... ♖xa2 21 0-0 ♖b8 or 20 ... ♖b8!?

15 dxc5 bxc5

After 15 ... ♖xc5 White could also simply castle as both the rook on c5 and pawn on a6 remain pinned.

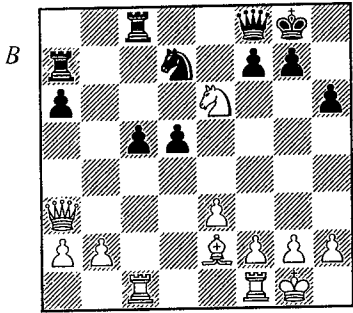
16 0-0 ♖a7?!

The superior 16 ... ♖a7! 17. ♙a4 a5 18 ♖d3 ♘d7 19 ♖fd1 ♖ab8 20 ♙xd7 ♖xd7 21 b3 a4 gave Black counter-play in Makarychev - Sturua, Moscow 1979.

17 ♙e2 ♘d7 18 ♘d4! ♖f8?

This leads to an unpleasant position. He should have tried 18 ... ♘f6 19 ♘b3 c4 20 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 21 ♘d4 with an inferior but tenable endgame.

19 ♘xe6!



Fischer was highly adept at turning one kind of advantage into another. Here he gives Black's hanging pawn duo the support of a pawn on e6, seeing that in this particular case the elimination of Black's bishop is more important.

**19 ... fxe6 20 e4!**

The point of the previous move. If Black now played 20 ... dxe4, then 21 ♖c4 sets about attacking all of Black's weak pawns.

**20 ... d4**

Giving White the c4 square without a fight. 20 ... ♟f6 21 e5 ♟d7 (21 ... ♟e4 22 f3) 22 f4 would have been better.

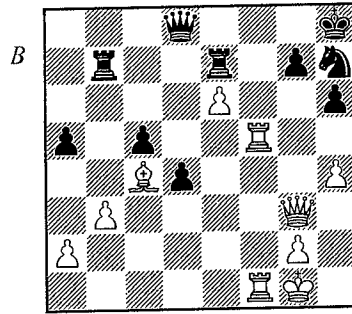
**21 f4 ♜e7 22 e5!**

Fixing the weakness on e6. If Black tries 22 ... ♟b6 then 23 ♜b3 ♟d5 24 f5 would give White a tremendous attack.

**22 ... ♜b8 23 ♟c4 ♟h8**

If 23 ... ♟b6 then 24 ♜b3!+- but now the bishop on c4 combines with pressure on the f-file to commence a deadly attack.

**24 ♜h3 ♟f8 25 b3 a5 26 f5! exf5 27 ♜xf5 ♟h7 28 ♜cf1 ♜d8 29 ♜g3 ♜e7 30 h4 ♜bb7 31 e6!**



Setting up a variety of threats including ♜xc5, ♜f7 and ♜e5. Black has no real defence.

**31 ... ♜bc7 32 ♜e5 ♜e8 33 a4! ♜d8**

Both 33 ... ♟f6 34 ♜xf6! gxf6 35 ♜xf6! and 33 ... ♟g8 34 ♜f7 give White a winning attack.

**34 ♜f2 ♜e8 35 ♜2f3 ♜d8 36 ♟d3 ♜e8 37 ♜e4!**

This would also have been the answer to 36 ... ♜c6. White now threatens a forced mate starting with 38 ♜f8+.

**37 ... ♟f6 38 ♜xf6! gxf6 39 ♜xf6 ♟g8 40 ♟c4 ♟h8 41 ♜f4 1:0**

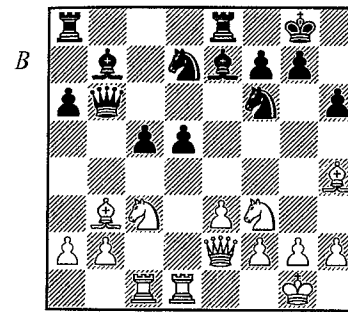
If 41 ... ♟g8 then 42 ♜xh6 or 42 ♜g3+ ♟h8 43 ♜e5.

### Szabo - Petrosian Zurich (Candidates) 1953

**1 d4 ♟f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♟c3 d5 4 ♟g5 ♟e7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♟f3 h6 7 ♟h4 b6 8 ♟d3 ♟b7 9 0-0 ♟bd7 10 ♜c1 c5 11 ♜e2 a6 12 cxd5 exd5 13 dxc5 bxc5 14 ♜fd1 ♜e8 15 ♟c2 ♜b6 16 ♟b3**

According to Bronstein, Black should have avoided this particular hanging pawn scenario with either

11 ... dxc4 12 ♟xc4 ♟e4 or 12 ... ♟xd5. Here is what he said about this position: "Black's hanging pawns have turned out to be weak, and Szabo carried out the typical manoeuvre ♟c2-b3 in order to draw either pawn forward, which makes the other one weaker and gives White an important strong point in the centre."



**16 ... c4 17 ♟a4 ♟c6 18 ♟xc6?!**

According to Bronstein, Szabo would have done much better to combine threats against Black's hanging pawns with pressure against his king with 18 ♟c2 ♜ab8 19 ♟d4 ♟a8 20 ♜b1. This would leave Black facing serious threats such as ♟f5 and ♟g3.

**18 ... ♜xc6 19 b3?**

This attempt to undermine Black's hanging pawns has the major drawback that it weakens a whole group of dark squares in White's queenside. According to Bronstein he should have played either 19 ♟d4, intending ♟f5, or 19 ♜c2 followed by ♜cd2

**19 ... ♜ac8 20 ♟a4**

The knight returns on its next move, so this was probably based on a miscalculation.

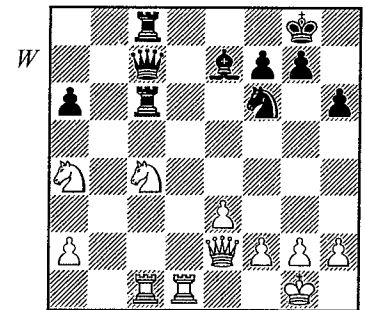
**20 ... ♜b5 21 ♟c3 ♜a5 22 ♟xf6 ♟xf6 23 bxc4 dxc4 24 ♟d2**

White's plan to take the c-pawn is way too ambitious. He should have played to make a draw with 24 ♜d4 ♟b4 25 ♜xc4 ♟xc3 26 ♜1xc3 ♜xc3 27 ♜xc3 ♜xc3 28 h3 according to Bronstein.

**24 ... ♜c6 25 ♟xc4?! ♜c7 26 ♟a4**

26 ♟b1 intending 27 ♟bd2 was a better chance.

**26 ... ♜c8**



**27 ♜d4?**

27 ♟ab6 ♜xb6 28 ♟xb6 ♜xc1 29 ♟xc8 ♜xc8 might have drawn. Now the pin on the c-file proves decisive.

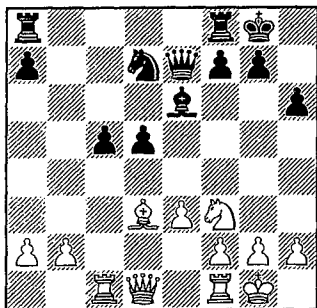
**27 ... ♟e8 28 e4 ♟f6 29 e5 ♟xe5 30 ♜e4 ♟f6 31 ♟ab6**

31 ♜xe5 ♜xc4 32 ♜xc4 ♜xc4 33 ♜d1 (or 33 ♜xc4 ♜xc4) 33... ♜xa4 makes no difference.

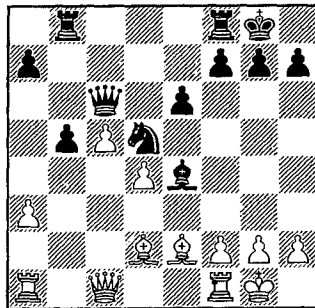
**31 ... ♜xb6 32 ♜xe5 ♜c6 33 ♜e7 ♜xc4 34 ♜e1 ♜c6 35 h3 ♜c1 36 ♜xc1 ♜xc1+ 37 ♟h2 ♜c4 38 ♜f3 ♜xa2 0:1**



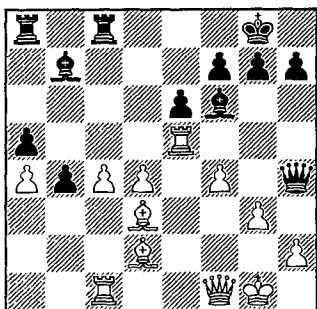
KM8/2: 1) White to play



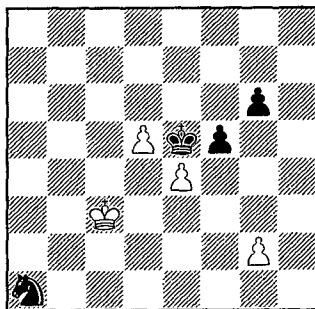
KM8/2: 2) Black to play



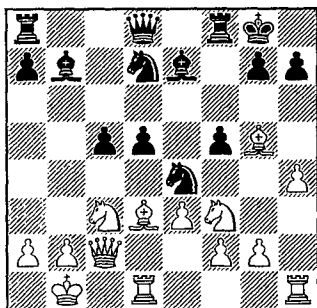
KM8/2: 3) Black to play



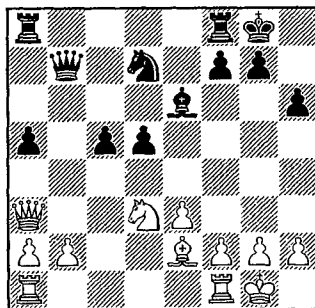
KM8/2: 4) White to play



A8/2: a) White to play



A8/2: b) Black to play



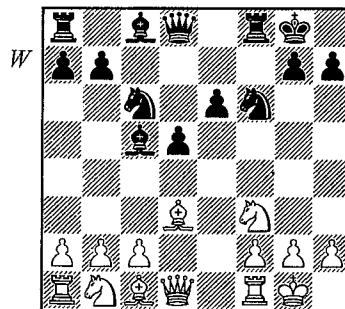
**Month 8/Week 3:  
Attack of the Hanging Centre**

In positions with a hanging centre, the stakes are even higher than with hanging d- and c-pawns. The dangers of advancing centre pawns were made pretty clear last month, and with half open c- and f-files there can be even more serious attacking chances for the owner of the centre.

In the following two games, violent struggles come about as the hanging central pawns sound the charge.

**van Scheltinga - van der Tol  
Leeuwarden 1946**

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 c5 4 dxc5  
 ♖xc6 5 ♜f3 ♙xc5 6 ♙d3 f5 7 exf6  
 ♜xf6 8 0-0 0-0



Black has slightly the better development but this is enough to make the hanging centre a formidable force. The threat is to push forward with ... e6-e5 and White is hard pressed to defend against this because of the pressure against f2.

After 9 ♙f4 there is 9 ... ♜e4 10 ♙xe4 dxe4 11 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 and 9 ♜e2 can be met by 9 ... e5 10 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 11 ♜xe5 ♙e8 with a strong initiative.

**9 c4 e5!**

A sharp but highly effective blow, the hanging pawns make their charge in the face of enemy fire. In the skirmish that follows, White is left woefully behind in development

**10 cxd5 e4!**

Black had planned this highly disruptive move when he played 9 ... e5. He could hardly consider 10 ... ♜xd5 11 ♜c3 or 10 ... ♜xd5 11 ♙c4.

**11 dxc6 ♜xd3!**

And not 11 ... exd3? 12 ♜b3+ ♜f7 (12 ... ♜h8 13 cxb7) 13 ♜e5, which completely turns the tables.

**12 ♜xd3**

12 ♜e5 ♜xd1 13 ♜xd1 ♙xf2+ 14 ♜xf2 ♜g4+ is also better for Black.

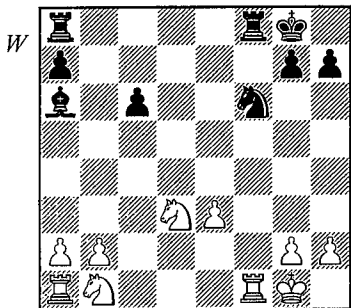
**12 ... exd3 13 ♜e5?**

The decisive mistake in a difficult position. White had to play 13 ♜c3 bxc6 14 ♜a4 ♙d6 15 ♙e3 which offers reasonable fighting chances, as he can attempt to blockade the advancing pawns on dark squares.

**13 ... bxc6 14 ♜xd3 ♙d4!**

Black's pieces are taking up menacing posts and the immediate problem for White is how to deal with 15 ... ♙a6 16 ♜d1 ♜ad8 threatening 17 ... ♙xd3 18 ♜xd3 ♙xf2+ amongst other things. White's extra pawn is little comfort.

15 ♖e3 ♗xe3 16 fxe3 ♖a6!



A crushing blow. White's development is too poor for him to organise any kind of resistance.

17 ♖d1 ♖ad8 18 ♗f2 ♖xd1+ 19 ♗xd1 ♗e4! 20 ♗f2 ♗xf2 0:1

In the following game the hanging centre is once again on the march, this time in the hands of Britain's first Grandmaster, Tony Miles. His opponent, Vlastimil Hort, was at the time one of the World's elite, and was painfully aware of the need to take very energetic measures against them.

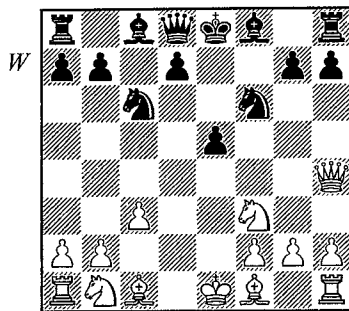
### Hort - Miles 'Master Game' 1979

1 e4 c5 2 c3 ♗f6 3 e5 ♗d5 4 d4 cxd4 5 ♖xd4

This move went out of fashion largely as a result of Tony Miles' brilliant ninth move improvement in this game. Today's 2 c3 exponents prefer either 5 ♗f3 or simply 5 cxd4 at this point.

5 ... e6 6 ♗f3 ♗c6 7 ♖e4 f5 8 exf6 ♗xf6 9 ♖h4 e5!

Miles thought up this strong new move at the board. In previous games Black had played 9 ... ♗e7 or 9 ... d5 without noticeable success. Miles reasoned that dealing with 10 ♖d3, intending ♖g6+, is Black's number one priority. He wants to meet this with (9 ... e5 10 ♖d3) 10 ... e4! 11 ♖xe4 ♖c7 and ... d7-d5, winning a piece.



10 ♖g5 d5!

Once again preventing 11 ♖d3 because of 11 ... e4!. Suddenly Black's hanging central pawns have become very dangerous, and Hort understood only too well that he has to attack them in some way.

11 ♖b5 ♖d6 12 c4

White must try to strike quickly before Black completes his development. Over the next few moves a sharp struggle ensues.

12 ... 0-0 13 0-0 e4 14 cxd5

More or less the only move as 14 ♖xc6 bxc6 15 ♗d4 is met by 15 ... ♖b6 and 14 ♗fd2 runs into 14 ... ♗d4!.

14 ... exf3 15 dxc6 fxe2 16 ♖xg2 bxc6 17 ♖c4+ ♖h8

The last few moves were virtually forced and have left White in a critical position due to the exposure of his king. White has some compensation for this in terms of his active pieces, but Black must stand better in an objective sense.

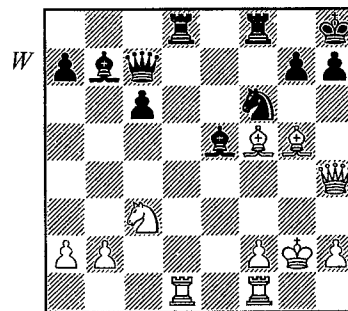
18 ♗c3 ♖c7 19 ♖ad1 ♖b7

The bishop turns out to be poorly placed on this square. Black should play 19 ... ♖f5 in order to prevent White from establishing his bishop on the b1-h7 diagonal. This would be sufficient to maintain Black's advantage.

20 ♖d3! ♖ad8

After 20 ... ♖e5? 21 ♖xf6 gxf6 22 ♖xh7 ♖xh7 23 ♖xh7+ ♖xh7 24 ♖d7+ White picks up the bishop on b7 and emerges a pawn to the good. Miles avoids this particular trick but unfortunately for him he falls for a similar idea on his next move.

21 ♖f5 ♖e5??



A blunder after which Black's position quickly disintegrates. He

should probably play an immediate 21 ... c5+ but he can hardly claim to hold an edge any more. White has developed quite serious pressure against Black's king position.

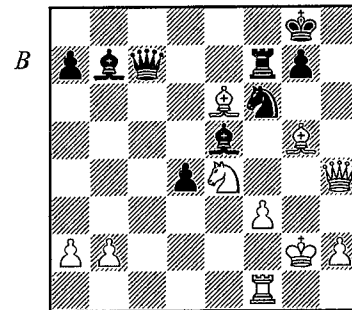
22 ♖xh7! c5+

There is no way out as 22 ... ♗xh7 is met by 23 ♖xd8 and 22 ... ♖xd1 by 23 ♖f5+ ♖g8 24 ♖e6+ etc. So Miles is reduced to swindling tries.

23 f3 ♖d4

Another valiant attempt to muddy the waters but White simply wins the exchange.

24 ♖xd4 cxd4 25 ♖f5+ ♖g8 26 ♖e6+ ♖f7 27 ♗e4



27 ... ♖c6 28 ♗xf6+ gxf6 29 ♖xf6 ♖c2+

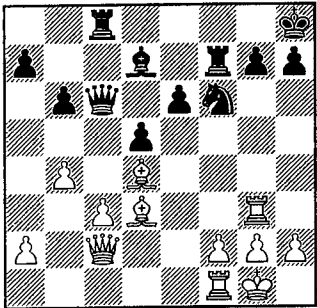
The game is effectively over as 29 ... ♖xe6 is met by 30 ♖h8 mate. Miles tries a few final tricks but they are carefully handled by Hort.

30 ♖h1 ♖xf3+ 31 ♖xf3 ♖d1+ 32 ♖g2 ♖c2+ 33 ♖f2 ♖g6+ 34 ♖g3!

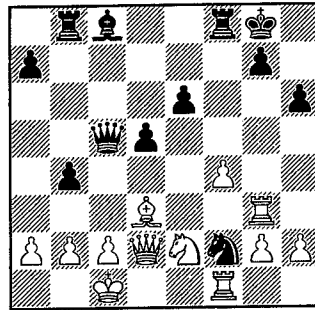
Putting paid to any further swindling attempts.

35 ... ♖xg3 35 ♖xg3 1:0

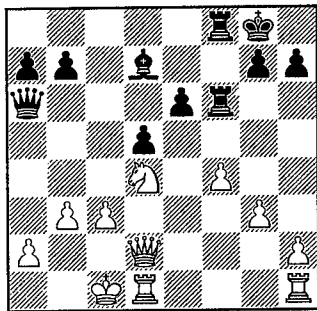
KM8/3: 1) White to play



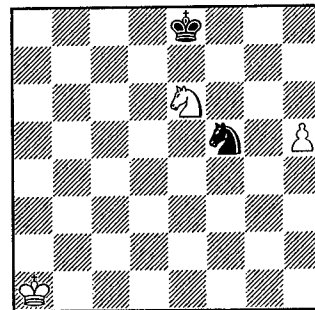
KM8/3: 2) Black to play



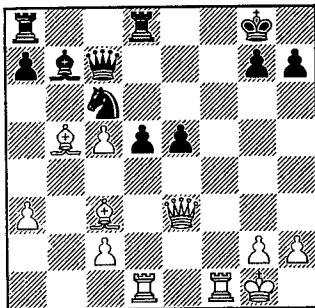
KM8/3: 3) Black to play



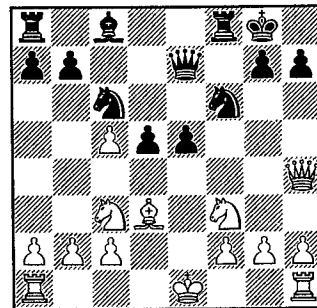
KM8/3: 4) White to play



A8/3: a) White to play



A8/3: b) White to play



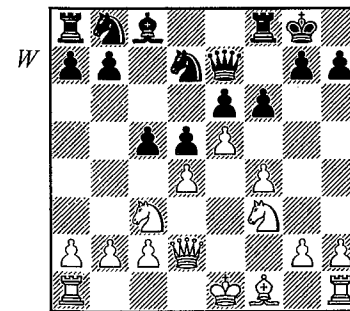
**Month 8/Week 4:  
Restraint of the Hanging Centre**

The best way to fight against hanging central pawns is with Nimzowitsch's patented three stage method: First of all the pawns must be restrained, the next step is blockade and then they must be destroyed. This strategy is illustrated in classic style by the great Akiba Rubinstein in the following elegantly played masterpiece.

**Rubinstein - Lowenfish  
Karlsbad 1911**

1 d4 e6 2 e4 d5 3 ♖c3 ♗f6 4 ♙g5  
5 ♗c7 5 e5 ♗fd7 6 ♙xe7 ♖xe7 7  
8 ♗d2 0-0 8 f4 c5 9 ♗f3 f6?!

The modern preference is for 9 ... ♗c6 and after 10 0-0-0 Viktor Korchnoi has patented 10 ... ♗b6!?. 9 ... f6?! is less good as White can restrain and then blockade the hanging pawns that Black acquires.



**10 exf6!**

The first stage in Rubinstein's plan. If Black tries to keep his

pawns intact with 10 ... gxf6 then 11 f5! is strong.

**10 ... ♖xf6 11 g3**

Stage one is restraint and besides protecting the f-pawn this last move prepares to develop White's bishop on g2. This is a highly effective method of restraining Black's centre pawns as the pressure on the d5-pawn will oblige the e6-pawn to stay where it is. Black would dearly love to be able to free his game with ...e6-e5.

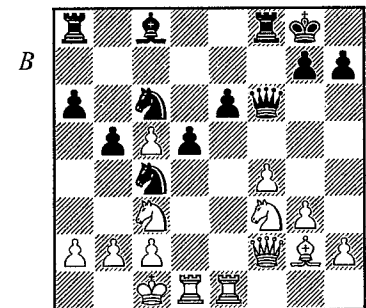
**11 ... ♗c6 12 0-0-0 a6?!**

After this slow move White's advantage becomes clear. 12 ... cxd4 13 ♗xd4 ♗b6 14 ♗f3 ♙d7 15 ♙d3 ♖ac8 16 ♖he1 h6 17 h4 was only slightly better for White in the game Gheorghiu-Mititelu, Romania 1962.

**13 ♙g2 ♗b6**

After the apparently logical 13 ... b5 White has a neat combination in 14 dxc5 ♗xc5 15 ♗xd5! exd5 16 ♖xd5+ ♖e6 17 ♗g5! which wins on the spot.

**14 ♖he1! ♗c4 15 ♖f2 b5 16 dxc5!**



This seems to expose White's b2-square to danger, but Rubinstein had seen very clearly through the following complications.

16 ... ♖xb2 17 ♜xb2 b4 18 ♖d4! bxc3+ 19 ♜a1!

The point, which Rubinstein had to see when he played his sixteenth move. White's king escapes to the corner and now the hanging pawns get securely blockaded.

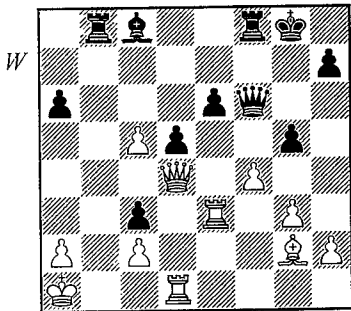
19 ... ♖xd4

If 19 ... ♗d7? then 20 ♖xe6! ♗xe6 21 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 22 ♗xd5 is deadly.

20 ♜xd4 ♖b8

20 ... ♗d7 was a slightly better defence, hoping for 21 ♜xf6 ♖xf6 22 ♖xd5 ♗c6. But White should reply with 21 ♖e3 and Black would still have problems.

21 ♖e3 g5



22 ♖xc3!

And not 22 fxg5 because of 22 ... ♜f2!. White's pawn on f4 is immune now as after 22 ... gxf4 23 gxf4 ♜xf4? he has 24 ♖g3+

22 ... gxf4 23 gxf4 ♗d7 24 c6 ♜xd4 25 ♖xd4 ♗e8 26 ♗h3 ♖f6 27 c7 ♖c8 28 ♖xd5!

Stage three arrives; both hanging pawns are destroyed

28 ... ♖xc7 29 ♗xe6+! 1:0

A nice finale. The second pawn falls and White wins the exchange (29 ... ♖xe6 30 ♖xc7).

In the final example this month, we will finish on a hanging pawn high note, a game from the Candidates Match between Smyslov and Hübner. Despite the fact that the pawns start their hanging career on e2 and d3, they nevertheless provide the springboard for an attack.

### Smyslov - Hübner Velden (Candidates) 1983

1 ♖f3 ♖f6 2 c4 c5 3 ♖c3 ♖c6 4 g3 d5 5 cxd5 ♖xd5 6 ♗g2 ♖c7 7 d3 e5 8 ♖d2 ♗d7 9 0-0 ♗e7 10 ♖c4 f6

In some games Black has sacrificed the e-pawn with 10 ... 0-0 after which 11 ♗xc6 ♗xc6 12 ♖xe5 ♗e8 gives him long-term compensation, due to the light square weaknesses around White's king

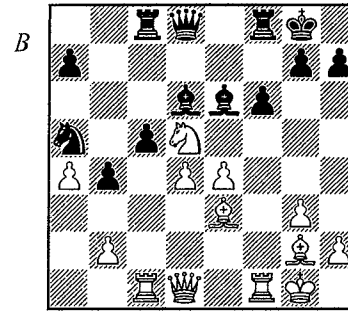
11 f4 b5 12 ♖e3 ♖c8! 13 ♖ed5 ♖xd5 14 ♖xd5 0-0 15 fxg5 ♖xe5

The hanging pawns appear on e2 and d3.

16 ♗f4 ♖c6 17 a4 b4 18 ♖c1 ♗e6 19 e4 ♗d6 20 ♗e3 ♖a5

According to Smyslov, the d-pawn should have been blockaded with 20 ... ♖d4. In his notes he gave 21 ♗xd4 cxd4 22 ♖xc8 ♜xc8 23 ♜d2 ♜d7 as equal.

21 d4!



B

The advance of the hanging pawns liberates White's pieces. Smyslov mentioned that 21 ... cxd4 22 ♖xc8 ♜xc8 23 ♜xd4, threatening both the a7 pawn and 24 ♖xf6+, is good for White, so Hübner tries for counter-play with a queenside pawn majority.

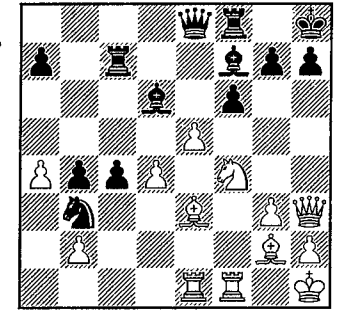
21 ... c4 22 ♖f4 ♗f7 23 ♜g4 ♜e8 24 ♖ce1 ♖b3 25 ♖h1 ♖h8 26 ♜h3 ♖c7

Black should probably have tried 26 ... ♗xf4 27 gxf4 c3 but then 28 bxc3 ♖xc3 29 ♜h4 f5 30 d5 ♗xd5 31 exd5 ♖xe3 32 d6 gives White more than enough compensation for the pawn because of his passed d-pawn.

27 e5!

Opening the flood gates. The potential energy of White's pieces is suddenly released with devastating effect. This move should be compared to the d4-d5 thrust which featured heavily in week one.

B



27 ... fxg5 28 dxg5 ♗xe5 29 ♗e4 g6

Smyslov claimed that 29 ... h6 30 ♖e6 ♗xe6 31 ♖xf8+ ♜xf8 32 ♜xe6 is much better for White

30 ♗xg6 ♜a8+?

30 ... ♜c6+ was better, after which Smyslov gave the line 31 ♖g1 ♗g8 32 ♗c2 ♖f6 33 ♗xb3 cxb3 34 ♖d3 ♖xf1+ 35 ♜xf1 ♗g7 (and not 35 ... ♖f7 36 ♗f2 ♗g7 37 ♖e5) 36 ♜f4 with a slight edge.

31 ♖g1 ♗g8 32 ♗xh7 ♖xh7 33 ♖g6+ ♖g7 34 ♜d7+ ♖f7 35 ♖xf7+ ♗xf7 36 ♖xe5 ♜d5 37 ♜xa7 ♖h5 38 ♖xf7 ♜xf7 39 ♗d4+ ♖xd4 40 ♜xd4+ ♖h7 41 ♜e4+ ♖g7 42 ♖f1 ♜a7+ 43 ♖f2! ♜c5

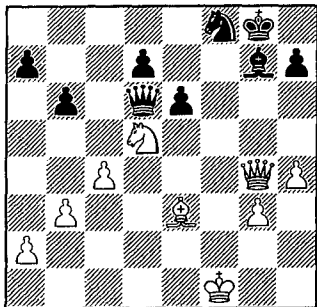
The line 43 ... ♖xh2 44 ♜g4+ ♖h8 45 ♜c8+ ♖h7 46 ♜f5+ ♖g8 47 ♖xh2 simply does not work.

44 ♖f1 c3 45 bxc3 bxc3 46 ♜e6! ♜g5

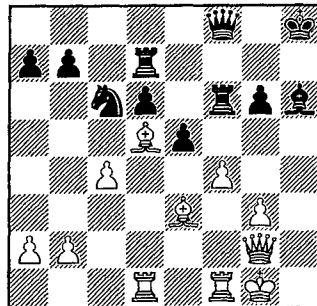
After 46 ... ♖e5 White has 47 ♖f7+ ♖h8 48 ♜g4 which threatens mate whilst denying Black any useful checks.

47 ♖f7+ ♖h8 48 ♜c8+ 1:0

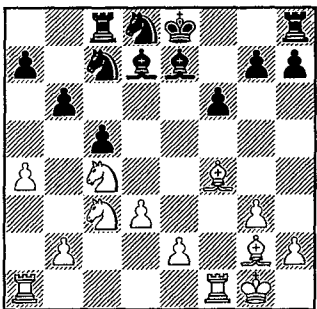
KM8/4: 1) White to play



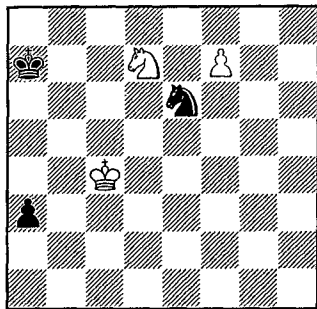
KM8/4: 2) White to play



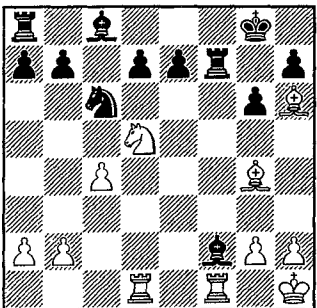
KM8/4: 3) White to play



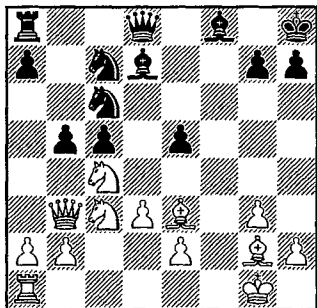
KM8/4: 4) White to play



A8/4: a) White to play



A8/4: b) White to play



## 9 The Isolated Pawn

A pawn without a colleague to either his right or left is known as an isolated pawn. In theory, this pawn is weak, as it must be protected by pieces and there will also be a strongpoint for an opposing piece directly in front of it. Yet isolated pawns are one of the thorniest issues on the chessboard and the fact that they emerge from so many different openings makes an understanding of their properties very valuable.

By far the most common type of isolated pawn is the isolated d-pawn. In the first week we will look at cases of this pawn charging into the enemy lines. This is closely related to the examples involving hanging pawn thrusts. In week two we see the pawn's ability to provide a support square in the centre. In week three we will see the downside of having an isolated pawn, and in week four we will look at slightly less common scenarios which can nevertheless arise from many standard openings.

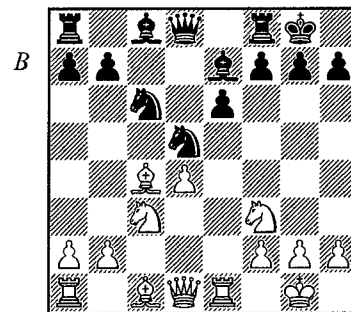
### Month 9/Week 1: Isolated Pawn Pushing

As in the case with hanging pawns, the isolated pawn can provide a strong point in the centre

behind which it is possible to mass one's forces on more active squares than those of one's opponent. There are many cases in which the later advance of this pawn releases this energy with devastating effect.

### Stein - Krogius Tbilisi 1966

1 c4 e6 2 ♘c3 d5 3 d4 ♘f6 4 cxd5  
♘xd5 5 ♘f3 c5 6 e3 ♘c6 7 ♗c4  
cxd4 8 exd4 ♗e7 9 0-0 0-0 10 ♖e1



### 10 ... a6

A rather passive plan which turns out badly. 10 ... ♗f6 11 ♖e4 b6 12 a3 ♗b7 13 ♗d3 ♖c8 14 ♘fg5 ♗xg5 15 ♗xg5 ♗d7 16 ♖ad1 ♘ce7 gave Black a solid position in Tal - Petrosian, USSR Club Ch., 1966.

### 11 a4 ♘f6

11 ... ♗f6 was still possible though after 12 ♖e4 b6 Black's

queenside pawns are weaker than they would have been had he not played 10 ... a6.

**12 ♖g5 ♗d7**

And this is also probably wrong. Black should rule out d4-d5 by White by playing 12 ... ♖b4.

**13 ♜e2 ♝c8 14 ♗ad1 ♖d5**

If 14 ... ♖b4 then 15 ♗e5 ♖bd5 16 ♖xf6 ♖xf6 17 d5! follows anyway.

**15 ♖xd5!**

Giving Black the temporary advantage of the two bishops, because he sees that he can force through d4-d5 to great effect.

**15 ... ♖xg5 16 ♖e4 ♖f6 17 d5!**

Unleashing White's actively placed forces. Black's main problem is that his queen cannot easily escape the x-ray effect of the rook on d1.

**17 ... exd5 18 ♖xd5 ♖e6**

It is difficult to see another defence against 19 ♖xf6+.

**19 ♖f4 ♜b6**

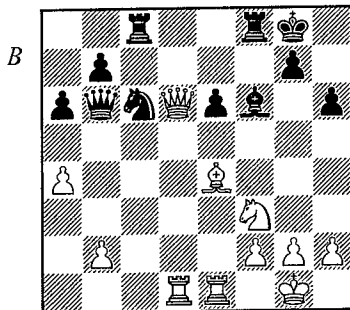
It was better to play 19 ... ♜e7 20 ♜d3 g6 21 ♖xe6 fxe6 (not 21... ♜xe6? 22 ♖xg6) even though this also leads to Black having a weak pawn on e6.

**20 ♖xe6 fxe6 21 ♜d3**

After this, it becomes clear that Black should have chosen 19 ... ♜e7 as Black is now forced to play 21 ... h6. If 21 ... g6 there is 22 ♖xg6 fxe6 23 ♜xg6+ followed by 24 ♗d7.

**21 ... h6 22 ♜d6!**

Setting about reversing the positions of his queen and bishop on the b1-h7 diagonal.



**22 ... ♝c8**

22 ... ♝fe8 would have been a tougher defence, vacating f8 for the king.

**23 ♖c2 ♜b4 24 ♜d3 ♗d8 25 ♜h7+ ♖f7 26 ♜g6+ ♖g8 27 ♗xd8 ♖xd8 28 ♗d1 ♜xb2 29 h4!**

Decisive. After making air for his king, White can invade d7 with his rook.

**29 ... ♖c6 30 ♗b1 ♜a3 31 ♗xb7 ♖e7**

After 31 ... ♖e7 there is 32 ♜h7+ ♖f7 33 ♖g6 mate.

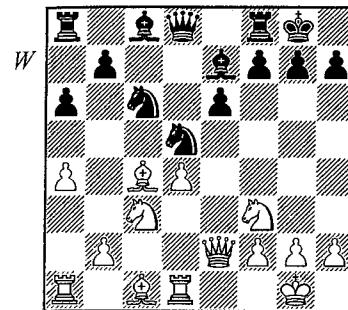
**32 ♜xe6+ ♖h8 33 ♜xc6 ♜c1+ 34 ♖h2 ♜f4+ 35 ♖h3 1:0**

### Petrosian - Spassky Moscow 1971

**1 d4 d5 2 c4 dxc4 3 ♖f3 ♖f6 4 e3 e6 5 ♖xc4 c5 6 0-0 a6 7 a4 ♖c6 8 ♜e2 ♖e7 9 ♗d1 cxd4 10 exd4 0-0 11 ♖c3 ♖d5**

Black should blockade the d-pawn as quickly as possible. 11 ... ♖b4 12 ♖g5 ♖d7 13 d5 exd5 (13 ... ♖fxd5? 14 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 15 ♖e5 ♖bd5 16 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 17 ♖xd5 exd5 18 ♗xd5 ♖g4 19 ♜e4+-) 14

♖xd5 ♖bxd5 15 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 16 ♗xd5 ♖xg5 17 ♖xg5 h6 18 ♜d2 hxg5 19 ♗xd7 ♜f6 20 ♗xb7 won a pawn, but not the game, in Botvinnik - Petrosian, Moscow 1963.



**12 ♜e4**

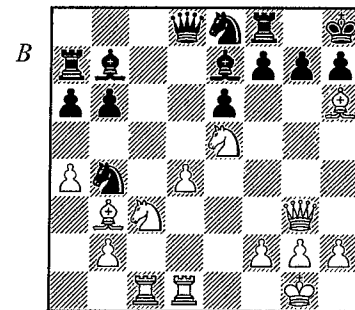
The usual move is 12 ♖d3 after which 12 ... ♖b4 13 ♖b1 leads to a position in which White has attacking chances on the kingside and might even bring his rook on a1 into the attack via a3. Black could and should meet the text continuation with 12 ... ♖f6 when White has nothing better than to retreat the queen to e2.

**12 ... ♖cb4?! 13 ♖e5 ♗a7**

A strange move but Black already has difficulties. After 13 ... b6 there is 14 ♖c6 ♖xc6 15 ♖xd5 exd5 (Or 15 ... ♖b7 16 ♖d3) 16 ♖xd5 or if 13 ... ♖f6 then 14 ♜f3 is strong. In every case White is better.

**14 ♖b3 ♖f6 15 ♜h4 b6 16 ♜g3 ♖b7 17 ♖h6 ♖e8 18 ♗ac1 ♖h8 (D) 19 d5!**

The thematic breakthrough. Black's position collapses after 19 ... gxf6 20 dxe6 etc.



**19 ... exd5 20 ♖e3 ♗a8**

After 20 ... ♖c5 there is 21 ♖xd5! ♖xd5 22 ♗xc5! bxc5 23 ♖xc5 etc.

**21 ♖c4! ♖d6**

This time 21 ... ♖c5 would be met by 22 ♖a5! ♖xe3 23 ♖xb7 ♜d7 24 ♜xe3 ♜xb7 25 ♖xd5.

**22 ♖xb6**

And not 22 ♖xb6? ♖f5 23 ♜h3 ♖xe3 24 ♜xe3 d4!

**22 ... ♜b8 23 ♖a5 ♖f5 24 ♜xb8 ♗axb8 25 ♖xb7 ♗xb7 26 a5**

Black has survived into the endgame but his prospects are grim. White's bishops are very active and d5 is weak.

**26 ... ♖g5 27 ♗b1 d4 28 ♖d5 ♖c6**

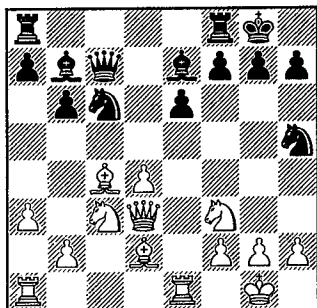
28 ... ♖xd5 29 ♖xd5 ♗d7 30 ♖e4 wins the d-pawn.

**29 ♖a4 ♗c8 30 f4 ♖ce7**

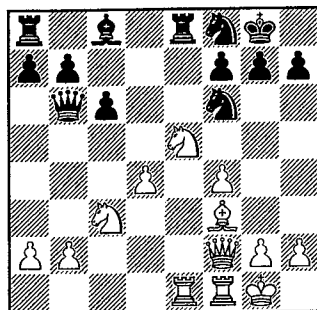
30 ... ♖f6 31 g4 ♖e3 (Or 31 ... ♖fe7 32 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 33 ♗bc1) 32 ♖xe3 dxe3 33 g5 is equally bad for Black.

**31 ♗bc1! ♗cb8 32 fxe6 ♖xd5 33 ♖c6 ♗xb6 34 axb6 ♖de3 35 b7! ♖xd1 36 ♗xd1 g6 37 g4 ♖g7 38 ♗xd4 ♖e6 39 ♗d7 1:0**

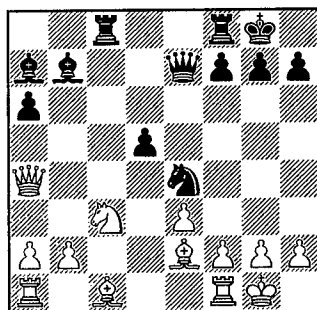
KM9/1: 1) White to play



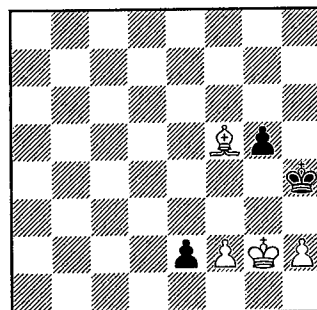
KM9/1: 2) White to play



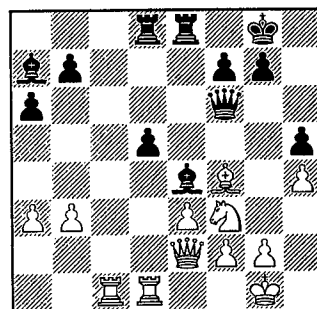
KM9/1: 3) Black to play



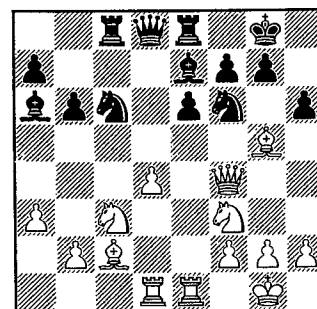
KM9/1: 4) White to play



A9/1: a) Black to play



A9/1: b) White to play



**Month 9/Week 2:  
Support of a Square**

A good strategy to adopt against an isolated pawn is to firmly blockade it, preferably with a knight. This should ensure that the pawn does not wreak havoc by advancing, though it can still give attacking chances to its owner. Isolated d-pawns will usually provide a support point in the centre, with White this will be e5.

The right idea at the wrong time. Now White can force a weakening of Black's king position.

**16 ♖b1 g6 17 ♖h6 ♜fe8 18 ♘e4**

Setting about putting pressure on the newly weakened f6-square. The other point to this move is that it avoids the exchange of pieces, which is generally a sound policy for the possessor of the isolated pawn.

**18 ... ♙f8?!**

Black seeks exchanges, but this bishop is vital for the defence of the dark squares. He should have tried to exchange knights with 18 ... ♘f6.

**19 ♙xf8 ♜xf8 20 ♘e5!**

An unpleasant move for Black to face, as 20 ... ♘e5 21 dxe5 controls both the d6 and f6 squares. In the meantime the knight takes up a threatening position.

**20 ... ♜e7 21 ♜g3 ♜cd8 22 ♘g5!**

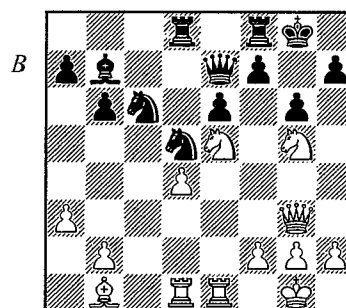
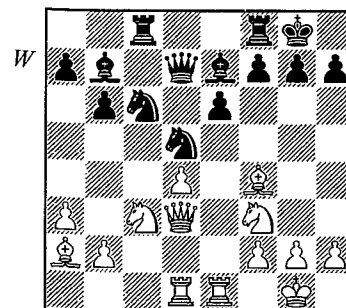
Already threatening a decisive sacrificial breakthrough with 23 ♘xh7 ♜xh7 24 ♘xg6 fxe6 25 ♜xg6+ ♜h8 26 ♜d3 etc.

**Najdorf - Reshevsky  
Buenos Aires 1953**

**1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♙d3 c5 6 ♘f3 d5 7 0-0 ♘c6 8 a3 dxc4 9 ♙xc4 exd4 10 exd4 ♙e7 11 ♜e1 b6 12 ♙f4 ♙b7 13 ♙a2 ♜c8?!**

Although an immediate 14 d5 would leave the position equal after 14 ... exd5 15 ♘xd5 ♘xd5 16 ♙xd5 ♘a5, Black should nevertheless plant his knight on the d5 square with 13 ... ♘d5.

**14 ♜d3 ♜d7 15 ♜ad1 ♘d5**



22 ... ♖f6 23 ♖h4

Now the threat is 24 ♖xc6 ♙xc6 25 ♖xh7! etc.

23 ... ♖xe5 24 ♜xe5 ♖d6 25 ♜e3 ♙g7 26 ♜h3 ♜h8

After 26 ... h5 the pressure is increased with 27 ♜g3 threatening 28 ♖xf7. The text defends the immediate threats to the h7-pawn but now Black's rook on h8 gets shut out of the game.

27 ♖h6+ ♙g8 28 ♙a2!

Switching the attack to the e6 and f7 squares.

28 ... ♖f8 29 ♖h4 ♙g7

29 ... ♙d5 30 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 31 ♜f3! ♜f5 32 ♜xf5 gxf5 (32 ... exf5 33 d5) 33 ♖g3 is very unpleasant, which explains why Black gives up a pawn.

30 ♙xc6 ♙d5 31 ♙xd5 ♜xd5 32 ♖h6+ ♙g8 33 ♖h4 ♙g7 34 ♖h6+ ♙g8 35 ♖h4

In mutual time-trouble, White repeated the position and Black missed a chance to claim a draw by repetition.

35 ... ♙g7 36 ♖f3 ♖d6?

36 ... b5 would have been more tenacious.

37 ♖h6+ ♙g8 38 ♜e1 ♖f8 39 ♖f4 ♖h5 40 ♖c7 ♙g7 41 ♜e7!

Utterly decisive.

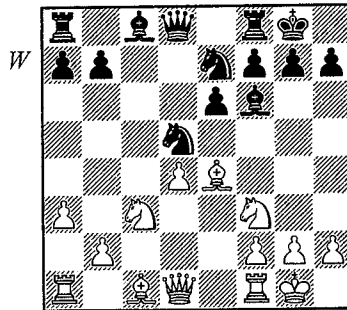
41 ... ♙g8 42 ♜h4 ♜d8 43 g3 ♖f6 44 ♖e5 ♖d7 45 ♖e2 h6 46 ♜he4 ♖f6 47 ♜4e6! ♖d5 48 ♜xa7 ♜h7 49 ♖c6 f6 50 ♖e6+ ♙h8 51 ♖h4 ♜g7 52 ♖g4 g5 53 ♜xg7 ♖xg7 54 ♖f5 ♖g6 55 ♖e4 h5 56 ♖c6 ♖g8 57 ♜xb6! 1:0

The next game is slightly unusual in that it features Anatoly Karpov defending the honour of the isolated pawn rather than playing against it. Again we see the strength of the knight anchored on e5, and later on the d4-d5 break comes into it as well.

### Karpov - Timman Moscow 1981

1 c4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 e3 ♖f6 4 ♖c3 e6 5 d4 d5 6 cxd5 ♖xd5 7 ♙d3 ♙e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 a3 cxd4 10 exd4 ♙f6 11 ♙e4 ♖ce7

Black's last two moves constitute an excellent plan of defence, establishing a tough grip over the d5-square.



12 ♖d3 h6!?

The most usual way for Black to defend h7 is with 12 ... g6 but Timman's move also has its points. It avoids weakening the dark squares around Black's king and takes g5 away from White's pieces. On the down-side White may be able to blast open Black's

defences with a later ♙xh6 and it virtually rules out the possibility of a later ... g6.

13 ♖e5

Intending 14 ♖g4 when the possibility of a sacrifice on h6 looms large.

13 ... ♖xc3 14 ♖xc3

14 bxc3 is of course met by 14 ... ♙xe5 and 15 ... ♖xd3

14 ... ♖f5 15 ♙e3 ♖d6

Despite the fact that White contracts doubled and isolated pawns, 15 ... ♖xe3 16 fxe3 ♙xe5 17 dxe5 is also slightly better for him.

16 ♙f3!

Karpov rejected 16 ♙c2 because of the line 16 ... b6 17 ♖d3 ♖f5 18 g4 ♙xe5 19 gxf5 ♙xh2+. The text aims for queenside pressure.

16 ... ♙d7 17 ♖b4! ♙b5

Also after 17 ... ♙e7 18 ♖b3, White maintains the pressure on Black's game.

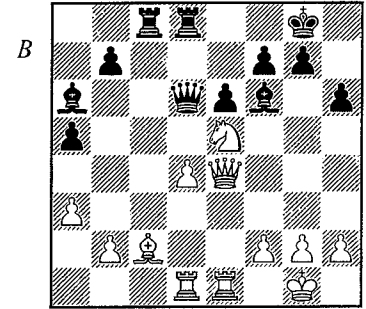
18 ♜fe1 a5 19 ♖b3 ♙a6 20 ♜ad1 ♖f5 21 ♙e4 ♖xe3 22 ♖xe3 ♖d6 23 ♙c2 ♜fd8

The line 23 ... ♖d5 24 ♙b3 ♖d6 25 d5 ♖xe5 26 ♖xe5 ♙xe5 27 ♜xe5 exd5 28 ♜exd5 would also be unpleasant for Black because of the pressure against f7.

24 ♖e4 ♜ac8 (D)

The problem with 12 ... h6 shows itself now, since 24 ... g6 would create one weakness too many and encourage a sacrificial breakthrough. So Black's king has to head for the hills.

25 ♖h7+ ♙f8 26 h3

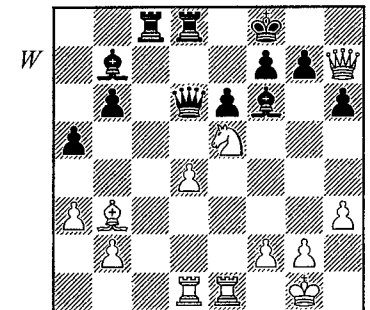


There was a more decisive continuation in 26 ♙b3! ♙e7 (26 ... ♖b6 27 ♖g6+ fxc6 28 ♙xe6 ♜c6 29 ♖g8+ ♙e7 30 ♖f7+ ♙d6 31 d5 ♜c7 32 ♙d7+-) 27 ♖g4 ♜h8 28 ♖f5 etc.

26 ... b6?

26 ... ♙e7! 27 ♖g4 ♜h8 28 ♖f5 ♙xd4! 29 ♖e4 ♜hd8 30 ♖e3 g6 would have equalised (Karpov).

27 ♙b3 ♙b7



28 d5!

28 ♖g6+ fxc6 29 ♜xe6 was also strong.

28 ... ♖c7

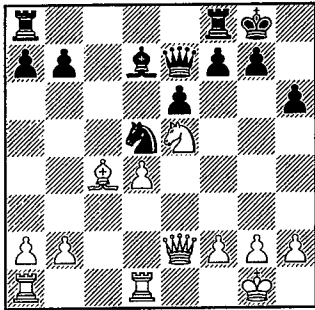
Black is mated after 28 ... exd5 29 ♖d7+ ♜xd7 30 ♖h8#

29 dxe6 ♜xd1 30 ♖g6+ 1:0

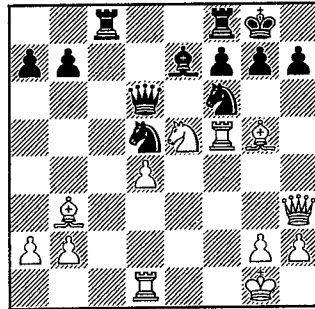
Once again mate follows after 30 ... fxc6 31 e7+ ♙xe7 32 ♖g8#



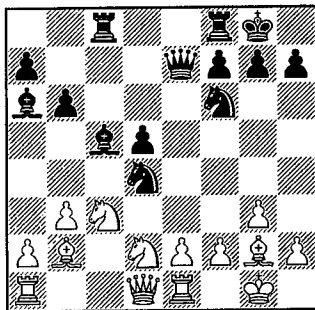
KM9/2: 1) White to play



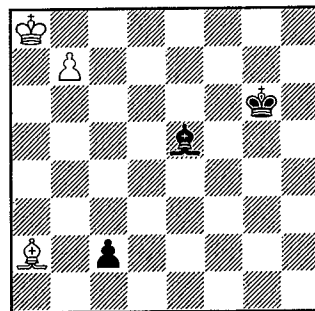
KM9/2: 2) White to play



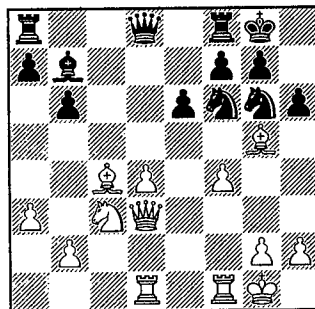
KM9/2: 3) Black to play



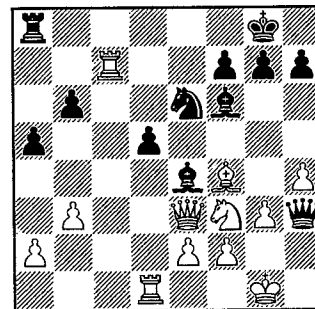
KM9/2: 4) White to play



A9/2: a) White to play



A9/2: b) Black to play

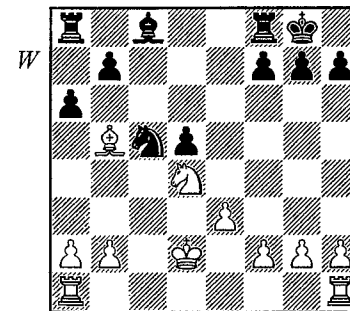


**Month 9/Week 3:  
Blockade and Destroy**

So far we have seen the positive side of the isolated pawn, this week we will look at less favourable aspects. Once again Nimzowitsch's classic formula applies, first restrain, next blockade and finally destroy. Yet even in defence the isolated pawn can prove to be a tough nut to crack.

**Flohr - Capablanca  
Moscow 1935**

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 ♘f3 ♘bd7 5 ♙g5 ♙e7 6 e3 0-0 7 ♚c2 c5 8 cxd5 ♘xd5 9 ♙xe7 ♚xe7 10 ♘xd5 exd5 11 ♙d3 cxd4 12 ♘xd4 ♚b4+ 13 ♚d2 ♘c5 14 ♙b5 ♚xd2+ 15 ♘xd2 a6



Black has played a passive line which gives him chances to make a draw at best. White has the advantage of "good knight" vs. "bad bishop" with the isolated pawn requiring constant protection. But is this enough to win?

16 ♙d3 ♙e6 17 ♚ac1

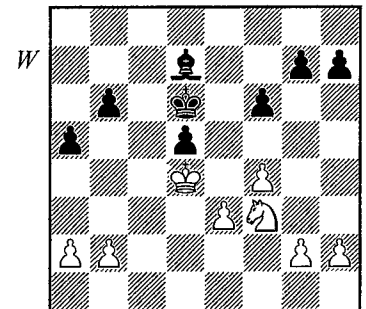
With only one open file, it is almost inevitable that all the rooks will be exchanged.

17 ... ♚fc8 18 ♚c2 ♘xd3 19 ♘xd3 ♚xc2 20 ♘xc2 ♘f8 21 ♘d2 ♚c8 22 ♚c1 ♚xc1 23 ♘xc1 ♙e7 24 ♘d2 ♘d6 25 ♘c3 b6!

The first in a series of highly instructive moves. By putting his pawns on the opposite colour to his bishop, Black denies possible points of entry to White's king

26 f4 ♙d7 27 ♘f3 f6! 28 ♘d4! a5!

Another important move which means that Black will be able to keep his pawn on b6. Had he omitted this move, White would play b2-b4, bring his knight to c3 and eventually arrange a2-a4-a5.



29 ♘d2 ♙c8 30 ♘b1 ♙e6 31 ♘c3 ♙c6 32 a3 h6 33 g3

In the tournament book, Rabinovitch proposed that White should play for g2-g4 followed by f4-f5 before transferring his knight to f4. White would then be able to play either ♘e6 or ♘h5 according

to circumstances. This explains Capablanca's next move and also his 36th.

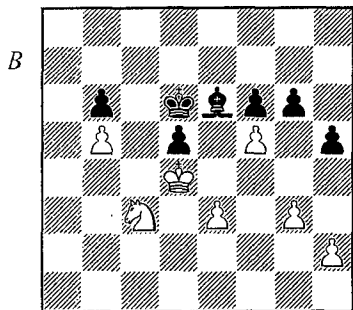
**33 ... h5! 34 b4!**

Threatening 35 b5+ ♖d6 36 f5 ♙f7 (36 ... ♙xf5 37 ♖xd5 ♙d7 38a4) 37 ♖e2 followed by 38 ♖f4.

**34 ... axb4 35 axb4 ♖d6 36 b5!**

Now 37 f5 is a threat. The immediate 36 f5 ♙xf5 37 ♖xd5 b5 would allow Black to defend.

**36 ... g6 37 ♖a4 ♖c7 38 ♖c3 ♖d6 39 f5!**



**39 ... gxf5**

Black is forced to allow his pawns to be shattered as this time 39 ... ♙xf5 40 ♖xd5 ♙d3 41 ♖xf6 ♙xb5 42 ♖d5 wins a pawn.

**40 ♖e2 ♙d7**

Alternatively Black could have played 40 ... ♙g8 41 ♖f4 ♙f7 42 h3! ♙e8 which also hangs on.

**41 ♖f4 ♙e8!**

If 41 ... ♙xb5 then 42 ♖hx5 gives White a passed h-pawn.

**42 ♖xd5 ♙xb5 43 ♖xb6! ♙c6**

The isolated pawn has disappeared and Black's pawns on the kingside are split and weak. But

with play on only one side of the board this is not enough to give a serious advantage.

**44 ♖c4+ ♖e6 45 ♖b2 ♙b5 46 ♖d1 ♙e2 47 ♖f2 ♙f1 48 ♖d3!**

Continuing to force Black to defend precisely even in the pawn endgame. If 48 ... ♙e2 there is of course 49 ♖f4+.

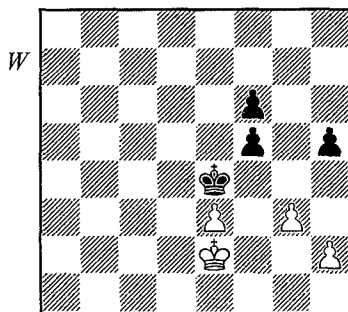
**48 ... ♙xd3 49 ♖xd3 ♖e5!**

Black must proceed with great care. After 49 ... ♖d5? 50 ♖d2! White wins in the lines 50 ... h4 51 gxf4 f4 52 exf4 ♖e4 53 h5!+, 50 ... ♖e4 51 ♖e2 ♖d5 (51 ... h4 52 gxf4 f4 53 h5! ♖f5 54 exf4+-) 52 ♖f3 ♖e5 53 h3! ♖d5 54 ♖f4 ♖e6 55 h4!+- and 50 ... ♖e5 51 ♖e1! ♖d5 52 ♖f2! ♖e4 53 ♖e2!+-.

**50 ♖e2**

After 50 ♖d2 Black draws with 50 ... h4! 51 gxf4 f4 52 h5 fxe3+ etc.

**50 ... ♖e4!**



**51 h3**

Or 51 ♖f2 h4 52 gxf4 f4 53 h5 fxe3+ =

**51 ... ♖d5! 52 ♖f3 ♖e5 1/2-1/2**

After 53 h4 ♖d5 54 ♖f4 ♖e6 White cannot make any progress.

### Botvinnik - Bakulin USSR 1967

**1 c4 e6 2 g3 d5 3 ♙g2 ♖f6 4 ♖f3 ♙e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 b3 c5 7 ♙b2 ♖c6 8 e3 b6 9 ♖c3 ♙a6**

A somewhat unnatural move. The immediate 9 ... ♙b7 looks better.

**10 ♖e2 ♖c8 11 ♖b5 ♙b7**

11 ... ♙xb5 12 axb5 ♖b8 is unpleasant so Black aims to eject the knight with ... a7-a6.

**12 d3 a6**

Driving away the intruder but weakening the queenside pawn structure.

**13 ♖c3 ♖c7**

13 ... dxc4 14 bxc4 would leave Black's b-pawn exposed on the open file. It would have been better to try 13 ... d4 or even 13 ... ♖b8 so as to meet 14 ♖e5 with ... ♖fd7 and 14 cxd5 with 14 ... ♖xd5 15 ♖xd5 ♙xd5.

**14 ♖fd1 ♖d7 15 cxd5 ♖xd5 16 ♖xd5 exd5**

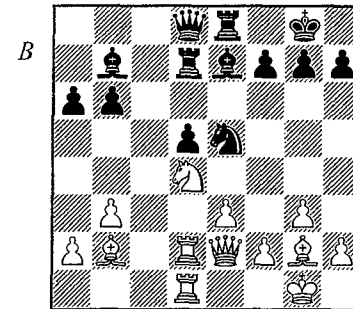
If 16 ... ♖xd5 there is 17 d4 ♖d7 18 dxc5 ♙xc5 19 ♖e5 ♖xe5 (19 ... ♖xd1+ 20 ♖xd1 ♖c7 21 ♙xc6 ♙xc6 22 ♖xc6 ♖xc6 23 ♖xa6 ♖a8 24 ♖c4) 20 ♙xb7 which gives Black difficulty defending his a-pawn.

**17 d4 ♙e8 18 ♖d2 cxd4**

After 18 ... ♙f6 White can either play 19 dxc5 bxc5 to inflict hanging pawns or try and provoke 19 ... cxd4 by going 19 ♖c1.

**19 ♖xd4 ♖e5 20 ♖ad1**

White systematically increases the pressure on the isolated pawn.

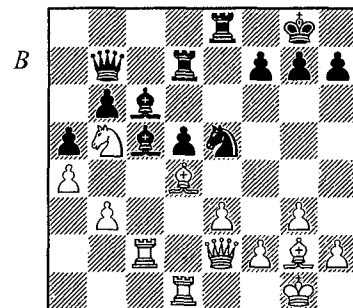


**20 ... ♙c5 21 a3 a5 22 ♖b5 ♙c6 23 a4 ♖a8 24 ♙d4 ♖b7**

24 ... ♙xd4 was a more stubborn defence. Now Black's position slips rapidly downhill.

**25 ♖c2**

Now 25 ... ♙xd4 loses a piece after 26 exd4 and the bishop on c5 cannot be defended again. So Black tries to complicate matters.



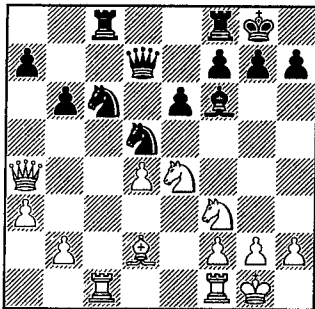
**25 ... ♖dd8 26 ♙xc5 d4 27 ♙xc6 ♖xc6 28 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 29 ♙xd4 ♖f3+ 30 ♖h1 ♖e4**

Or 30 ... ♖b7 31 e4 ♖xe4 32 ♖xe4 etc.

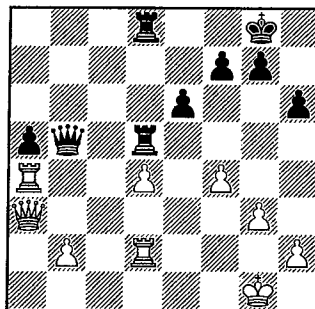
**31 ♖d3 ♖g4 32 e4 ♖d8 33 ♖e2 ♖h5 34 ♙g2 1:0**

After 34 ... ♖xh2+ White's king can coolly capture the knight.

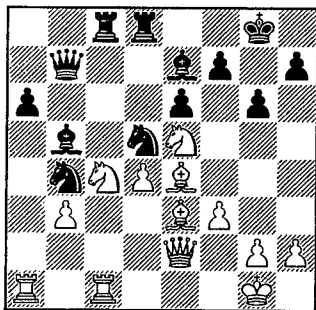
KM9/3: 1) Black to play



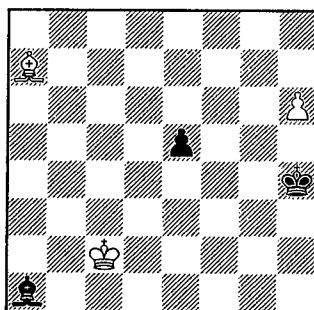
KM9/3: 2) Black to play



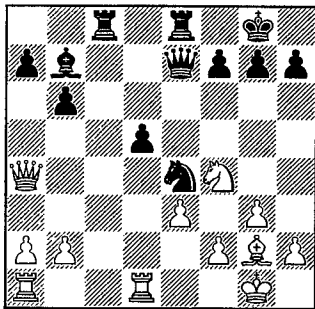
KM9/3: 3) Black to play



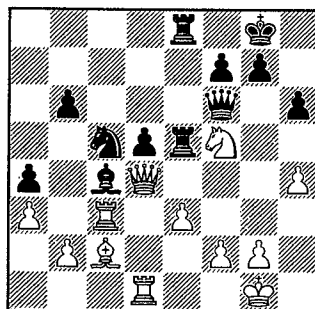
KM9/3: 4) White to play



A9/3: a) White to play



A9/3: b) White to play



### Month 9/Week 4: Less Usual Isolated Pawns

So far we have only looked at the classic form of isolated pawn in which the pawn stands on the fourth rank and the opponent has no d- or c-pawns. The second most common form occurs when d- and e-pawns have been exchanged. This occurs in the Tarrasch Variation of the French Defence in which Wolfgang Uhlmann (alongside Korchnoi) is the greatest connoisseur of the Black position.

### Kholmov - Uhlmann Halle 1978

1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘d2 c5 4 ♗g3 ♗c6 5 exd5 exd5 6 ♖b5 ♗d6 7 dxc5 ♗xc5 8 ♗b3 ♗d6 9 0-0 ♗e7 10 ♗g5 0-0

How does this type of position vary from the ones we have just examined? One of the main differences is that the half-open d- and e-files make it more difficult for Black to establish a piece on e4 because of e-file pressure. On the other hand Black may have better prospects of creating play on the c-file using the c4 square.

11 ♖e1 a6 12 ♗d3 ♗g4 13 c3

White could also play 13 ♗h4 but in Feher - Uhlmann, Eger 1985 went 13 ... ♗e5 14 ♗e2 ♗c4 15 ♗d4 ♗xf3 16 ♗xf3 ♗f5 17 ♗xd8 ♗xd4 18 ♗xd4 ♖fxd8 19 b3 with a good game for Black.

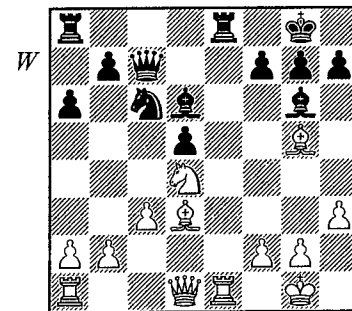
13 ... ♖c7 14 h3

Because of the threat of 14 ... ♗xh2+ this move is forced.

14 ... ♗h5 15 ♗e2

The only way to break the pin on the knight on f3.

15 ... ♖fe8 16 ♗fd4 ♗g6 17 ♗d3 ♗xd4 18 ♗xd4 ♗c6!



Typically challenging the pawn's blockader.

19 ♗xg6 hxg6 20 ♖d3 ♗e5!

21 ♖c2 ♗c5 22 ♖ed1

And not 22 ♖ad1?? ♗xd4 23 ♖xd4 ♗f3+.

22 ... ♗a7 23 ♖ac1

White has blockaded the d-pawn but he is still unable to speak of any pressure against d5. Over the next few moves, Black's manoeuvres keep White too busy to organise the pawn's capture.

23 ... ♖ac8 24 ♗h4

And not 24 ♗b3? because of

24 ... ♗f3+ 25 gxf3 ♖g3+.

24 ... ♖c4! 25 b3 ♖c5 26 ♖d2 ♗c6

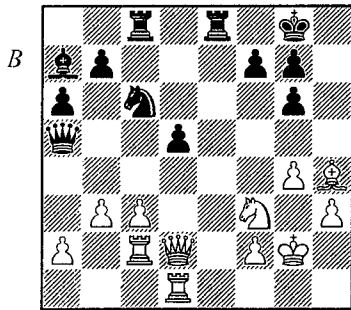
26 ... ♖a3! was more precise according to Uhlmann, increasing the pressure on a2 and c3.

27 ♖f3! ♗e7 28 g4

A very risky move, which keeps Black's knight out of the f5-square but severely weakens White's king position. It would have been better to play 28 ♖xe7 ♗xe7 29 ♖c2!, protecting f2 and preparing to attack d5.

28 ... ♖a5! 29 ♖c2 ♗c6! 30 ♖g2

30 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 31 ♗xd5 ♗b4 would lose the exchange. Now Black finally stops White using d4 with the thematic pawn thrust.



30 ... d4! 31 cxd4?!

White should play for a draw with 31 ♗xd4 ♗xd4 32 cxd4 ♖d5+ 33 f3 ♖xd4 34 ♖xc8 ♖xd2+ 35 ♖xd2 ♖xc8 though 31... ♗xd4 32 cxd4 ♖d5+ 33 f3 ♗xd4 34 ♖xc8 ♖xf3+ 35 ♖h2 ♖xc8 36 ♖xd4 ♖c2+ 37 ♖d2 ♖c3 would liven things up considerably.

31 ... ♖d5!

Threatening 32 ... ♗xd4.

32 ♖g5 ♖e4! 33 ♖cd2 f6 34 ♖e3 ♖d5

34... ♖xe3 35 fxe3 ♖xe3 would make White's d-pawn very dangerous in the endgame

35 ♖c3 b5!

Preventing 36 ♖c4

36 ♖b2 ♖cd8 37 ♖d3 ♖e4! 38 ♖g1

The pressure on the a8-h1 diagonal has become unbearable for White. Black now regains his pawn and keeps a clear plus in any case.

38 ... ♗xd4! 39 ♗xd4

Losing immediately but it is already difficult to give White good advice. 39 ♖f1 is met by 39 ... ♖f4! 40 ♗g1 ♖h1 41 ♖g3 (41 f3 ♗xf3!! 42 ♖xd8+ ♖h7+) 41.. ♖e4 42 f3 ♖e2 43 ♖xe2 ♗xe2 44 ♖xd8+ ♖h7 45 ♖xe2 ♖g2+ 46 ♖d3 ♖xg3 47 ♗e2 ♖xf3+ 48 ♖d2 ♖e3+, a line which was given by Uhlmann.

39 ... ♖xd4 40 ♖xd4 ♖xd4 0:1

41 ... ♖xf2+ wins the rook.

### Smyslov - Lilienthal Moscow 1947

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 d5 4 cxd5 ♗xd5 5 ♖g2 ♖g7 6 ♗f3 0-0 7 0-0 ♗b6 8 ♗c3 ♗c6 9 d5 ♗b8

Nowadays Black invariably plays 9 ... ♗a5, but the game under review does not refute this retreat of the knight to home base.

10 ♗d4

Preventing 10 ... c6 because of simply 11 dxc6 but 10 e4 may well have been better.

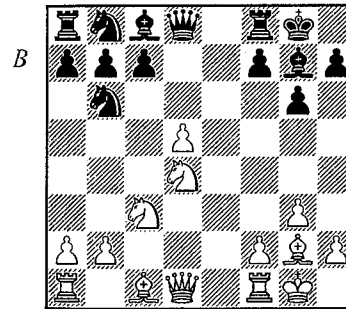
10 ... e6! 11 e4 exd5?

This gives White an isolated pawn on d5 but it turns out to exert very unpleasant pressure on Black's position. Black should

have undermined d5 still further with 11 ... c6, after which 12 ♗b3 cxd5 13 exd5 cxd5 14 ♗xd5 ♗c6 leaves Black with a fully equal game.

12 exd5

Is the pawn on d5 strong or weak? Black evidently thought it was a liability because it impedes the activity of White's bishop on g2. But in fact the d5-pawn severely restricts Black's army and the possibility of d5-d6 hangs over Black's head like the sword of Damocles.



12 ... ♗8d7 13 ♖f4 ♗e5 14 h3 ♗bc4 15 b3

If 15 ♖c2 there is 15 ... c5! after which 16 dxc6 ♖xd4 17 cxb7 ♖xb7 18 ♖xb7 ♖ab8 would have given Black a strong initiative for his pawn.

15 ... ♗d6 16 ♖e1 ♖e8 17 ♖c1

Threatening 18 ♗c5.

17 ... a6 18 ♗a4 ♗b5 19 ♗c6! ♖xe6

If 19 ... fxe6 there follows 20 ♖xe5 exd5 21 ♖xd5+ ♖h8 22 ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 23 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 24

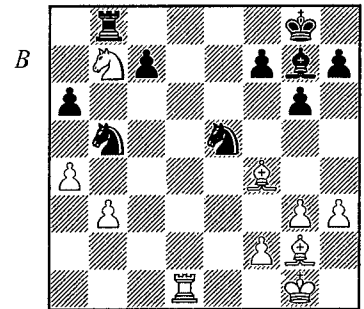
♖e7+ ♖h6 25 ♗c5 which is quite horrible for Black.

20 dxe6 ♖xe6 21 ♗c5 ♖xd1

After 21 ... ♖d6 22 ♖e2 ♗d4 (22 ... ♗d3 23 ♗xd3 ♖xd3 24 ♖xb7) 23 ♖e4 f5 24 ♖e3 Black loses material.

22 ♖exd1 ♖d6 23 ♗xb7 ♖xd1+ 24 ♖xd1 ♖b8 25 a4

White has a clear advantage in a powerful pair of bishops, and Black's queenside pawns are weak.



25 ... ♗c3 26 ♖d2 ♖e8 27 ♗c5 a5 28 ♖c2! ♗d1 29 ♖d2 ♖f8!

A clever defence which intends to meet 30 ♖xa5 with 30 ... ♗xf2! 31 ♖xf2 ♖xc5+ 32 ♖xc5? ♗d3+.

30 ♗e4 ♖b8 31 ♖xa5 ♖xb3 32 ♖xc7

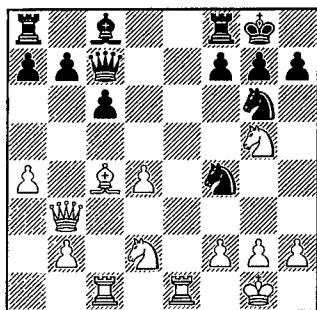
Finally winning a pawn. The rest, to coin a phrase, is a matter of technique, which Smyslov handles superbly.

32 ... ♗d3 33 ♖f1!

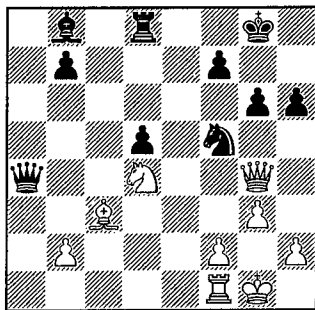
Anticipating 33 ... ♖b1.

33 ... ♗1b2 34 a5 f5 35 ♗d2 ♖a3 36 ♗c4! ♗xc4 37 ♖xc4 ♖a1 38 ♖b6 ♗e5 39 ♖c3 ♖b4 40 ♖c8+ ♖f7 41 ♖g2! 1:0

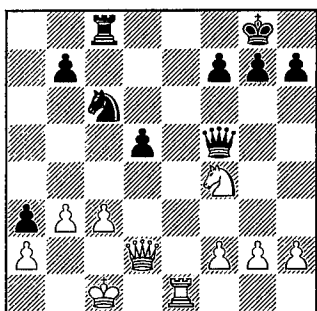
KM9/4: 1) White to play



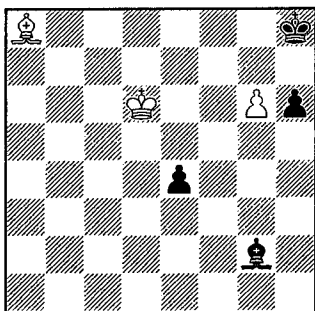
KM9/4: 2) Black to play



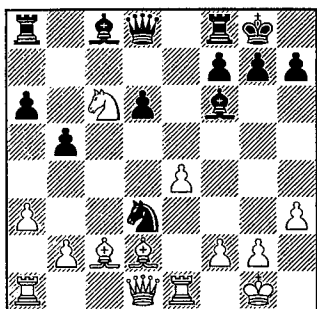
KM9/4: 3) White to play



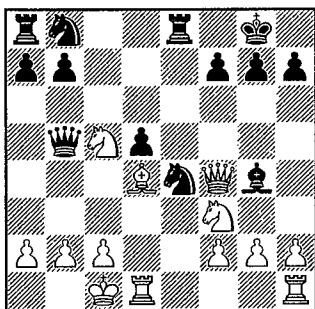
KM9/4: 4) White to play



A9/4: a) Black to play



A9/4: b) Black to play



## 10 Doubled Pawns

If you have two pawns on the same file they are known as doubled pawns. This is the subject for investigation this month. It is important to know when doubled pawns are a weakness, when they are a strength and how to play positions in which they arise.

In week one we will be looking at positions in which acquiring doubled pawns increases one's influence over the centre. In week two we will move up a gear by looking at the dynamic chances that doubled pawns can bring their owner.

In weeks three and four we will be looking at the darker side of doubled pawns. In week three they are seen as being a direct weakness and in week four it is their lack of mobility which is the problem.

### Month 10/Week 1: Doubled Central Control

When we have to capture a piece with one of two pawns the golden rule is to capture towards the centre. Beginners often make the mistake of capturing away from the centre. They imagine they can get a terrific attack down the file that is opened, but usually such hopes prove to be illusory in the face of

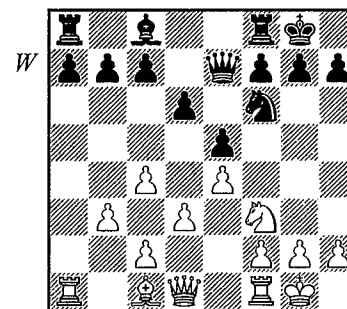
accurate defence by their opponent. There are a few exceptions to this rule but they are rather rare.

In the two games this week we see Bent Larsen and Viktor Korchnoi showing the benefits of pawns which are doubled by capturing towards the centre.

#### Larsen - Lengyel Amsterdam (Interzonal) 1964

1 e4 e5 2 ♘c4 ♘f6 3 ♗c3 ♗c6 4 d3 ♘b4 5 ♗f3 d6 6 0-0 ♘xc3 7 bxc3 ♗a5 8 ♘b3 ♗xb3 9 axb3 0-0 10 c4 ♖e7

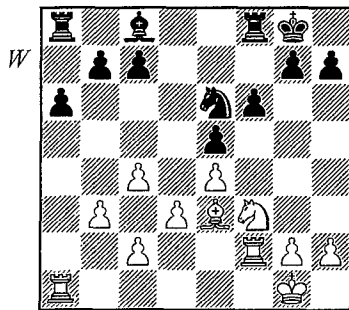
White has captured twice towards the centre and this proves to be the root of his advantage. In his marvellous collection of selected games, Larsen commented that he likes White's centre pawns and that the opposite coloured bishops do not guarantee a draw as long as there are other pieces on the board.



11 ♖d2 ♗d7 12 ♜h5 ♗c5 13 f4  
White is gradually eroding Black's central pawns. This does give Black the chance to exchange queens but that does not really change the strategic essentials.

13 ... exf4 14 ♖xf4 ♜e5 15 ♜xe5 dxe5 16 ♖f2 ♗e6 17 ♗f3 f6 18 ♗e3 a6

Black has very little play in this position as he can do little to contest the centre. White's centralised pawn mass on b3, c2, c4, d3 and e4 is the problem. In the long run White will be able to advance his central pawns with c2-c3 and d3-d4.



19 ♗h4 ♗d7 20 ♗f5 ♖ae8 21 h3 ♖f7 22 ♗h2 ♗f8 23 g4 ♗g6 24 ♗g3 ♗e7 25 ♖af1 ♗c6 26 ♗e2

26 g5 would lead to nothing but exchanges on the f-file. The real point of Larsen's build-up on the f-file was to stop Black from liberating his game with ... f7-f5.

26 ... ♗c6 27 ♗g3 ♗b8 28 ♗c3 c6

Another committal decision by Black, which further weakens his position. Black clearly wanted to

prevent White's knight from landing on d5, but it is difficult to know whether the cure is worse than the disease.

29 c5! ♗d7 30 ♗a4 ♖d8 31 h4 ♖df8 32 ♗b2 ♖c8 33 ♖a1

Larsen wrote that after 33 ♗c4 ♗xc4 he would have little chance to break through. The text plans the manoeuvre of White's rook to b4, which ties Black down to the defence of his b-pawn, and supports the eventual d3-d4.

33 ... ♗f8 34 ♖a4 ♗e8 35 ♖b4 ♖c7 36 c3 g6?

Black wants counter-play with ...f6-f5, but this merely weakens Black's position. Larsen recommended that Black play a quiet move such as 36 ... ♖e7 or 36 ... ♗d8.

37 d4! h5?

This makes matters worse, Black should wait. 37 ... f5 is also bad because of 38 gxf5 gxf5 39 exf5 ♗xf5 40 ♗c4.

For the remainder of the game, Black is helpless because of the strength of White's centre. The seeds of this position were sown with 7 bxc3 and 9 axb3.

38 g5 fxe5 39 ♗xe5 exd4 40 ♖xf7 ♗xf7 41 cxd4 ♗f6 42 ♗f4 a5 43 ♖a4 ♗xb3 44 ♖xa5 ♗g4 45 ♖a3 ♗e6 46 ♗d3 ♗g7 47 ♗e5! ♖c8 48 ♗e7 ♖e8 49 ♗d6 ♗xe5 50 ♗xe5+ ♗f7 51 ♗g5 ♗g4 52 ♖a1 ♖e6 53 ♖b1 ♖e7 54 ♖f1+ ♗e8 55 ♗xg6

Finally winning material.

55... ♗d7 56 ♖f4 ♗e2 57 ♗d6 ♖e6+ 58 ♗g5 ♗d3 59 ♗e5 ♗e2 60

♖f2 ♗d3 61 ♗f4! ♖g6 62 ♗e3 ♗c4 63 ♖f5 ♖g1 64 ♖xh5 ♖e1+ 65 ♗f4 ♗d3 66 ♖h7+ ♗e6 67 d5+! cxd5 68 exd5+ ♗xd5 69 ♖d7+ 1:0

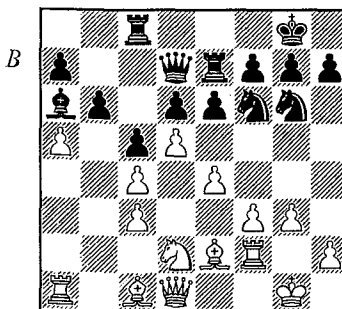
After 69 ... ♗c4 there is 70 ♖d4+ ♗c3 71 ♖e4+ ♗d2 72 ♗c3+ etc.

### Korchnoi - Petrosian Moscow 1965

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗c3 ♗b4 4 e3 0-0 5 ♗f3 c5 6 ♗e2 ♗xc3+ 7 bxc3 b6 8 ♗d2!

The start of a very interesting manoeuvre. By repositioning this knight on b3, White prevents Black from playing ... ♗b8-c6-a5 which would endanger the c4-pawn. He also frees his f-pawn in preparation for f2-f3 and e3-e4. If Black opposes this plan with ... d7-d5, then White is able to exchange off his doubled c-pawn and at the same time whittle away Black's central pawns.

8 ... ♗b7 9 0-0 d6 10 f3 ♗c6 11 ♗b3 ♗e7 12 e4 ♗g6 13 g3 ♖c8 14 ♖f2 ♗a6 15 d5 ♖e8 16 ♗d2 ♜d7 17 a4 ♖e7 18 a5



18 ... b5

The doubled pawns now disappear and White gains a clear plus on account of his extra space and his bishop pair.

19 cxb5 ♗xb5 20 c4 ♗a6 21 ♗b2 ♜e8 22 ♗f1 ♖b8 23 ♗c3 e5 24 ♗d3 ♗c8 25 ♗f1

The immediate 25 f4 would be premature as after 25 ... ♗g4 26 ♖f3 exf4 27 gxf4 f5! 28 exf5 ♗e3! Black is causing mayhem.

25 ... ♖eb7 26 ♗c2 a6 27 ♗e3 ♗f8 28 ♜f1 h6 29 ♖e1 ♗h7 30 f4 ♗g4 31 ♗xg4 ♗xg4 32 h3

And not 32 f5 ♗g5!

32 ... ♗d7 33 ♗g2 f6 34 ♖ef1

34 ♖a1 would have been more precise in order to prevent 34... ♗a4. Black in turn misses his chance.

34 ... ♜d8?! 35 ♖a1 ♜e7 36 ♗f1 ♜e8 37 ♗e2 ♜c8 38 f5 ♖b4!

Black's best chance of counter-play before White organises a breakthrough on the kingside.

39 ♗xb4 cxb4 40 ♗b3 ♜c5

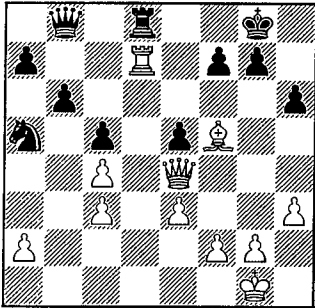
It would have been better to try 40 ... ♗e8 with the idea of bringing his knight to c5 via f8 and d7.

41 ♗f1 ♗g5 42 ♖e2! ♜d4 43 ♖b1 ♜d3 44 ♖b2 ♗c8 45 h4 ♗f3

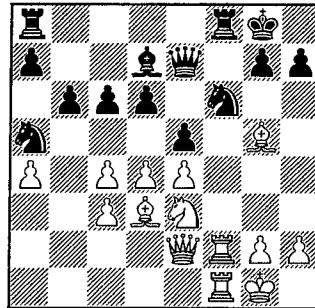
45 ... ♗f7 was tougher, intending to bring the knight to c5 via d8 and b7.

46 ♗f2 ♗d4 47 ♖e3 ♜c3 48 ♖xc3 bxc3 49 ♖b1 ♖xb3 50 ♖xb3 ♗xb3 51 ♗e3 ♗d4 52 ♜a2 c2 53 ♗d2 ♗h5 54 c5! dxc5 55 d6+ ♗f7 56 ♜a4 1:0

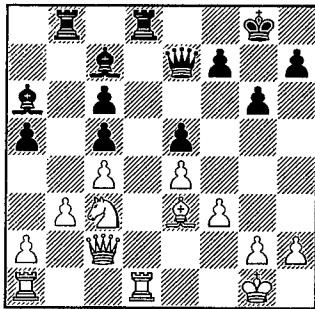
KM10/1: 1) White to play



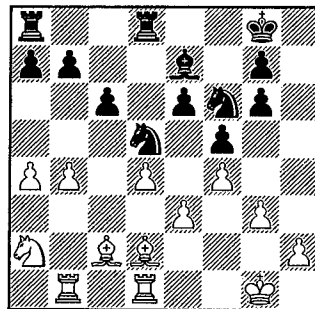
KM10/1: 2) White to play



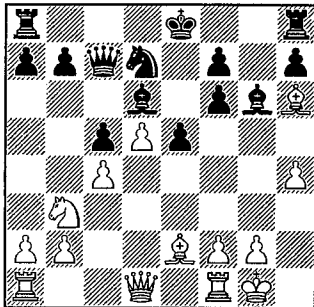
KM10/1: 3) Black to play



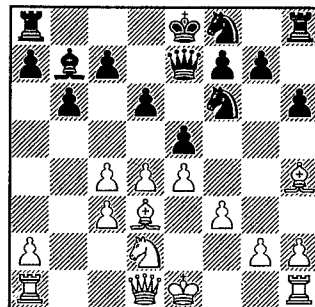
10/1: 4) Black to play



A10/1: a) Black to play



A10/1: b) White to play



### Month 10/Week 2: Doubled Pawn Dynamite

Last week's games were rather stately efforts but that is about to change! Doubled pawns can become a battering ram under the right circumstances and the open file that comes with them can be a road down which to bring the artillery. This week we will see some doubled pawn dynamite!

The first game is once again from Bent Larsen's practice, while the second is a highly creative effort from the Welsh IM George Botterill.

#### Robatsch - Larsen Halle 1963

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 e5 6 ♘db5 d6 7 ♙g5 a6 8 ♘a3 ♙e6

Larsen gave 8 ... ♙e6 a new lease of life in this game, strengthening Black's play with 9 ... ♜c8. The most popular move today is 8 ... b5, the so-called Cheliabinsk Variation, which was popularised by Sveshnikov and Timoshenko.

9 ♘c4 ♜c8 10 ♘d5

In *Beating The Sicilian 3*, John Nunn and Joe Gallagher advocate 10 ♙xf6 at this point recommending that 10 ... gxf6 is met by 11 ♙d3 ♘e7 12 ♘e3 ♙h6 13 0-0 ♙xe3 14 fxe3 with pressure on the f-file. If Black varies from this with 10 ...

♙xf6 then 11 ♘b6 sets about occupying d5 with a piece.

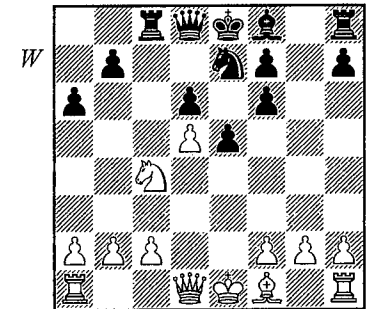
The big difference between this and the game continuation is that the hole on d5 is plugged by a pawn.

10 ... ♙xd5 11 ♙xf6 gxf6 12 exd5?!

12 ♙xd5! should definitely be tried, after which Larsen wrote that he would have played 12 ... ♘b4 13 ♙d2 d5 14 exd5 ♙xd5 with an even game or maybe 14 ... ♘xc2+!? 15 ♙xc2 ♙b4+ and 16 ... b5.

12 ... ♘e7

According to Larsen, Black is already slightly better at this point. His doubled pawns will advance down the board, and in conjunction with the half open g-file, will constitute a strong attacking force.



13 ♙d3

White's best and most imaginative try is probably 13 b4! after which 13 ... f5! 14 a4! would lead to a double-edged game. With his last move, White tries for an aggressive looking set-up but its appearance proves to be deceptive.

13 ... f5! 14 0-0 ♙g7 15 ♙h5

It is difficult to know what to recommend to White, Black has the makings of an attack on the kingside and White's d-pawn can become weak.

15 ... e4 16 ♖e2 0-0 17 c3 f4!

The doubled pawns trundle forward.

18 ♖g5 b5 19 ♘d2 f5 20 a4

20 ♖xf4 ♘xd5 would also be very dangerous for White.

20 ... ♖h8!

White might have been hoping for 20 ... ♘xd5 21 ♖xd8 ♖fxd8 22 axb5 after which the exchange of queens would defuse Black's attack.

After 20 ... ♖h8, on the other hand, Larsen showed that White's position is virtually lost. Black is about to breach White's kingside with 21 ... f3! and there is nothing to be done about it.

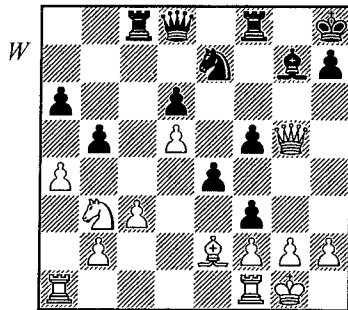
After 21 axb5 Larsen gave 21 ... f3! 22 ♖c4 (Or 22 gxf3 ♖g8! 23 ♖h1 ♖xc3) 22... ♖g8! 23 ♖e3 (After 23 ♖h5 there is 23 ... ♖f6! and 23 ♖h4 is met by 23 ... ♖f8!) 23 ... ♖e5 24 g3 ♖e8 with a winning attack. 21 f3 would be met by 21 ... ♖f6! 22 ♖xf4 ♘xd5 23 ♖g3 ♖h4 24 ♖h3 ♘f4!+

21 ♘b3 f3! (D)

Prising the f-file open, after which Black starts to create real threats.

22 gxf3 ♖xc3!

This is not simply the win of a pawn. The removal of this particular pawn turns Black's rook on c8 and dark-squared bishop into monsters.



23 ♖h1 ♖xb2 24 ♖a2 ♖e5 25 axb5

White is lost whatever he plays. After 25 fxe4 the simplest is to recapture the pawn and threaten ... ♖c3-h3.

25 ... ♖g8 26 ♖h5

If 26 ♖h4 then 26 ... ♖f8 is strong with the threats of ... ♖g7 and ... ♘g6.

26... ♘xd5 27 fxe4 ♘f4 28 ♖xf5 ♖h4 29 ♖d1 ♘e2 30 ♖xc5+ dxе5 31 ♖xe2 0:1

White resigned just before Larsen's queen landed on h3.

In the next game Black activates on the b-file rather than the g-file. Whilst the doubled pawns play a lesser role in this game, they nevertheless control some valuable central squares:

### Mestel - Botterill British Ch. PlayOff, 1974

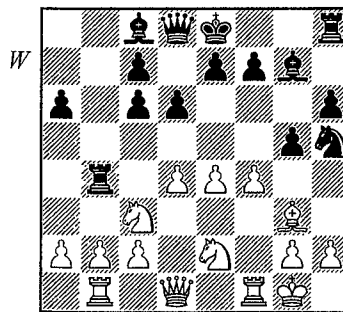
1 e4 g6 2 d4 ♖g7 3 ♘c3 d6 4 ♖g5 ♘c6 5 ♖b5 a6 6 ♖xc6+ bxc6

I treat the Modern Defence in this way myself and have even had this position on several occasions. Whilst the doubled pawns make it difficult for Black to take immediate action in the centre, they do control valuable squares. Black can also activate his major pieces along the half-open b-file, which brings incidental pressure against b2.

7 ♘ge2 ♖b8 8 ♖b1 ♘f6 9 0-0 h6 10 ♖h4

Jonathan Mestel is the kind of player that would actually like Black to play 10 ... g5 in the hope that this would loosen his position. It would however have been wiser for White to maintain this bishop with 10 ♖f4.

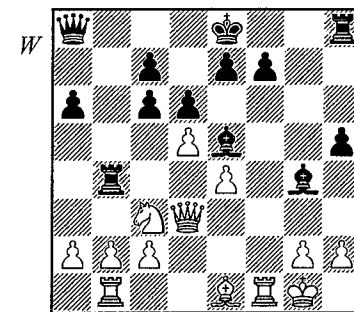
10 ... g5! 11 ♖g3 ♘h5 12 f4 ♖b4!



A very imaginative move, putting pressure on White's centre from a quite unexpected direction. White may have been wiser to choose 12 f3 rather than 12 f4, but this was not the decisive mistake.

13 ♖e1 ♖g4! 14 ♖d3 ♘xf4 15 ♘xf4 gxf4 16 ♖xf4 h5 17 d5 ♖e5 18 ♖f1 ♖a8!

Certainly a move which deserves a diagram. Black's original manoeuvres make this game a favourite of mine.



19 h3 ♖d7 20 ♘d1?

A serious mistake. White should have played 20 ♖f3 immediately when 20 ... f6 21 ♘e2 looks very messy.

20 ... ♖d4 21 ♖f3 cxd5

The doubled pawns finally have an influence in eating away at White's centre. Black's central pawn mass is also what provides the much-needed security for his king.

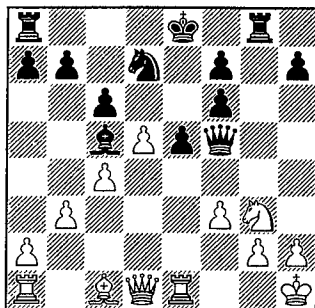
22 ♖xf7+ ♖d8 23 exd5 ♖xd5 24 ♖c3 ♖e6 25 ♖f3 ♖xa2 26 ♖xd4 ♖xd4+ 27 ♘f2 ♖d5 28 ♖a3?

The last chance to stay on the board was 28 ♖d3.

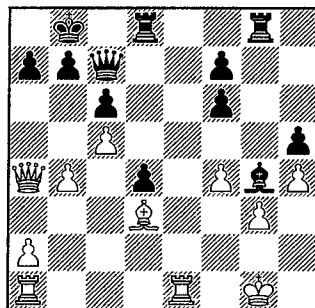
28... ♖c4 29 ♖h2 ♖e5+ 30 ♖h1 ♖g8 31 ♖g1 ♖f4 0:1



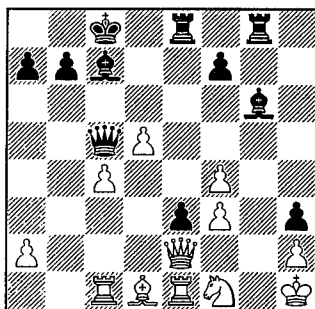
KM10/2: 1) Black to play



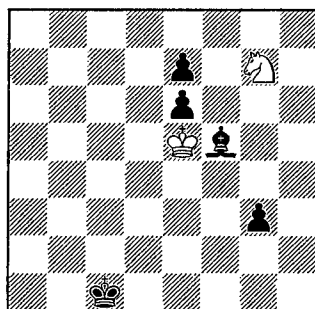
KM10/2: 2) Black to play



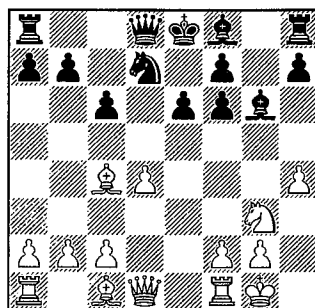
KM10/2: 3) Black to play



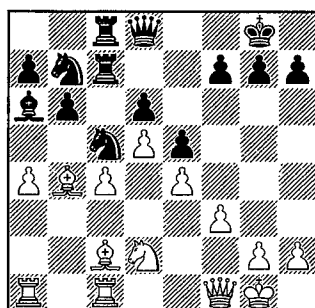
KM10/2: 4) White to play



A10/2: a) Black to play



A10/2: b) Black to play



### Month 10/Week 3: Doubled Pawn Weakness

One of the most obvious problems with doubled pawns is that sometimes they are unable to rely on colleagues for protection. This is especially true when the pawns are isolated and doubled in which case they can be very weak.

Such positions arise quite often, but it would be a mistake to assume that they are easy to play. Most players will only accept doubled pawns if they thereby gain some compensation, such as the bishop pair or active pieces.

#### Geller - Smyslov Amsterdam 1956

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♘c3 ♙b4 4 a3

The Sämisch Variation of the Nimzo-Indian has been described by David Bronstein as a gambit opening, because White should be prepared to give up his pawn on c4. At the time of this game it was a Geller favourite.

4 ... ♗xc3+ 5 bxc3 c5 6 e3 b6 7 ♗e2 ♘c6 8 ♗g3 0-0 9 ♙d3 ♙a6 10 e4 ♗e8!

A well-known prophylactic idea. By withdrawing the knight, Black accomplishes several things: Firstly he prevents a dangerous pin with 11 ♙g5, secondly he prepares to meet a subsequent f2-f4 by White with ...f7-f5, which would

stop the further advance of the f-pawn. A third idea behind the knight's retreat is to bring it to d6 to put further pressure on the c4 pawn.

11 ♙e3

11 e5 is more promising, immediately opening up the b1-h7 diagonal.

11 ... ♗a5 12 ♖e2

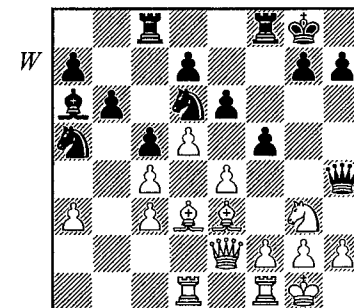
12 dxc5 bxc5 13 ♙xc5 d6 14 ♙e3 ♙xc4 would be excellent for Black.

12 ... ♖c8 13 d5 ♖h4!

A very fine move. The queen looks exposed here but it prevents White's queen from taking up an aggressive post on the kingside, and exerts lateral pressure against c4. 13 ... ♗d6 is inferior because of 14 e5 ♗dxc4 15 ♖h5 g6 16 ♖h6 ♗xe3 17 ♗h5 ♗xg2+ 18 ♗d2 etc.

14 0-0 ♗d6 15 ♖ad1 f5

Geller's last move was very crafty. After 15 ... ♙xc4 16 ♙xc4 both 16 ... ♗axc4 and 16 ... ♗dxc4 17 ♙c1 leave Black's knights misplaced.



16 dxc6 dxc6

And not 16 ... f4 because of 17 exd7 ♖cd8 18 e5 ♜dxc4 19 ♙xf4 ♜xf4 20 e6 ♜e7 21 ♜h5 g6 22 ♙xg6 hxg6 23 ♜xg6+ ♖h8 24 ♜h6+ etc.

### 17 exf5 exf5 18 ♜f3

An alternative idea was 18 ♙b1 after which 18 ... ♙xc4 19 ♙a2! would be good for White. Black should therefore play 18 ... ♖cd8 19 ♙c1, when Black will win a pawn but will face some awkward moments.

### 18 ... ♙b7!

18 ... ♙xc4 19 ♙xc4+ ♜axc4 20 ♙f4 would once again leave Black's knights horribly placed.

### 19 ♜f4 ♜f6 20 ♙b1 ♜e4

Not 20 ... ♜axc4 21 ♙a2! etc.

### 21 ♖d7

21 ♜xe4 fxe4 22 ♜xf6 ♜xf6 23 ♖d7 ♜f7 24 ♖fd1 ♙c6 would force simplification, after which White's position falls apart.

### 21 ... ♜c6 22 ♜xb7!?

Black was threatening to win the exchange with 22 ... ♜d2 so radical play is required by White. 22 ♜xg7+ proves inadequate after 22 ... ♜xg7 23 ♜e5+ (Or 23 ♜xf5+ ♖h8 24 f3 ♜f6 25 ♜e7 ♜c7 26 ♜xc8 ♜xf4 27 ♙xf4 ♙xc8) 23 ... ♜f6 24 ♙h6+ ♖h8.

22 ... ♜xb7 23 ♜xf5 ♜ce8 24 ♜g4 ♖h8 25 ♜g3 ♜xg3 26 hxg3 ♜f7 27 ♜h4 h6 28 ♙d3 ♜f6 29 ♜h5 ♖d8 30 ♙e2 ♜f5 31 ♜h4 ♜f6 32 ♜h5 ♜c6

The immediate 32 ... ♜f7 is more precise, after which 33 ♜h4 ♜c6

will enable Black to gain a tempo on White's queen with ... ♜e7 and ... ♜g6.

### 33 g4 ♜f7 34 ♜h4?!

34 ♜h2 was better after which 34 ... ♜e7 could be met by 35 g5. After the game continuation, 35 g5 ♜f5 wins a tempo.

34 ... ♜e7 35 ♜h3 ♜g6 36 ♜h2 ♜f4 37 ♙f3 ♜xc4 38 g5 ♖d6 39 ♖c1

If 39 g5 there is 39 ... ♜xh6 40 ♜g3 ♜xf1+! 41 ♖xf1 ♜h1 mate.

39 ... ♜g6 40 g5 ♜xh6 41 ♜g3 ♜e4!

A brilliant move which threatens a mating attack with 42... ♜h7. 42 ♙xe4 ♜e2+ 43 ♖f1 ♜xg3+ 44 ♖e1 ♜h1+ 45 ♖d2 ♜xe4+ wins most of White's pieces.

42 ♙xf4 ♜xf4 43 ♜xf4 ♜xf4 44 ♖e1 ♖a4 45 ♜e8+ ♖h7 46 ♙e4+ g6 47 g4 ♜xa3 48 ♙e6 ♜xc3 49 ♖g2

If 49 g5 then 49 ... ♜h4.

49 ... b5 50 f3 b4 51 g5 ♜h4 52 ♙xg6+

Or 52 ♜xg6 ♜xe4 53 ♜h6+ ♖g7 54 fxe4 b3 etc.

52 ... ♖g7 53 ♖g3 ♖d4 54 ♙e8 b3 55 g6 ♖d8 56 ♜e7+ 0:1

After 56... ♖f6 57 g7 ♜xe8 58 ♜xe8 ♖xg7 the win is easy.

The following game is a favourite of mine because Petrosian's highly original play is very logical. I am particularly fond of his brilliant 13th move which straightens out Black's doubled pawns in order to develop a more effective attack against the resulting backward

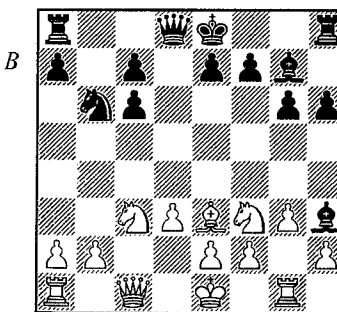
pawn. It is an object lesson in creative chess strategy, though I do not recommend that you try this kind of thing at home!

### Petrosian - W.Schmidt Skopje Olympiad 1972

1 c4 ♜f6 2 ♜c3 d5 3 cxd5 ♜xd5 4 g3 g6 5 ♙g2 ♜b6 6 d3 ♙g7 7 ♙e3!

A subtle move which later became fashionable. White prepares 8 ♜c1 followed by 9 ♙h6 and even h2-h4 should Black castle. It also keeps open White's king's bishop's diagonal, the point of which becomes clear next move.

7 ... ♜c6 8 ♙xc6+! bxc6 9 ♜c1 h6 10 ♜f3 ♙h3 11 ♜g1!



This stops the threat of 11 ... ♙g2 12 ♜g1 ♙xf3 and threatens to embarrass the bishop with g3-g4.

11 ... ♙g4 12 ♜d2 ♜d5 13 ♜xd5!

A really brilliant move in my opinion. Petrosian actually straightens out Black's pawns in order to keep the pressure on the

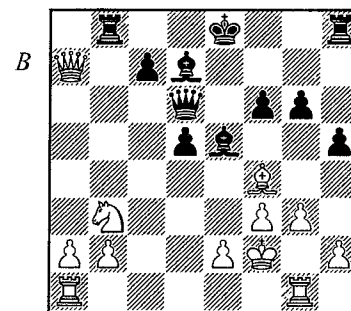
half open c-file and against the backward pawn on c7. 13 ♙c5 has been suggested by several commentators but I believe this would be less accurate. After 13 ... ♜xc3 14 bxc3 the c-file would be blocked and the weakness of Black's doubled pawns becomes hardly perceptible.

13 ... cxd5 14 ♜b3 ♜d6 15 f3 ♙d7 16 d4! ♜b8?

16 ... h5 17 ♖f2 e5 would have been better. The rook does nothing on the b-file.

17 ♖f2 h5 18 ♙f4 e5 19 dxe5 ♙xe5 20 ♜e3 f6 21 ♜xa7

The punishment for Black's 16th.



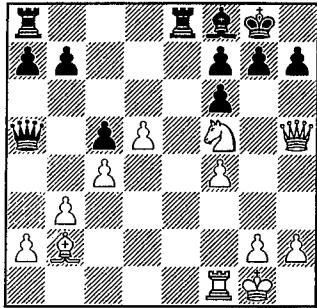
21 ... 0-0 22 ♜ac1 ♜fe8 23 ♙xe5 ♜xc5 24 ♙ge1 ♖a8

After 24 ... ♜bc8 there is 25 ♜d4, eliminating any counter-play.

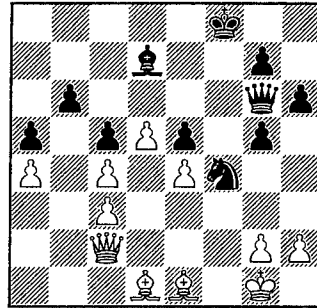
25 ♜xc7 ♜e3+ 26 ♖g2 ♖a7 27 ♜d6 h4 28 g5 ♙e6 29 ♜c3 ♜h6 30 a3 ♖d7 31 ♜g3 d4 32 ♖d3 ♙xb3 33 ♙xb3 ♜d2 34 ♖f1! ♖h7 35 ♜b8 ♜e5 36 ♜g4 f5 37 ♜g5 ♜e3 38 ♜f6 1:0

38 ... ♙g7 39 ♜f8 leads to mate.

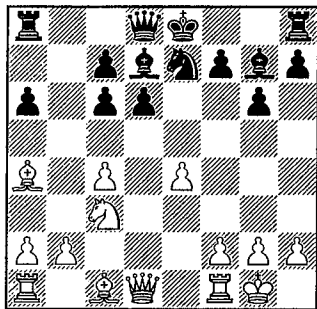
KM10/3: 1) White to play



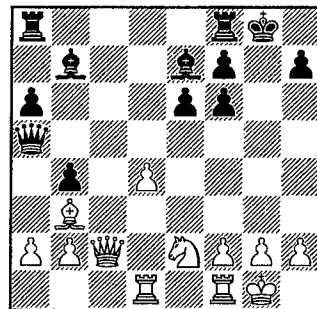
KM10/3: 2) White to play



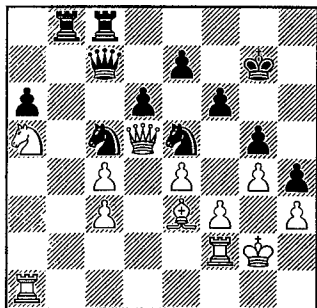
KM10/3: 3) White to play



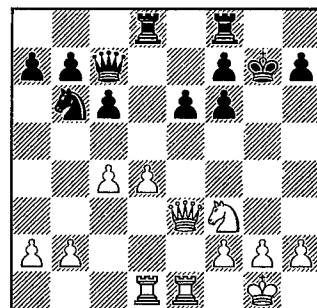
KM10/3: 4) White to play



A10/3: a) Black to play



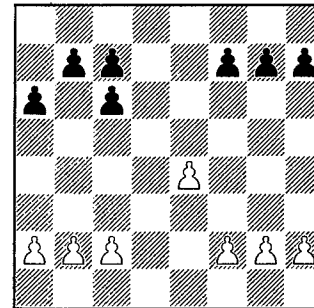
A10/3: b) White to play



**Month 10/Week 4:  
Doubled And Immobile**

In the final section this month, we will look at another problem with doubled pawns, their lack of mobility. This can be a particular problem in certain types of endgame, in which a pawn majority may be unable to yield a passed pawn due to the presence of doubled pawns.

The most famous opening in which this structure occurs is the Exchange Variation of the Ruy Lopez which arises after the moves 1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6 dxc6. If White later plays the advance d2-d4 and Black exchanges his e-pawn for it, we get the following pawn structure:



Black's queenside pawns are unable to produce a passed pawn, whilst White's kingside pawns can do so with ease. The simple pawn endgame is actually lost for Black because of this.

Black's strategy in the Exchange Variation is therefore easy to understand. He must use his two bish-

ops effectively and avoid unnecessary simplification like the plague. This is easier said than done of course....

Bobby Fischer was the man who brought the Exchange Variation back into prominence after many years of neglect. Here is one of his wins with it, against the Hungarian Grandmaster Lajos Portisch.

**Fischer - Portisch  
Havana Olympiad, 1966**

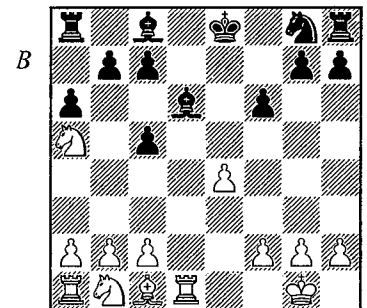
1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6 dxc6 5 0-0

This is the move that breathed new life into the Exchange. The old moves were 5 ♘c3 and 5 d4.

5 ... f6 6 d4 exd4 7 ♘xd4 c5 8 ♘b3 ♗xd1 9 ♙xd1 ♙d6?!

Nowadays Black normally prefers either 9 ... ♙d7 or 9 ... ♙g4 10 f3 ♙d7.

10 ♘a5!



10 ... b5

White was threatening 11 ♘c4 and after the bishop moves then 12 ♙f4 would be highly unpleasant.

Portisch therefore defends c4 with his b-pawn but then his c5-pawn becomes a target.

In a later game, Bagirov - Keres, USSR Team Ch. 1967, Black played 10 ... ♘h6 11 ♙xh6 gxh6 12 ♘c4 ♙e7 and soon equalised. But this was probably more to do with the fact that the young Bagirov was playing against a famous Grandmaster rather than any particular merits of his position. The two bishops do not compensate Black for his shattered pawns.

10 ... ♙g4 11 f3 0-0-0 12 e5! won a piece in the game Hort-Zheliandianov, Havana 1967.

11 c4!

Fixing the weakness on c5 after which the position becomes very dangerous for Black. So Portisch hastens to create counter-play before his game slips away.

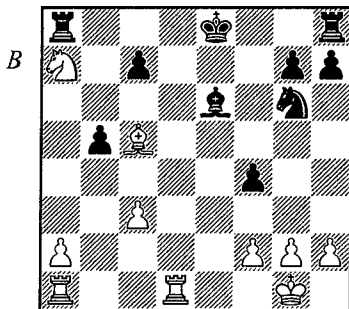
11 ... ♘e7 12 ♙e3 f5 13 ♘c3 f4 14 e5!

An instructive moment which reminds me of the Petrosian - Schmidt encounter in that it trades one form of advantage for another. Fischer eliminates Black's doubled c-pawns but estimates that his lead in development will create even more problems for Black.

14 ... ♙xe5 15 ♙xc5 ♙xc3 16 bxc3 ♘g6 17 ♘c6 ♙e6 18 cxb5 axb5 19 ♘a7!

An elegant move which wins the b5-pawn. The rest, to coin a phrase, is a matter of technique to someone like Fischer. But he goes on to win

the game in a crisp and elegant manner.



19 ... ♖b8 20 ♖db1 ♙f7 21 ♘xb5 ♖hd8 22 ♖b4 ♙xa2 23 ♘xc7 ♖bc8 24 h4!

An excellent multi-purpose move. White makes h2 available for his king and thus threatens the bishop on a2. He also threatens Black's f4 pawn with h4-h5 followed by ♖xf4+.

24 ... ♖d2 25 ♙b6 f3 26 ♙e3! ♖e2 27 ♘b5 ♖a8 28 h5 ♘e5 29 ♖f4+ ♙e7 30 ♖d1 ♖c8 31 ♖e4 ♙f6 32 ♖d6+ ♙f5 33 ♖f4+ ♙g5 34 ♖xf3+ 1:0

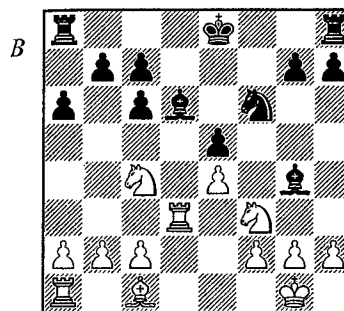
In the next game we see the former British Champion, Brian Eley, adopt a different defence to the Exchange against the young Andras Adorjan. But when he slightly misplays it, he winds up with a lost position astonishingly quickly.

#### Adorjan - Eley Teesside 1973

1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 ♙b5 a6 4 ♙xc6 dxc6 5 0-0 f6 6 d4 ♙g4

A popular alternative to 6 ... exd4 but here too Black can get into trouble because of the permanent weakness of the doubled queenside pawns.

7 dxe5 ♖xd1 8 ♖xd1 fxe5 9 ♖d3 ♙d6 10 ♘bd2 ♘f6 11 ♘c4



11 ... ♘xe4

This immediate capture leaves White with the advantage. A more precise way to play it is with 11 ... 0-0 12 ♘fxe5 ♙e2 13 ♖e3 ♙xc4 14 ♘xc4 ♙c5 after which 15 ♖e2 ♖ae8 16 ♙e3 ♖xe4 was a game Stean - Geller from the European Team Championships held in Bath in 1973. A game Ribli - Matanovic from the same tournament varied with 15 ♖e1 ♖ae8 16 ♙e3 ♙xe3 17 ♖xe3 ♖xe4 and in both cases Black achieved equality and drew.

12 ♘fxe5 ♙e6 13 f3 ♙xe5 14 ♘xe5 ♘c5 15 ♖e3 0-0-0 16 ♖e1 ♙f5

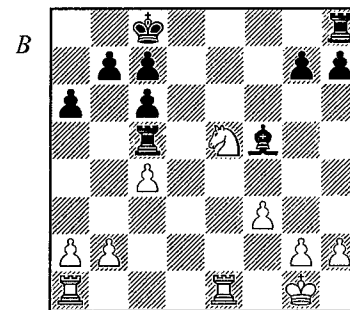
It was essential to play 16 ... ♖he8 though there too White would be better.

17 ♙e3

17 ♘f7 is ineffective because of 17 ... ♖he8 but the text is very strong. Any knight move would be met by 18 ♘f7 so Black's reply is forced.

17 ... ♖d5 18 ♙xc5! ♖xc5 19 c4

Putting Black's rook out of the game. The following moves are very instructive with White advancing his kingside pawns whilst Black's crippled queenside offers no chance of counter-play.



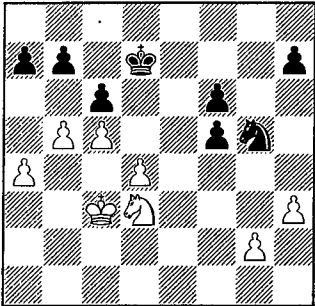
19 ... ♖e8 20 f4 a5 21 g4 ♙g6 22 h4! ♖d8 23 b3 b5 24 h5 ♙e8 25 a4 bxc4 26 bxc4 ♖d4 27 ♘h2!

An excellent move which stops any counter-play. White would meet 27 ... ♖xf4 with 28 ♘d3 when both of Black's rooks and his bishop would be en prise.

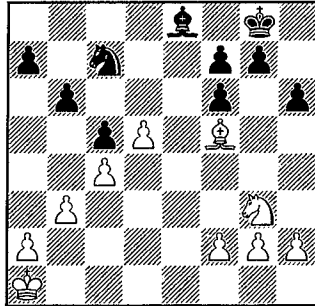
27 ... g6 28 hxg6 hxg6 29 ♖ad1 1:0

After 29 ... ♖xd1 30 ♖xd1 g5 31 ♘g3 gxf4+ 32 ♘xf4 the advance of White's g-pawn decides matters.

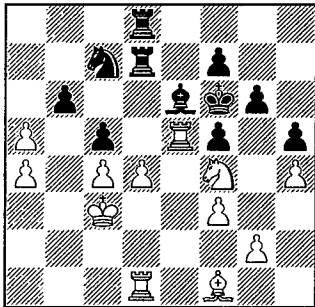
KM10/4: 1) White to play



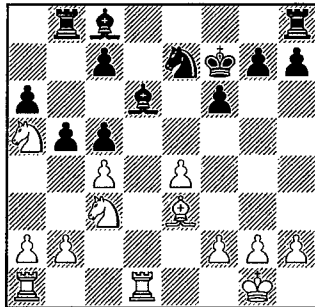
KM10/4: 2) White to play



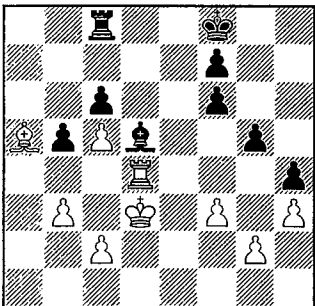
KM10/4: 3) White to play



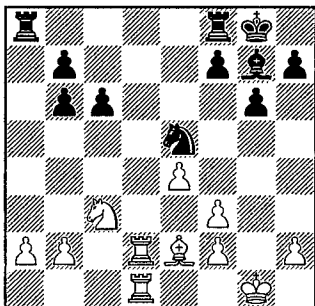
KM10/4: 4) White to play



A10/4: a) White to play

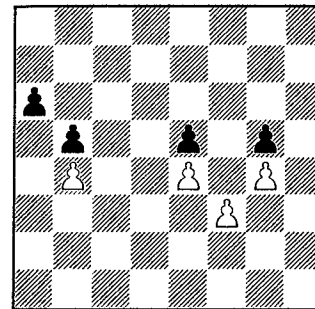


A10/4: b) Black to play



## 11 Backward Pawns

A pawn is 'backward' if it has been left behind by its neighbouring pawns and can no longer be supported by them. In the diagram below, Black's a-pawn and White's f-pawn can both be termed 'backward' pawns.



As with the isolated pawn, the main problem with such creatures is not the fact that they will easily succumb to a direct attack. It is more the weakness of the square in front of it that is the curse, as this can provide a haven for an opposing piece.

In the first week of this month's notes we will see the problems associated with backward pawns, though as week two will show, such pawns often bring compensating advantages. In weeks three and four we will see two typical backward pawn structures in the ...e5 Sicilian and the Stonewall structure.

### Month 11/Week 1: Backward and Bad

More often than not, the backward pawn does constitute a weakness. In the following game we see Vassily Smyslov in action, first blockading the pawn and then actually winning it in true Nimzowitsch style:

#### Smyslov - Denker USSR - USA, Moscow 1946

1 e4 c5 2 ♖c3 ♘c6 3 g3 g6 4 ♔g2 ♔g7 5 d3 e6 6 ♙e3 ♘d4 7 ♘ce2!

A strong move which put 6 ... ♘d4 out of business. 7 ... ♘xe2 8 ♘xe2 ♙xb2 9 ♚b1 ♗a5+ 10 ♙d2 ♗xa2 11 ♚xb2! ♗xb2 12 ♙c3 is good for White.

7 ... d6 8 c3 ♘c6 9 d4 cxd4 10 ♘xd4 ♘xd4 11 ♙xd4 e5

The backward d-pawn proves to be a problem in the subsequent play. Black should try 11 ... ♘f6.

12 ♙e3 ♘e7 13 ♘e2 0-0 14 0-0 ♙e6 15 ♗d2 ♗c7

If 15 ... d5 then 16 ♙c5 costs Black material. For this reason Black has no chance to liquidate his backward pawn.

16 ♚fc1!

A very fine move. White wants to nail Black's d-pawn to d6 with

17 c4 and if Black prevents this with 16 ... b5 there is 17 a4 a6 (17 ... bxa4 18 ♖xa4 a5 19 ♖ca1 threatens b2-b4) 18 ♖d1 ♖ad8 (18 ... ♖fd8 19 axb5 axb5 20 ♖xa8 ♖xa8 21 ♖xd6 and 18 ... ♗b3 19 ♖xd6 ♖xd6 20 ♖xd6 ♗xa4 21 ♖c1 [threatening b2-b3] both favour White) 19 axb5 axb5 20 ♖a7.

16 ... f5 17 c4 fxe4 18 ♖c3 ♖f5

Smyslov pointed out that the complications arising after 18 ... ♗xc4 19 ♖xe4 d5 20 ♖g5 d4 21 ♖e6 dxe3 22 ♖xe3 ♖d6 23 ♖xf8 ♗f7 (Or 23 ... ♗d5 24 ♗xd5+ ♖xd5 25 ♖c5 ♗xf8 26 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 27 ♖d1!) 24 ♖d1 ♖d5 25 ♖b3 ♖d8 26 ♖xg6! hxg6 27 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 28 ♖xd5 ♖xd5 29 ♖d1! favour White.

19 ♖xe4 ♖xe3 20 ♖xe3 h6 21 ♖d1 ♖fd8

21 ... ♗xc4 22 ♖ac1! sets up a very dangerous pin on the bishop.

22 ♖ac1 ♖ac8 23 b3 b6 24 ♖c3!

A very strong move aiming to exchange off Black's light-squared bishop with 24 ♗d5. Black could have avoided this with 24 ... ♖h7 but then 25 ♗e4! would threaten h4-h5 or 26 ♖b5 followed by 27 ♖d3.

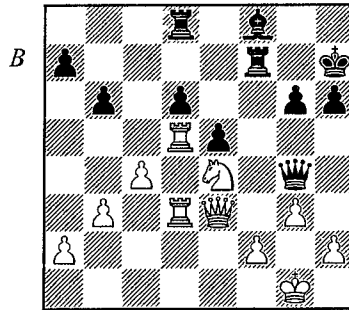
24 ... ♖e7 25 ♗d5 ♖h7 26 ♗xe6 ♖xe6 27 ♖d3 ♖c7 28 ♖cd1 ♖f7

Black's attempt to get some counter-play on the f-file will fail due to White's overall control of the position.

29 ♖e4 ♗f8 30 ♖d5 ♖g4 31 ♖d3

Not 31 ♖xd6 because of 31 ... ♗xd6 32 ♖xd6 ♖xd1+ 33 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+. After the text move, Black

can no longer protect d6 because 31 ... ♖e6 is met by 32 ♖d2 ♖fd7 33 c5 bxc5 34 ♖xc5.



31 ... ♗e7 32 ♖xd6 ♗xd6 33 ♖xd6 ♖df8 34 ♖xe5 ♖xf2 35 ♖d7+ ♖f7 36 ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 37 ♖d8! ♖g7 38 ♖e8 g5 39 ♖h8+ ♖g6 40 ♖d6+ ♖f7 41 ♖xh6 ♖f5 42 ♖d1! ♖c5+ 43 ♖g2 ♖e7 44 ♖f1+ ♖g8 45 ♖f6 ♖e8 46 ♖f5 g4 47 ♖f2 ♖e7 48 ♖d3 ♖g5 49 ♖e2 ♖f8 50 ♖e4 ♖g7 51 ♖d5+ ♖f7 52 ♖c6 1:0

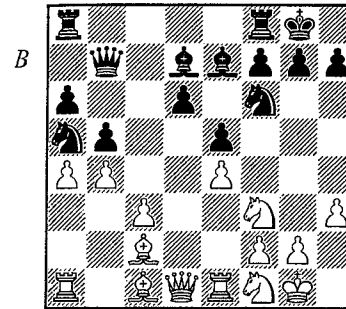
In the next game we see another dark side to the backward pawn, in the way it can inhibit the mobility of a pawn majority. It is one of my own games.

### Shy - Davies Tel-Aviv 1992

1 e4 e5 2 ♖f3 ♖c6 3 ♗b5 a6 4 ♗a4 ♖f6 5 0-0 ♗e7 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♗b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 d4 ♗g4 10 d5 ♖a5 11 ♗c2 c6 12 h3 ♗c8 13 dxc6 ♖c7 14 ♖bd2 ♖xc6 15 a4 ♗d7 16 ♖f1 ♖b7 17 b4?

A serious mistake. White takes on a backward pawn on c3 but, unlike

Black's version on d6, this one can be firmly blockaded. In the subsequent play, we see White's majority of pawns on the queenside while Black eventually develops a mobile pawn mass on the kingside



17... ♖c4 18 a5 ♖fe8 19 ♖g3 ♖ad8 20 ♖h4 g6 21 ♗g5 d5!

Black's backward pawn moves forward, after which I gain a kingside pawn majority. White's majority, on the other hand, is handicapped by the backward pawn on c3 and will not easily yield a passed pawn.

22 ♖f3 dxe4 23 ♖xe4 ♖xe4 24 ♗xe4 ♖c7 25 ♗xe7 ♖xe7 26 ♖ad1 ♗e6 27 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8 28 ♖d1 ♖d7 29 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 30 ♖d3 ♖xd3 31 ♗xd3 ♖d6

I was more reluctant to allow the exchange of White's bishop for my knight as White might later have been able to force through the c3-c4 advance or perhaps bring his knight to c5.

32 g4 ♖g7 33 ♗c2 f5 34 gxf5 gxf5 35 ♖f3 ♖f6 36 ♖d2 ♖g5 37

♗b3 ♗xb3 38 ♖xb3 ♖e4 39 f3 ♖xc3 40 ♖c5 ♖f4!

With a passed White a-pawn about to emerge, Black must get his own passed pawn(s) as quickly as possible.

41 ♖xa6?

The decisive mistake? 41 ♖f2 e4 42 ♖xa6 ♖d1+ 43 ♖e2 exf3+ 44 ♖xd1 ♖g3 45 ♖c5 f2 46 ♖e2 ♖g2 is an elegant win for Black but I have yet to find anything clear after 42 ♖e6+ ♖e5 43 ♖c7 in this line.

41... ♖xf3 42 ♖c7 ♖e2 43 ♖e8

The only route by which White can hope to stop Black's pawns.

43 ... f4 44 ♖f6 f3 45 ♖g4 e4 46 a6 ♖d5

Coming back to stop White's pawn. 46 ... e3 47 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 48 ♖f1 ♖e2 49 a7 ♖g3+ 50 ♖g1 f2+ also wins.

47 a7 ♖c7 48 ♖h2 h5!

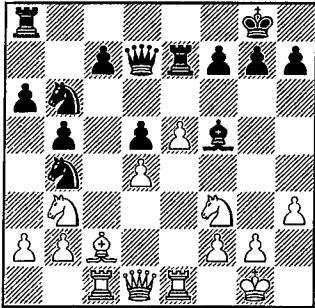
Denying White's knight access to g4.

49 h4 e3 50 ♖f1 ♖d3 51 ♖g3 ♖c2

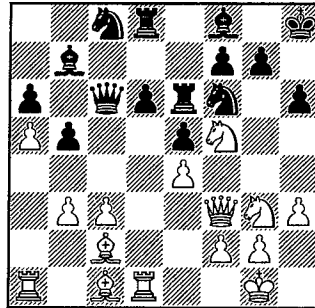
If 51 ... e2? there is 52 ♖f2 ♖d2 53 ♖e4+ ♖d1 54 ♖c3+ etc and 51 ... ♖d2 is met by 52 ♖f1+. So Black's king heads for d1.

52 ♖f5 e2 53 ♖d4+ ♖d1 54 ♖xf3 e1(♖)+ 55 ♖xe1 ♖xe1 56 ♖g2 ♖e2 57 ♖g3 ♖e3 58 ♖g2 ♖d4 59 ♖f3 ♖c4 60 ♖f4 ♖xb4 61 ♖g5 ♖c5 62 ♖xh5 b4 63 ♖g6 b3 64 a8(♖) ♖xa8 65 h5 b2 66 h6 b1(♖)+ 67 ♖g7 ♖b2+ 68 ♖g8 ♖b3+ 69 ♖g7 ♖g3+ 0:1

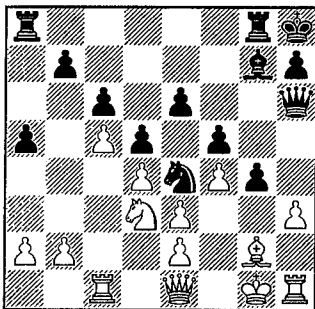
KM11/1: 1) White to play



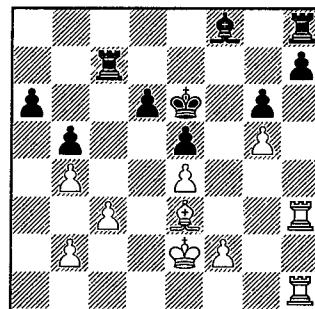
KM11/1: 2) White to play



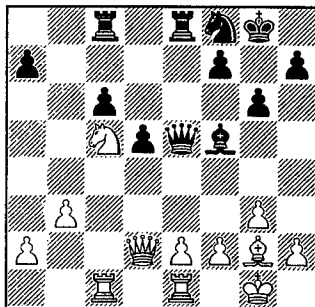
KM11/1: 3) Black to play



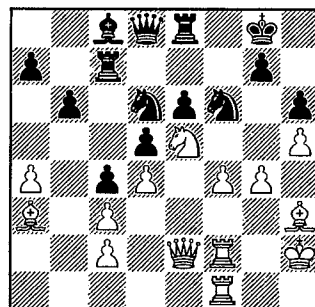
KM11/1: 4) White to play



A11/1: a) White to play



A11/1: b) White to play



### Month 11/Week 2: Beautifully Backward

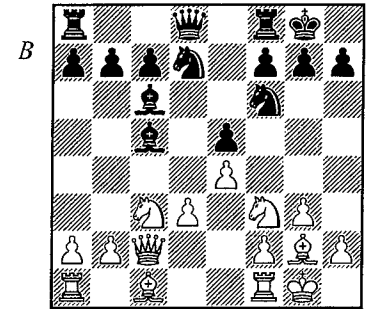
The backward pawn often has compensating advantages. The dynamic appreciation of such weaknesses really appeared after World War II when the 'Soviet School' started playing positions which the classicists would have condemned as hopeless.

I think that a good way of looking at a weakness is to see if it can be successfully exploited. In the case of a backward pawn we must see if the square in front of it can be effectively occupied by an opposing piece.

#### Smyslov - Suetin USSR Ch., Moscow 1952

1 e4 e6 2 g3 d5 3 ♘g2 ♖f6 4 ♜f3 dxc4 5 ♖a4+ ♙d7 6 ♗xc4 ♙c6 7 ♗c2 ♜bd7 8 0-0 e5 9 ♜c3 ♙c5 10 d3 0-0 11 e4!

An excellent move by Smyslov. White takes on a backward d-pawn in a position in which Black's pieces are not appropriately placed to exploit it. Meanwhile it soon becomes apparent that White's pawn on e4 impedes Black's queen's bishop and Black's knights will find it virtually impossible to route themselves towards the hole on d4. White subsequently operates on the c-file and is able to gain space on the kingside with f2-f4.



11 ... ♖e8 12 ♙e3!

Securing d4 still further. If Black captures on e3 White would gain a half-open f-file and a strong central pawn mass.

12 ... ♗e7 13 ♖ac1 ♖ad8

Both 13 ... ♜g4 and 13 ... ♜f8 are bad because of 14 ♜d5.

14 ♜h4 ♗f8 15 ♜f5 ♙b6 16 a3

Preparing to meet 16 ... ♜c5 with 17 b4! ♜xd3 18 ♖cd1, trapping the knight. Black could obtain three pawns for this piece with 18 ... ♜xb4 19 axb4 ♗xb4 but this would not be enough. White would use his extra piece to attack Black's king which would carry far more weight than Black's queenside pawn mass.

16 ... ♜g4 17 ♙xb6 ♜xb6

17 ... axb6 looks like a better move to me.

18 h3 ♜f6 19 f4!

Gaining a lot of space on the kingside which creates the preconditions for an attack.

19 ... exf4

19 ... g6 20 fxg6 ♖xe5 21 d4 ♖ee8 22 d5! would witness a

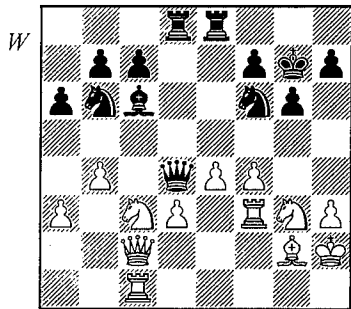
quick acceleration of White's initiative.

20 gxf4 g6 21 ♖g3 ♜c5+?! 22 ♖h2 ♖g7 23 b4!

Gaining time to post his queen on the a1-h8 diagonal.

23 ... ♜d4 24 ♜f3 a6

White was threatening 25 b5 (25 ... ♗d7 26 ♖ce2) but now Black loses by force. Probably it was Black's mistaken queen manoeuvre with 21 ... ♜c5+ followed by 23 ... ♜d4 which hastened his demise, the queen is a most unsuitable and insecure blockader of the d-pawn.



25 ♖ce2 ♜d7 26 ♜b2

Threatening both 27 e5 followed by 28 e6+ and 27 ♖f5+! gxf5 28 ♜g3+.

26 ... ♜e7 27 ♖d4!

Threatening ♖f5+ again and also ♖xc6. As 27 ... ♗d7 is met by 28 ♜xc7, Black loses a pawn.

27 ... ♖g8 28 ♖xc6 bxc6 29 ♜xc6 ♖d6 30 ♜c2 ♖d7 31 ♗f1 h5 32 ♜g2 ♖h7 33 e5 ♖fd5 34 ♖e4 ♜h4 35 ♜f2 ♜xf2 36 ♜gxf2 ♖g7

37 d4 ♜a8 38 ♖c5 ♜dd8 39 f5! g5 40 f6+ ♖h6 41 ♖xa6 c6 42 ♜c2 ♜ac8 43 ♖c5 ♖f4 44 ♖d2 ♖d7 45 ♖e4 ♖f8 46 h4 ♖8e6 47 ♖xg5! ♖xg5 48 ♜xf4 ♖e6 49 ♜e4 ♜a8 50 ♖d3 ♜a7 51 ♗h3 ♖c7 52 e6 fxe6 53 ♗xe6 ♖b5 54 f7 ♜f8 55 ♜g3 ♜xa3 56 ♜g8 ♜aa8 57 ♗c4 ♖c7 58 ♜e7 ♖d5 59 ♜e6+ 1:0

In the next game we see a far more dynamic fight for the square in front of the backward pawn.

### Tartakower - Prins Zandvoort 1936

1 f4 e5 2 fxe5 d6 3 exd6 ♗xd6 4 ♖f3 ♖f6 5 g3 h5 6 d4

White gives himself a backward e-pawn in a very unusual and sharp position. The forthcoming struggle revolves around e4.

6 ... h4 7 gxf4

If 7 ♖xh4 then 7 ... ♖e4 would be a very unpleasant reply.

7 ... ♖e4 8 ♜d3 ♗f5

If 8 ... ♜xh4 then 9 ♗g5!

9 ♗h3!

The first in a series of strong moves which win the battle for e4. Both 9 ♖c3 ♜xh4 10 ♗g5 ♖xg5 11 ♜xf5 ♖xf3+ 12 ♜xf3 ♜xh2 13 ♜e3+ ♖f8! and 9 ♜b5+ ♗d7 leave White in trouble.

9 ... ♗g6

9 ... ♗xh3 10 ♜xe4+ ♖f8 11 ♜g1 would leave White with two extra pawns and Black's king in danger.

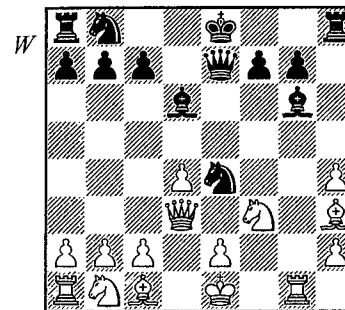
10 ♜g1!

Envisaging the ensuing exchange sacrifice. Without this possibility, White's position would be difficult.

10 ... ♜e7

After 10 ... ♜f6 there is 11 ♜b5+ and 10 ... ♜xh4 is met by 11 ♜xg6 fxf6 12 ♗g5 ♖xg5 13 ♖xh4 ♖xh3 14 ♜xh3 etc.

White now wins the battle for the crucial e4 square by sacrificial means.



11 ♜xg6! fxf6 12 ♖c3

After 12 ♖bd2 Black could play 12 ... ♜xh4.

If Black now plays 12 ... ♗b4 there follows 13 ♗g5 ♖xg5 14 ♖xg5 ♜xh4 15 ♜xg6+ ♖f8 16 0-0-0 etc.

12 ... ♖xc3 13 bxc3

13 ♜xg6+ was also good but Tartakower is playing for the attack.

13 ... 0-0! 14 ♜xg6 ♜e8

After 14 ... ♜xf3 Tartakower intended the brilliant 15 ♗e6+ ♜f7!

16 ♗g5! ♜e8! 17 h5! (And not 17 0-0-0 ♖f8! or 17 ♜b1 ♖d7!) 17 ... ♖f8 18 ♜h7! ♜f1+ 19 ♖d2! ♗f4+ 20 ♖d3 ♜b5+ 21 c4 ♜xg5 22 ♜g8+ ♖e7 23 ♜f7+ ♖d6 24 c5+ ♖c6 25 ♜e8+ ♖d7 26 ♜xd7#

15 ♜d3 ♖d7

Or 15 ... ♜e4 16 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 17 ♗c8! results in a decisive gain of material.

16 ♖g5 ♖f6

Or 16 ... ♖f8 17 ♗e6+ ♖xe6 18 ♜h7+ ♖f8 19 ♜h8#

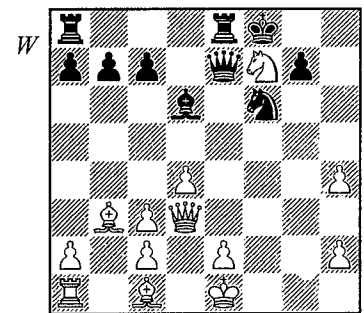
17 ♗e6+ ♖h8

If 17 ... ♖f8 then 18 ♜f5! or if 17 ... ♜xe6 there is 18 ♖xe6 ♜xe6 19 ♗g5 ♜ae8 20 ♗xf6 gxf6 21 0-0-0 ♗a3+ 22 ♖d2! etc.

18 ♖f7+ ♖g8 19 ♗b3

Threatening 20 ♖e5+ ♖h8 (20 ... ♖f8 21 ♖g6#) 21 ♖g6+ ♖h7 21 ♖f8+ ♖h8 23 ♜h7+ ♖xh7 24 ♖g6#

19 ... ♖f8

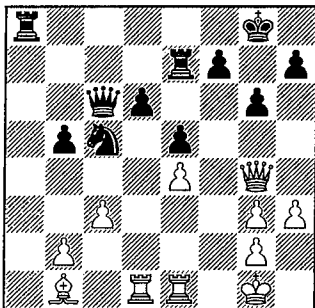


20 ♖h8! 1:0

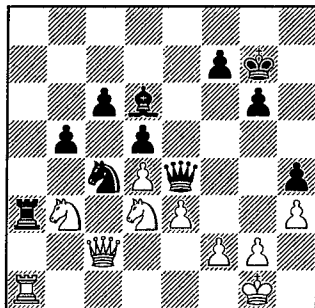
There is little that can be done about the threat of 21 ♖g6#.



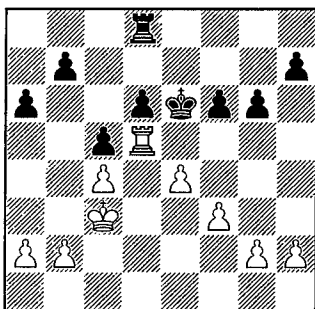
KM11/2: 1) Black to play



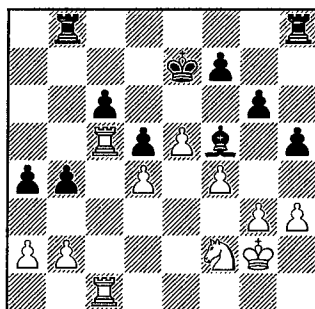
KM11/2: 2) Black to play



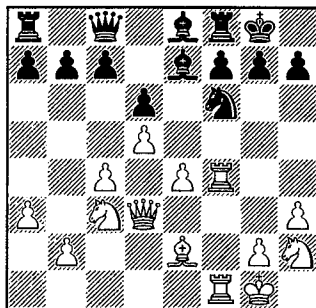
KM11/2: 3) Black to play



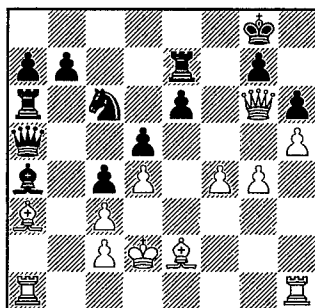
KM11/2: 4) Black to play



A11/2: a) White to play



A11/2: b) Black to play



### Month 11/Week 3: Backward Sicilians

One of the structures most commonly associated with backward pawns arises from the Sicilian with ...e5. In fact both this and the Stonewall are important enough to merit a section each.

It was Boleslavsky who first showed that such structures were playable for Black. The most crucial factor in these Sicilian positions is whether or not White can establish a knight on d5. In the first of this week's games he achieves this, in the second he does not.

### Smyslov - Rudakovsky Moscow 1945

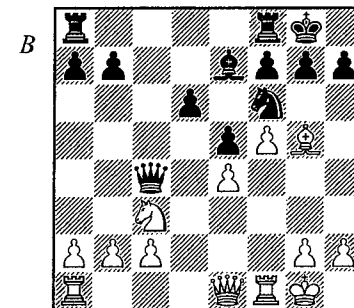
1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 d6 6 ♙e2 ♙e7 7 0-0 0-0 8 ♙e3 ♘c6 9 f4 ♚c7 10 ♚e1 ♘xd4 11 ♙xd4 e5 12 ♙e3 ♙e6?!

A modern player would play 12 ... exf4 with a perfectly satisfactory position. At the time that this game was played, such structures were presumed to be poor for Black, so Smyslov recommended 12 ... ♙d7 with the idea of 13 ... ♙c6.

13 f5 ♙c4

Continuing with a rather poor plan. Black should have tried for counter-play with 13 ... ♙d7 14 g4 ♙c6 15 ♙f3 d5 16 exd5 e4 17 ♘xe4 ♘xd5 though White would maintain an edge after 18 ♙d4.

14 ♙xc4 ♚xc4 15 ♙g5!

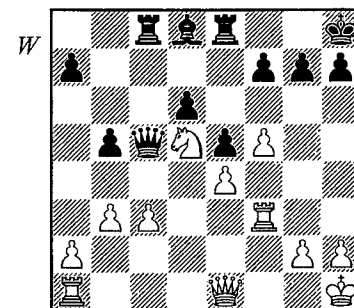


A very instructive move. White sets about exchanging his bishop for the knight on f6, which Black needs to defend the d5-square. Once White's knight becomes established on d5, Black will face great difficulties, and in this game White transforms his advantage into a direct attack on Black's king.

15 ... ♚fe8 16 ♙xf6! ♙xf6 17 ♘d5 ♙d8

17 ... ♚xc2 18 ♚f2 ♚c5 19 ♚c1 followed by ♘c7 would win the exchange for no compensation.

18 c3 b5 19 b3 ♚c5+ 20 ♙h1 ♚c8 21 ♚f3 ♙h8



Black could, and probably should, have tried 21 ... f6 at this point to prevent White from breaking up his kingside. In view of White's massive positional advantage, though, it is doubtful that he could have saved the game in the long run.

**22 f6!**

A typical and very strong thrust which breaks up the pawn cover around Black's king. After 22 ... g6 White can play 23 ♖d2 intending 24 ♖h6 so Black has very little option but to capture on f6.

**22 ... gxf6**

After 22 ... ♗xf6 23 ♗xf6 gxf6 24 ♖h4 ♗g8 25 ♖xf6+ ♗g7 26 ♗g3 ♗g8 27 ♗d1 there would be a transposition back into the game.

**23 ♖h4 ♗g8 24 ♗xf6 ♗g7 25 ♗g3**

Threatening mate with both 26 ♖xh7+ ♗xh7 27 ♗g8# and 26 ♗xg7 ♗xg7 27 ♖xh7+ ♗xf6 28 ♗f1+ ♗e7 29 ♖xf7#. So Black has little choice but to capture the knight.

**25 ... ♗xf6 26 ♖xf6 ♗g8 27 ♗d1**

Finally turning his attention to Black's vulnerable d-pawn. With Black's position in tatters there is nothing to be done to help this pawn.

**27 ... d5 28 ♗xg7! 1:0**

28 ... ♗xg7 29 ♗xd5 threatens both Black's queen and mate with ♗d8+.

### Unzicker - Bronstein Goteborg Interzonal 1955

**1 e4 c5 2 ♗f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♗xd4 ♗f6 5 ♗c3 a6 6 ♗e2 e5 7 ♗b3**

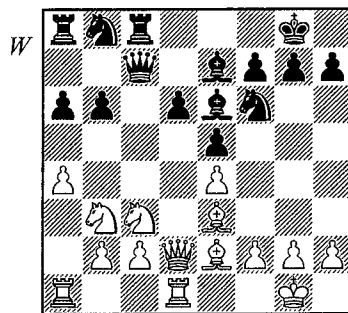
After 7 ♗f3 Black would play the instructive move, 7 ... h6!. This prevents 8 ♗g5 which would exchange one of the defenders of d5.

**7 ... ♗e7**

Black no longer needs to prevent 8 ♗g5 as this could be met by 8 ... ♗xe4! 9 ♗xe7 ♗xc3! etc.

**8 0-0 0-0 9 ♗e3 ♖c7 10 a4 b6 11 ♖d2 ♗e6 12 ♗fd1 ♗c8**

By putting pressure on the c-file, Black aims to prevent ♗d5. Another possibility was 12 ... ♗bd7.



**13 ♖e1?**

The start of a dubious plan, after which Black gets the better of it. White should try to route his knight on b3 towards the d5 square starting with 13 ♗c1! after which White wants to play ♗a2-b4.

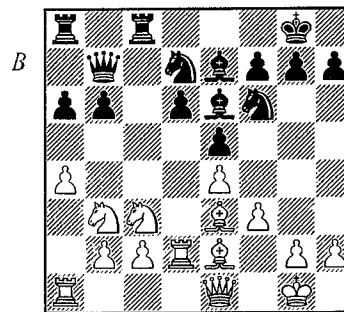
For this reason it might have been better for Black to play 12 ...

♗bd7 so that 13 f3 can be met by 13 ... ♗fd8 and 14 ♗c1 by 14 ... ♗c5 intending 15 ... d5. This would virtually force White to play 15 ♗d5 after which 15 ... ♗xd5 16 exd5 ♗d7 would leave Black with nothing to worry about, because d5 cannot be occupied by a White piece.

**13 ... ♖b7! 14 ♗d2 ♗bd7**

And not 14 ... ♗xe4? 15 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 16 ♗f3 or 14 ... d5? 15 exd5 ♗xd5 16 ♗f3. Unfortunately for White he can no longer prevent the liberating move 15 ... d5, as if 15 ♗ad1 there is 15 ... ♗xc3! 16 bxc3 ♗xe4 17 ♗f3 d5 18 ♗xe4 dxe4 followed by ... f5 with tremendous compensation for the exchange.

**15 f3**



**15 ... d5!**

The backward pawn finally moves forward with very unpleasant consequences for White. In the resulting position Black maintains his extra central pawn on e5 but does not need to worry about the backward d-pawn any more.

**16 exd5 ♗xd5 17 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 18 ♗ad1 ♗f6**

Already threatening to win a pawn with 18 ... ♗xc2! 19 ♗xc2 ♗xb3.

**19 ♗e1 e4 20 ♖f2 ♗c5 21 ♗xc5 bxc5**

In addition to the pressure against White's kingside, Black now has an open b-file on which to apply pressure.

**22 ♖e3 ♗e8 23 f4 c4**

Further cramping White's position and introducing the possibility of 24 ... c3!? 25 bxc3 (25 ♖xc3 e3) 25 ... ♗ac8. White makes a bid for freedom but this only creates more weaknesses.

**24 b3 ♗ac8 25 h3 ♗e6 26 ♗h2 ♖c7**

Putting pressure on the f4-pawn, which in turn is pinned to White's king. Facing severe pressure in any case, White starts to cave in.

**27 ♗d6 a5 28 bxc4 ♗xc4 29 ♗b3 ♗xc2 30 ♖xe2 e3!**

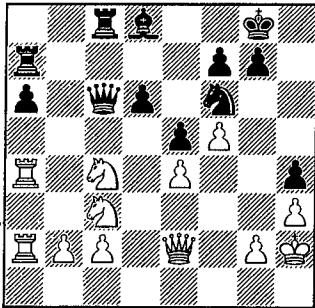
Very unpleasant indeed. The immediate threat is 31 ... ♗e4, winning the f4 pawn. Meanwhile the e-pawn is becoming a tower of strength.

**31 ♗d4 ♗e4 32 ♖f3 ♗g5!**

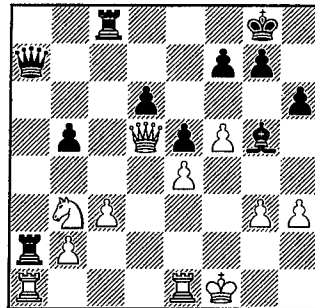
By bringing the knight to e6, Black intensifies the pressure on the f4 pawn. Black has a decisive advantage.

**33 ♖g4 ♗e6 34 ♗e4 h5! 35 ♖f3 ♗g5 36 ♗xe8+ ♗xe8 37 ♖g3 ♖xc2 38 ♗d5 e2 39 ♗xg5 e1(♖) 40 ♗xg7+ ♗h8 41 ♖g5 ♖xg2+! 42 ♖xg2 ♗e2 0:1**

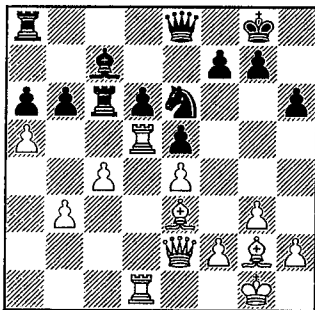
KM11/3: 1) White to play



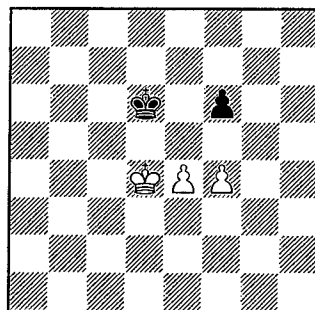
KM11/3: 2) Black to play



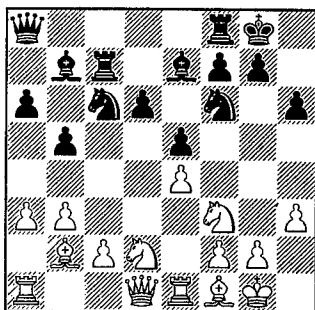
KM11/3:3) White to play



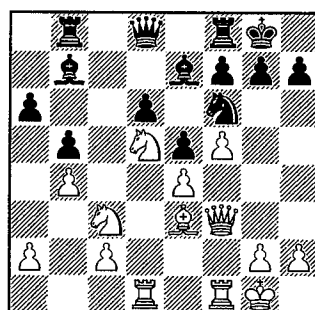
KM11/3: 4) White to play



A11/3: a) Black to play



A11/3: b) Black to play



**Month 11/Week 4:  
The Stonewall Formation**

As with the ...e5 Sicilian, this is a very important type of backward pawn structure. The traditional Stonewall set-up features Black putting pawns on d5, e6 and f5 or White setting them up on d4, e3 and f4. There is also a sister formation pioneered by Botvinnik in which he put pawns on c5, d6 and e5 as Black and with White placed them on c4, d3 and e4.

Once again the main problem with this backward pawn is the square in front of it. Can this be occupied by an opposing piece or not? Then comes the problem of actually breaching this structure which can be very difficult even when you have occupied the weak square.

The traditional methods of attack against the Stonewall involve queenside pawn advances to open files in this sector. This week however, we will be looking at a more direct means of trying to exploit the backward pawn - with a direct frontal attack.

In the first game the great Yugoslav Grandmaster Svetzovar Gligoric takes the Stonewall Dutch apart in classic style:

**Gligoric - Hug  
Skopje Olympiad 1972**

1 d4 e6 2 c4 f5 3 ♖f3 ♘f6 4 g3 ♗c7 5 ♗g2 0-0 6 0-0 c6 7 b3 a5

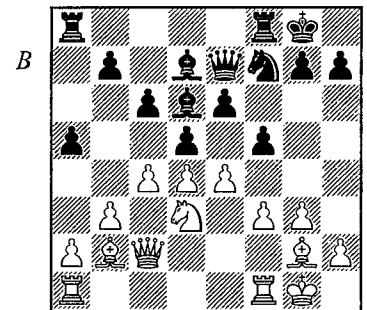
A clever move order by Black who avoids ...d7-d5 until White can no longer exchange dark-squared bishops with ♗a3

8 ♘c3 d5 9 ♗b2 ♗d7 10 e3 ♗e8 11 ♘e2!

A typical and noteworthy manoeuvre by White. His knight is not well placed on c3 so he starts to bring it in contact with the e5 square.

11 ... ♗d6 12 ♘f4 ♖e7 13 ♖c2 ♘e4 14 ♘e5 ♘d7 15 f3 ♘g5 16 ♘fd3 ♘f7 17 ♘xd7 ♗xd7 18 e4!

Over the last few moves Black has succeeded in protecting the 'hole' on e5 but has not managed to adequately protect himself against this direct breakthrough in the centre. He now makes matters much worse by attempting to shoot his way out of trouble, rather than trying to hang tough with 18 ... fxe4 19 fxe4 ♘g5.



18 ... e5? 19 c5 ♗c7 20 exd5 cxd5 21 dxe5 ♘g5

Presumably Black could not have overlooked the fact that 21 ... ♘xe5 loses a piece after 22 ♖fe1.

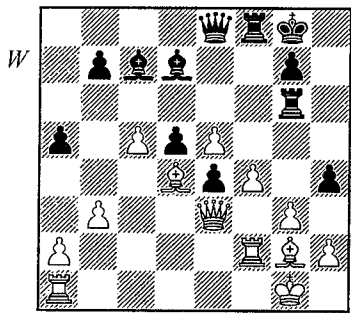
The text move aims to bring the knight to e6 where it would be well-placed, so Gligoric promptly prevents this idea.

22 f4 ♖e4 23 ♖d4 ♖a6 24 ♖f2 ♖g6 25 ♖xe4 fxe4 26 ♖e2 ♖e8

If 26 ... ♖g4 there is 27 ♖b5.

27 ♖e3 h5 28 ♖f2 h4

This looks like an attacking move, but it is White who ends up occupying the open g-file.



29 gxf4! ♖d8 30 h5 ♖h6 31 ♖h3 ♖xh5 32 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 33 ♖g2 ♖f5 34 ♖g3 ♖f7 35 ♖g4

Forcing a winning endgame. Although White's bishop on d4 looks "bad", the pawns which presently shut it out of the game will soon move forward. Black, meanwhile, has a lot of weak pawns, especially the one on d5.

35 ... ♖h7 36 ♖d1 g6 37 ♖xf5 ♖hx5 38 ♖e3 ♖e7 39 ♖g3

And not the immediate 39 ... ♖xd5 because of 39 ... g5 (40 fxe5?? ♖f1#).

39 ... d4 40 ♖xd4 ♖xc5 41 ♖xe4 ♖xf4

An ingenious move, which nevertheless leads to a lost endgame.

42 ♖xf4 ♖xe3+ 43 ♖xe3 ♖xf4 44 e6 ♖f8 45 e7 ♖e8 46 ♖f2 ♖g7 47 ♖e2 ♖f7 48 ♖d3 a4

If 48 ... ♖xe7 there follows 49 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 50 ♖c4 which wins Black's a-pawn.

49 bxa4 ♖xe7 1:0

Black no doubt realized that after 50 ♖xe7+ ♖xe7, White plays 51 ♖c4 ♖d6 52 ♖b5 ♖c7 53 h4 ♖c8 54 ♖b6 ♖b8 55 a5 ♖a8 56 a6 bxa6 57 ♖xa6, eats Black's g-pawn and then promotes the pawn on h4.

In the next game White adopts all three of the most typical methods of playing against the Stonewall Dutch. First he routes his knights around so that they come into contact with the weakness on e5, he then advances his queenside pawns, and finally he breaks through in the centre.

### Geller - Szabo Budapest 1952

1 d4 e6 2 ♖f3 f5 3 g3 ♖f6 4 ♖g2 ♖e7 5 0-0 0-0 6 c4 d5 7 ♖bd2 c6 8 ♖e5 ♖bd7 9 ♖d3

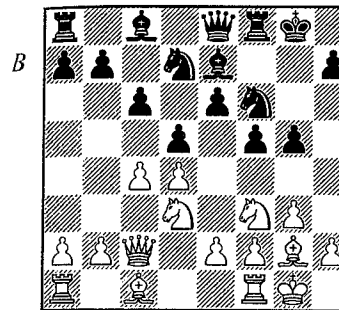
The plan of posting the knights on the d3 and f3 squares makes it very difficult for Black to engineer a kingside attack.

Over the next few moves, Geller creates more weaknesses in Black's camp by advancing his queenside pawns.

9 ... ♖e8 10 ♖c2 g5

After 10 ... ♖d6 White could play 11 ♖f3 ♖e4 12 ♖f4 ♖xf4 13 gxf4 leaving him in command.

11 ♖f3



11 ... ♖e4

According to Botvinnik, 11 ... h6 was stronger.

12 ♖b1 ♖f6 13 b4 b5 14 c5 a5 15 a3

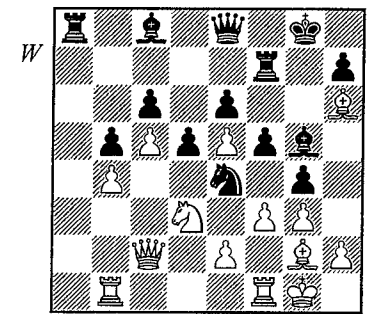
A solid move, after which White will be unable to open the queenside but has the chance of promising central action with a later f2-f3 and e2-e4. Black has good counterplay after either 15 bxa5 ♖xa5 16 ♖fe5 ♖xe5 17 dxe5 ♖e7 18 f3 ♖exc5 19 ♖d2 ♖xd3 20 ♖xa5 ♖3xe5 or 15 a4 ♖a6, activating the previously "bad bishop".

15 ... axb4 16 axb4 g4 17 ♖fe5 ♖xe5

After 17 ... ♖b7 there would follow 18 ♖h6 ♖g7 19 ♖xg7 ♖xg7 20 f3!

18 dxe5 ♖d8 19 ♖h6 ♖f7 20 f3! 20 ... ♖g5 (D)

A rather desperate course of action, but Black is in serious trouble. 20 ... gxf3 21 exf3 ♖g5 22 h4 wins the knight.



21 ♖xg5 ♖xg5 22 fxe4 ♖fa7

As 22 ... fxe4 23 ♖f2 h5? is met by 24 ♖g6+ Black tries to activate at all costs.

23 gxf5 exf5 24 ♖d2 ♖f7

24 ... ♖e4 25 ♖h6 is also deeply unpleasant.

25 ♖f4 ♖a2

Once again Szabo plays the most active move. 25 ... ♖e7 26 ♖a1 ♖xa1 27 ♖xa1 ♖xe5 28 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 29 ♖f3 would be followed by a decisive invasion on the a-file.

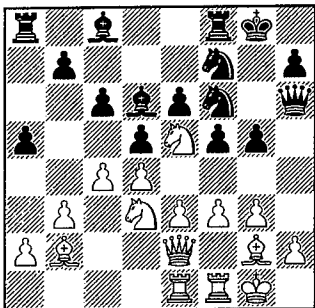
26 ♖e3 ♖e7 27 ♖h3 ♖g5 28 ♖xf5 d4

In a lost position, Black feels he might as well throw in the kitchen sink. Geller's careful play neutralises the danger and finally it is White who plays some sparkling chess.

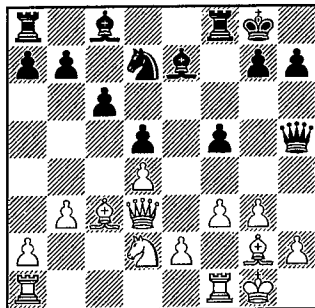
29 ♖xd4 ♖xe2 30 ♖xc8 ♖aa2 31 ♖b2 ♖xe5 32 ♖bd1 ♖e2 33 ♖d2 ♖xd2 34 ♖xd2 ♖e4 35 ♖f4! ♖xb2 36 ♖e6+! 1:0

An elegant finale. After 36 ... ♖xe6 White delivers mate with 37 ♖f8# and 36 ... ♖g7 is met by 37 ♖e5+ ♖h6 38 ♖xe4 or if 37 ... ♖f6 then 38 ♖g5+.

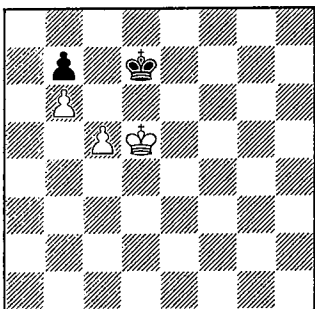
KM11/4: 1) White to play



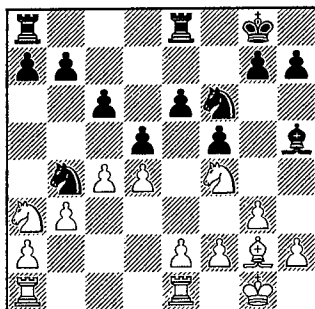
KM11/4: 2) Black to play



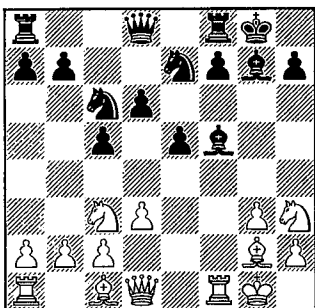
KM11/4: 3) White to play



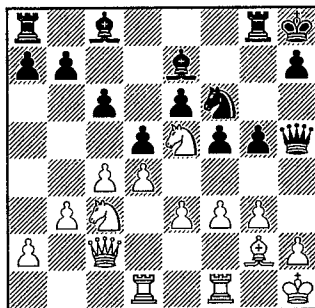
KM11/4: 4) Black to play



A11/4: a) White to play



A11/4: b) Black to play



## 12 Semi-Backward Pawns

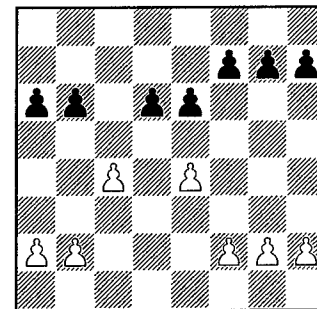
Last month we examined positions in which a backward pawn had a great influence on the course of the game. I have used the term *semi-backward pawn* to describe a pawn which is not fully backward, yet is unable to safely advance because of one or two opposing pawns restricting its movement.

Such semi-backward pawns can also become targets if, as in the positions we will be looking at, they sit on an open file. In any case, they tend to be very difficult to get at, and there are compensating features.

Players started to experiment with this type of position in the post-war era by taking on a semi-backward d-pawn in the King's Indian, a set-up we will review in week one. In week two we will be looking at another type of position that comes into this category, the Scheveningen and Paulsen Sicilian formations.

In weeks three and four we will be examining the popular and important *hedgheg* formation which became high fashion in the late 1970s and early 1980s when it was adopted by players like Ulf Andersson, Ljubomir Ljubojevic, Lev Psakhis, Mihai Suba and Istvan Csom. The following diagram

shows the tough and dynamic formation Black aims for, which has attracted many modern Grandmasters.



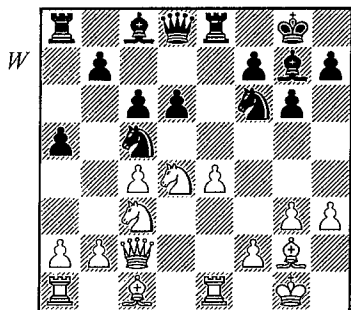
### Month 12/Week 1: The KID d-pawn

Shortly after the second World War, the so-called *Soviet School of Chess* emerged. Priding themselves on their dynamic and creative style of play, the young Russians challenged a number of established views on weak pawns. The following variation of the King's Indian Defence shocked and surprised many traditionalists.

### Reshevsky - Bronstein Zurich 1953

1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♙g7 4 ♙g2 0-0 5 ♗c3 d6 6 ♗f3 ♘bd7 7

0-0 e5 8 e4 ♖e8 9 h3 exd4 10 ♘xd4  
♙c5 11 ♖e1 a5 12 ♚c2 c6



This last move creates what seems like a weakness on d6, yet appearances are deceptive. This is what Bronstein wrote about this type of position:

“Here it seems high time to reveal to the reader the secret of Black’s d-pawn in the King’s Indian. Although the pawn stands on an open file and is subject to constant pressure it proves to be a tough nut to crack. This is because it is not easy to get at the pawn. It would appear that there was nothing simpler than to move the knight away from d4 so as to press on the pawn, but the point is that the knight is badly needed at d4 where it has the task of observing the squares b5, c6, e6 and f5, as well as neutralising Black’s fianchettoed bishop. The knight can really only move away when White has safeguarded himself from such attacks as ... a3, ... ♗e6 and ... f5 by Black. Meanwhile, however, Black too has fully organised his position.

Hence the weakness of the Black d-pawn is illusory.”

In this game Bronstein puts his ideas into practice. By the way, 12 ... ♗fxe4?! is bad because of 13 ♗xe4 ♗xd4 14 ♗g5 ♚d7 15 ♗f6+ ♗xf6 16 ♗xf6 ♖e6 17 ♚c3.

13 ♗e3 ♗fd7 14 ♖ad1 a4 15 ♗de2?

Reshevsky takes an overly simplistic approach to the position, White’s knight is really needed on d4 and he should give preference to something like 15 f4!?

15 ... ♚a5! 16 ♗f1

The point of Black’s play is that he meets 16 ♗xd6 with 16 ... ♗e5! 17 b3 axb3 18 axb3 ♗xh3! 19 ♗xh3 ♗f3+ 20 ♗f1 ♗xe1 21 ♗xe1 ♗xe4! etc.

16 ... ♗e5 17 ♗d4 a3! 18 f4 ♗ed7 19 b3 ♗a6 20 ♗f2 ♗dc5 21 ♖c3 ♗b4 22 ♚c2 ♗d7 23 e5 dx e5 24 fx e5 ♖ad8 25 g4 ♗e6 26 ♗h4 ♗xd4 27 ♖xd4 ♚c5! 28 ♖de4 ♗h6 29 ♗h1 ♗e6 g5?

So far White has defended cleverly but at this point his nerve goes. He should continue to offer the exchange with 30 ♗f6!.

30 ... ♗g7 31 ♖f4 ♗f5 32 ♗e4 ♗xe4+ 33 ♖fxe4 ♗a6 34 e6 fx e6 35 ♖xe6 ♖f8 36 ♖e7 ♗d4 37 ♖3e6 ♖f5 38 ♖e8! ♗c5 39 ♖xd8 ♗xe6 40 ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 41 ♗g3 ♖xg5 42 ♚xe6 ♖xg3 43 ♚c8+ ♗e7! 44 ♖g4

After 44 ♖xb7+? ♗d8 45 ♚a8+ ♗c7 the checks run out.

44 ... ♚c3 45 ♗g2 ♖b2+ 46 ♚e2+ ♗d6 47 ♗f3 ♗c5 48 ♗e4

♗d4+ 49 ♗f3 ♚f6+ 50 ♗g2 ♗c7 51 ♖f3 ♚b2+ 52 ♚e2 ♗d4 53 ♗f3 h5 54 ♗g2 g5 55 ♗g3 ♖f4+ 56 ♗g2 g4! 57 hxg4 hxg4 58 ♗h1 ♗b6 59 ♗g2 ♗c7 60 ♗h1 ♗d6 61 ♗g1 ♗b6 62 ♖g2 ♗c5+ 63 ♗h1 ♖h6+ 64 ♖h2 ♚e3 65 b4 ♗d4 0:1

White is in *zugzwang*, 66 c5+ ♗a7 67 ♖g2 being met by 67...g3.

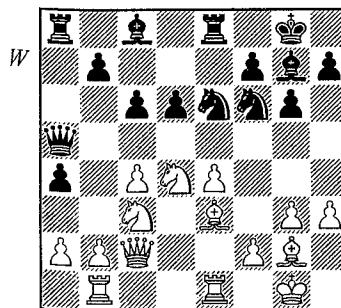
So is Black’s d-pawn strong?

Personally speaking I like to play against these pawns and know that a great many other GMs also like to do so. The following example should redress the balance.

### Portisch - Szabo Budapest 1961

1 d4 ♗f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ♗g7 4 ♗g2 0-0 5 ♗f3 d6 6 ♗c3 ♗bd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4 c6 9 ♖e1 ♖e8 10 h3 a5 11 ♗e3 exd4 12 ♗xd4 ♗c5 13 ♚c2 a4 14 ♖ad1 ♚a5?! 15 ♗f4! ♗f8 16 ♖b1 ♗e6 17 ♗e3 ♗g7?!

Black should have swapped knights on d4 in order to ease his cramped position with exchanges. Now things become very unpleasant.



18 ♗de2! ♚b4 19 b3 axb3 20 axb3 ♗d7 21 ♖ed1 ♗dc5 22 ♗d2!

And not 22 ♖xd6 because of 22 ... ♖b3 when the b-pawn falls and leaves White’s c-pawn weak into the bargain. The text move may seem rather modest but it starts the process of repelling Black’s pieces.

22 ... ♚b6 23 b4 ♗d7 24 ♗e3 ♖c7

After 24 ... ♚a6 25 b5 ♚a3 26 ♖b3, White would win the pawn on d6.

25 ♖d2! ♗e5 26 ♚b3 f5 27 ♖bd1 ♗f8 28 exf5 gxf5 29 f4! ♗g6 30 ♗f2 ♖f7 31 ♗a4!

With this move a new phase begins, that of exploiting White’s positional advantage.

31 ... ♗c7 32 ♗b6 ♗e6 33 ♗d4!

And not 33 ♗xa8? ♗xc4 after which Black gets counter-play due to his control of the b5- and d5-squares.

33 ... ♖ad8 34 ♚c2 ♗g7 35 ♗xe6 ♖xe6 36 b5!

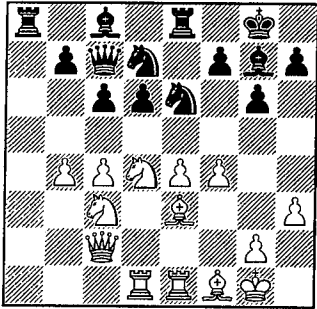
Levering open Black’s queenside. If Black answers with 36 ... cxb5 then 37 ♗d5! ♗e8 38 cxb5 wins control of the d5 square.

36 ... ♗e7 37 ♗a4! cxb5 38 ♗c5! ♗xc4 39 ♗xb7! ♖b8 40 ♗xd6 ♖f6 41 ♖xc4 ♖c3 42 ♖xc3 ♗xc3 43 ♖c2 ♗a5

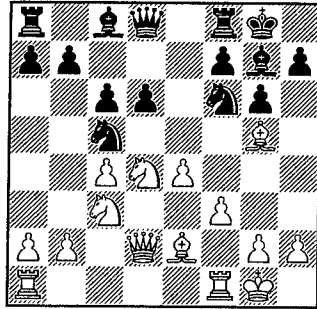
After 43 ... ♖b3 there is 44 ♗f1 intending ♗c4 and 43 ... ♗b4 is met by 44 ♗xf5 ♗xf5 45 ♖xc7.

44 ♗b7 1:0

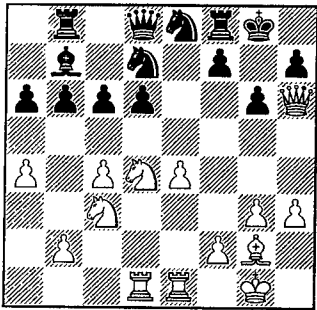
KM12/1: 1) White to play



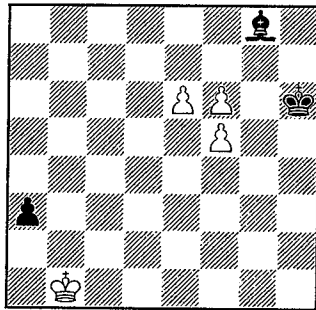
KM12/1: 2) Black to play



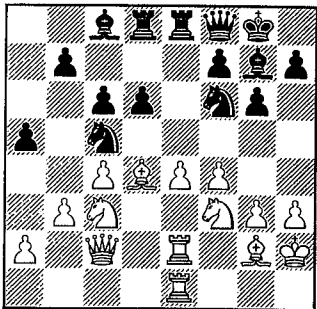
KM12/1: 3) White to play



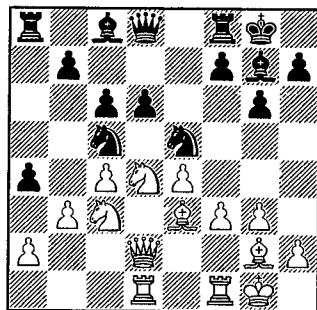
KM12/1: 4) White to play



A12/1: a) White to play



A12/1: b) White to play



### Month 12/Week 2: Sicilian Structures

The Sicilian Defence is of course a very complicated opening, with many positional motifs coming into play. This week we will examine the issue of Black's semi-backward pawn in the Scheveningen and Paulsen structures. Can it be marked out as a weakness? In the following game it was.

#### Short - Kasparov London World Ch. (16) 1993

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♖c4 e6

Setting up a Scheveningen type pawn structure. The Paulsen is characterised by Black's pawns being on e6 and d7.

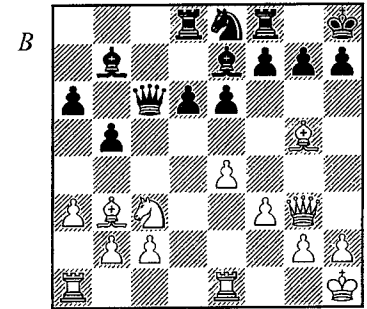
7 ♖b3 b5 8 0-0 ♙e7 9 ♚f3 ♚c7 10 ♚g3 ♘c6 11 ♘xc6 ♚xc6 12 ♙e1 ♖b7 13 a3 ♜d8! 14 f3

Over the last three moves it was very dangerous for White to capture the g7 pawn. 12 ♚xg7 runs into 12 ... ♜g8 13 ♚h6 ♘xe4, 13 ♚xg7 would be met by 13 ... ♜g8 14 ♚h6 0-0-0 and 14 ♚xg7? is answered by 14 ... ♜g8 15 ♚h6 d5 16 exd5 ♘xd5 17 ♙xd5 ♜xd5+.

14 ... 0-0 15 ♙h6 ♘e8 16 ♙h1  
A new move at the time. An earlier game, Shytrenkov - Magerramov, Smolensk 1991 went 16 ♘e2 ♚c5+ 17 ♙h1 ♙f6 18 c3 ♙e5 19 f4 ♙f6 20 ♘d4 ♙h8 21 ♙g5 h6! with a good game for Black.

### 16 ... ♙h8 17 ♙g5!

An important moment from a strategic point of view, and the point of Short's play. By exchanging the dark-square bishops White removes the most important defender of the semi-backward pawn on d6 and hopes to tie Black's forces to its defence.



17 ... ♙g5 18 ♚xg5 ♘f6 19 ♜ad1 ♜d7 20 ♜d3 ♜fd8 21 ♜ed1 ♚c5! 22 ♚e3

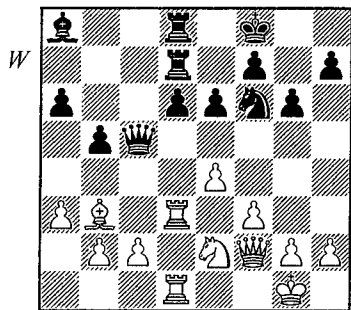
At the time of the game, various commentators felt that this position was equal. In reality White has a small advantage due to the pressure against the semi-backward pawn on d6.

### 22 ... ♙g8

Most commentators claimed that Black could equalise after the exchange of queens, but this is not quite true. As Jonathan Speelman pointed out, White keeps an edge after 22 ... ♚xe3 23 ♜xe3 d5 (keeping the pawn on d6 would also leave Black with a difficult position) 24 exd5 ♘xd5 25 ♘xd5

♙xd5 26 ♖ed3 ♙c6 27 ♖xd7 ♖xd7  
28 ♖xd7 ♙xd7 29 c4! ♙g8 30 c5  
etc.

23 ♙g1 ♙f8 24 ♖f2 ♙a8?! 25  
♘e2 g6?



A serious and possibly decisive mistake, Black weakens the dark squares around his king. He should exchange queens and bite the bullet in the endgame.

26 ♘d4! ♖e5

After 26 ... e5 White can play 27 ♖c3! ♖a7 28 ♘c6 ♖xf2+ 29 ♙xf2 ♙xc6 (29 ... ♖c8? 30 ♘xe5+-) 30 ♖xc6 etc.

27 ♖e1! g5 28 c3 ♙g7 29 ♙c2 ♖g8 30 ♘b3 ♙f8

30 ... ♙h8!? would have been more tenacious.

31 ♖d4 ♙e7 32 a4! h5? 33 axb5 axb5 34 ♖b4 h4 35 ♘d4 g4 36 ♖xb5 d5 37 ♖xh4 ♖h5 38 ♘f5+!  
1:0

The simple point is that 38 ... exf5 is met by 39 exf5+ ♙f8 40 ♖xf6 when 40 ... ♙b7 runs into 41 ♖xb7 ♖xb7 42 ♖d8+ ♙g7 43 f6+ ♙h8 44 ♖xg8+ ♙xg8 45 ♖e8 mate.

The following game was an unusual example of my adopting the Sicilian with Black, and that against a GM known as a specialist with the White pieces against it. The result even surprised me!

### Grünfeld - Davies Tel Aviv 1991

1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 ♘c6 3 d4 cxd4 4  
♘xd4 e6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 g3 ♘ge7

Taimanov's method of development. Black intends to exchange White's knight on d4 and then play ... ♘e7-c6. White side-steps this plan and hopes to prove that the knight on e7 is badly placed. Meanwhile I set about finding a good square for it.

7 ♘b3 d6 8 ♙g2 ♙d7 9 0-0

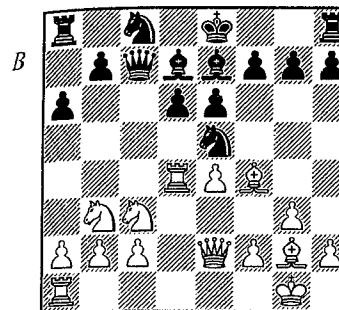
And not 9 ♖xd6 because of 9 ... ♘d5, trapping the queen. The bishop move makes way for Black's knight on e7 to move over to the b6 square via c8.

9 ... ♘c8 10 ♖e2 ♙e7 11 ♖d1 ♖c7 12 ♙f4?!

Already White is thinking along the wrong lines with this move. He should restrain Black's queenside with 12 a4 and perhaps follow up with 13 f4.

12 ... ♘e5 13 ♖d4?

White has conceived the extraordinary notion of directly attacking Black's semi-backward pawn on d6 but this plan is doomed to failure. In so doing, White misplaces his pieces and they soon have to beat a hasty retreat.



13 ... 0-0 14 ♖ad1

It was better to move the other rook back to d1 which says a lot about White's 13th move. The threat of 15 ♙xe5 is easily parried.

14 ... ♘b6 15 ♙f1

A horrible move to have to make, but White wants to defend the c4-square.

15 ... ♖ac8 16 ♙c1 ♖fd8 17 h4

This and the following kingside pawn moves are an attempt to create counter-play. Unfortunately for White they merely serve to further weaken his position.

17 ... ♙e8 18 h5 h6 19 g4?! ♙f6 20 f4 ♘c6 21 ♖4d3 ♘b4 22 ♖h3 ♘a4!

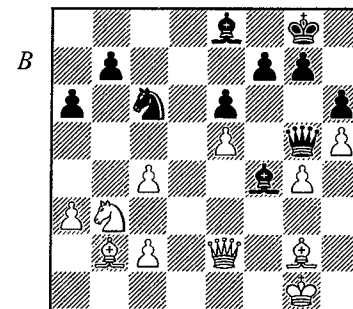
Simple and strong. 23 ♘xa4 ♙xa4 leaves White in a hopeless position due to the threats against the pawns on a2 and c2, so White launches a desperate attack.

23 e5 dxe5 24 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 25 ♖xe5 ♙g5 26 a3 ♘xc3 27 ♖xc3 ♖xc3 28 bxc3 ♘c6

The net result of White's 23 e5 is that he is only left with one supported pawn in his entire structure, the one on h5. Eventually even this pawn falls.

29 ♙b2 ♙f4 30 c4 ♖g5 31 ♙g2

Defending e5 indirectly because of the pressure against b7. But now Black's pieces start to infiltrate the gaping holes in White's game.



31... ♙e3+ 32 ♙f1 ♖f4+ 33 ♙e1

33 ♖f3 is met by 33 ... ♖xc4+ and 33 ♙f3 by 33 ... ♘xe5 34 ♙xe5 ♖xe5 35 ♙xb7 ♖g3 36 ♙g2 ♙c6 37 c5? ♙b5 38 c4 ♙xc4 39 ♖xc4 ♖f2#.

33 ... ♘xe5 34 ♙xe5 ♖xe5 35 ♙xb7 ♖g3+ 36 ♙d1 ♖g1+ 37 ♖e1 ♖xg4+ 38 ♖e2 ♖g1+ 39 ♖e1 ♖g5 40 ♙xa6 f5!

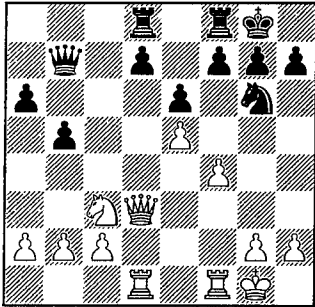
Black's bishop on e8 joins the action with decisive effect.

41 c5 f4! 0:1

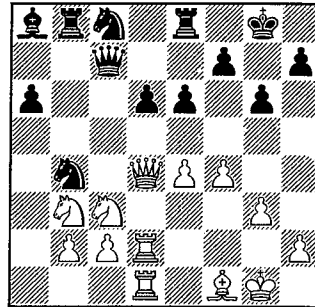
If White protects the pawn on h5 with 42 ♙e2 there follows 42... ♖d5+ 43 ♘d2 ♖xc5 etc.



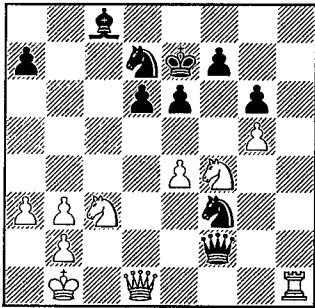
KM12/2: 1) Black to play



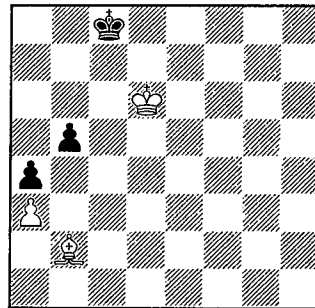
KM12/2: 2) Black to play



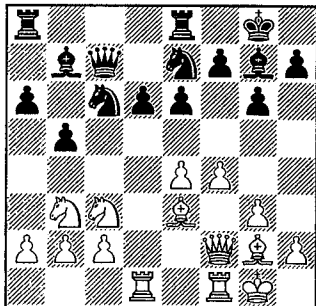
KM12/2: 3) White to play



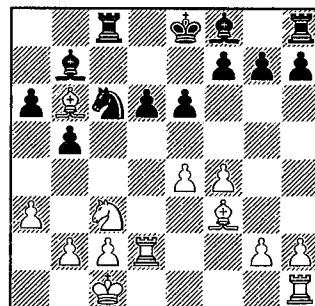
KM12/2: 4) Black to play



A12/2: a) White to play



A12/2: b) Black to play



### Month 12/Week 3: Truck Meets Hedgehog

As with the similar King's Indian position we saw earlier, the *hedgehog* formation was once assumed to be good for White on account of his extra space and the potential weakness of Black's d-pawn. Even if White did not win by pressurizing the d-pawn the experts felt that Black's position was so passive that he would not be able to organise sufficient counter-play should White launch himself at Black's kingside.

This week we will see both these plans being used effectively, next week's material will show that it isn't so easy. The first game is a controlled positional masterpiece by Karpov, the second an altogether more violent affair.

#### Karpov - Andersson Madrid 1973

1 d4 ♖f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♗f3 b6 4 g3 ♙b4+ 5 ♗bd2 ♙b7 6 ♙g2 0-0 7 0-0 c5?!

7 ... ♙e7 8 ♖c2 d5 is a safer set-up. The type of hedgehog which Andersson adopts in this game is dubious because he lacks a dark-squared bishop.

8 a3 ♙xd2 9 ♙xd2 cxd4 10 ♙b4!

This and Karpov's next move set up a temporary blockade of

Black's d-pawn which is marked out as a weakness in the subsequent play. 10 ♗xd4 would achieve nothing after 10... ♙xg2 11. ♗xg2 d5.

10 ... ♙e8 11 ♙d6! ♗e4?

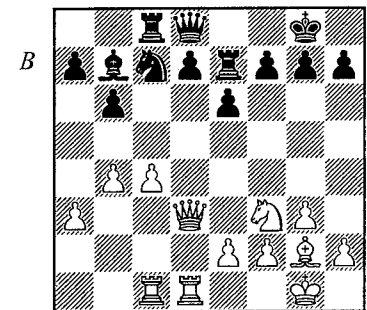
Black should have tried 11 ... ♙xf3! 12 ♙xf3 ♗c6 13 ♙xc6 (13 b4?! ♙c8 14 ♙c1? e5) 13 ... dxc6 14 ♖xd4 ♗e4! (14 ... c5 15 ♖f4) which aims for an inferior, yet probably tenable, rook endgame.

12 ♖xd4 ♗a6 13 b4

Gaining space on the queenside and restricting Black's knight on a6.

13 ... ♙c8 14 ♙ac1 ♗xd6 15 ♖xd6 ♗c7 16 ♙fd1 ♙e7 17 ♖d3!

Threatening both 18 ♗g5 and 18 ♗e5. Black cannot now play 17 ... d5 because of 18 cxd5 exd5 (18 ... ♗xd5? 19 e4 wins a piece) 19 ♗g5 g6 20 e4 winning a pawn.



17 ... ♙xf3 18 ♙xf3 ♗e8 19 ♙b7!

The start of an excellent manoeuvre which restricts Black's pieces and transfers a White piece to the queenside, where the decisive ac-

tion is going to take place. White's plan is to create a passed pawn in this sector when Black's pieces will be too poorly placed to do anything about it.

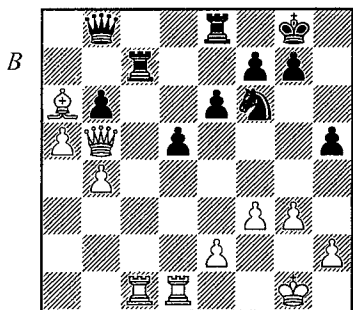
**19 ... ♖c7 20 ♔a6! ♜c6 21 ♖b3**  
Preventing 21 ... d5 on account of 22 ♖a4 ♔d6 23 cxd5 ♜xd5 24 ♜xd5 followed by 25 ♜c8.

**21 ... ♖b8 22 ♖a4 ♜c7 23 ♖b5 ♔f6 24 ♜3 d5**

After 24 ... ♖e8 White would play 25 ♔d6 with a further increase in the pressure. Andersson's move is a bid for active counter-play, but one which presents White with a passed pawn on the queenside.

**25 c5 h5 26 a4 ♜e8 27 cxb6 axb6 28 a5!**

Creating a decisive passed pawn.



**28 ... ♜xc1 29 ♜xc1 ♖e5**

White has a winning endgame after 29 ... bxa5 30 ♖xb8 ♜xb8 31 bxa5 and now either 31 ... ♜b2 32 ♜a1 ♔d7 33 ♔c8 ♔c5 34 ♔f1 or 31 ... ♔d7 32 ♔c8 ♔e5 33 a6 ♔c4 34 ♔b7 ♔b6 35 ♜c6 etc.

**30 ♖xb6 d4 31 ♔h1 ♖e3 32 ♜f1 e5 33 ♔d3 h4 34 gxh4 ♖f4 35 ♜g1**

**♖xh4 36 a6 g6 37 a7 ♔g7 38 ♔xg6! 1:0**

38 ... fxg6 39 ♖b7+ is followed by queening the a-pawn.

### Chandler - Pritchett Edinburgh 1985

**1 e4 c5 2 ♔f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♔xd4 ♔c6**

Another line which often leads to hedgehog formations is 4 ... a6 (the Kan variation) 5 ♔d3 followed by a later c2-c4.

**5 ♔b5 d6 6 c4 ♔f6 7 ♔1c3 a6 8 ♔a3 ♔e7 9 ♔e2 0-0 10 0-0 b6 11 ♔e3 ♔e5!**

This seems to lose time, but the point is that Black will reposition his knight on the d7-square where it is much better placed than on c6. After 11 ... ♔b7 White can force Black's knights to slightly clumsy squares with 12 ♖b3 though this position is also playable for Black.

12 ... ♔d7 13 ♜fd1 ♔c5 14 ♖c2 ♖c7 15 ♜ac1 ♜ac8 16 ♔ab1 ♔e5 17 ♔d2 ♔cd7 18 a3 ♜fe8 19 b4 ♔f6 20 h3 ♔g6 was played in Jadoul-Karpov, Brussels 1986, when White should play 21 ♔b3 and a4-a5 in order to exploit the fact that Black's knight on g6 no longer helps cover the queenside.

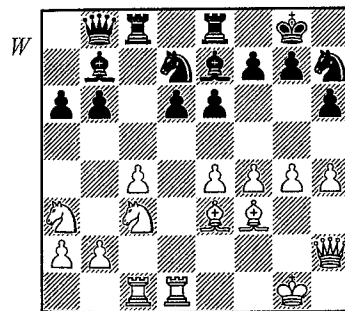
**12 f4**

Chandler opts for the sharpest plan of a kingside pawn storm. An alternative favoured by many players is the quieter 12 f3 followed by 13 ♖d2 and 14 ♜fd1 etc.

**12 ... ♔ed7 13 ♔f3 ♔b7 14 ♖e2 ♜c8 15 ♜ac1 ♜e8 16 ♜fd1 ♖c7 17 g4 h6 18 h4 ♔h7 19 ♖h2 ♖b8**

This move looks way too passive when White is marching on Black's king position in such aggressive fashion. Black should do something rather more decisive.

In the game Gallagher-Suetin, Hastings 1990-91 Black used a fascinating plan of blockade with 19 ... g5!? 20 hxg5 hxg5 21 f5 ♔f8 22 ♔f2 ♔df6 23 ♜h1 ♔g7 24 ♖g2 ♖e7 leading to a sharp struggle which Black eventually won.



**20 g5**

Chandler plunges in, though he could also have first prevented Black's ... f7-f5 reply by preparing this move with 20 ♖h3

**20 ... f5 21 ♖g2**

White has a powerful alternative in 21 gxh6 gxh6 22 exf5 ♔xf3 23

♖g3+ ♔h8 24 ♖xf3 exf5 25 ♔d5 followed by ♔d4, though the move played is also quite good.

**21 ... hxg5 22 hxg5 fxe4 23 ♔xe4 d5 24 ♔f2 ♔c5!**

Tenacious defence. By exchanging the dark-squared bishops Black weakens the f4-square.

**25 ♔xc5 ♔xc5 26 ♔d4 ♜f8?**

This gives White the time he needs to successfully prosecute his kingside attack. 26 ... dxc4 27 ♔xc4 ♔xf3 28 ♖xf3 ♜cd8 is correct, continuing the policy of liquidating material.

**27 g6 ♔f6 28 ♖h3**

Threatening 29 b4 and 29 ♔g4. Black has no good defence.

**28 ... ♜fe8**

The alternatives are no better as after 28 ... dxc4 there follows 29 ♔g4 ♔xf3 30 ♔xf6+ ♜xf6 31 ♖h7+ ♔f8 32 ♖h8+ ♔e7 33 ♖xg7+ and 28 ... ♜ce8 is answered by 29 ♔g2.

**29 ♜e1**

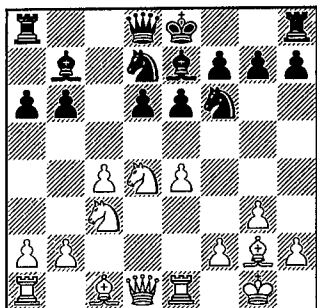
29 ♔g4 ♔cd7 hangs on.

**29 ... ♖d6 30 ♔g4 e5**

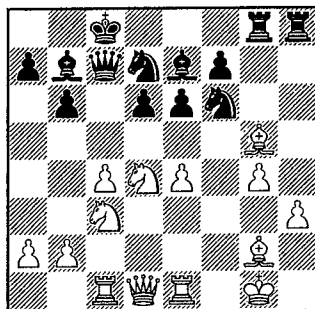
There is no time to lend further support to the e6-square. Defending against the threat of 31 b4 with 30 ... a5 allows White's knight to come in with 31 ♔b5.

**31 fxe5 ♜xe5 32 ♜xe5 ♖xe5 33 ♔xc8 ♖xd4 34 ♔xb7 1:0**

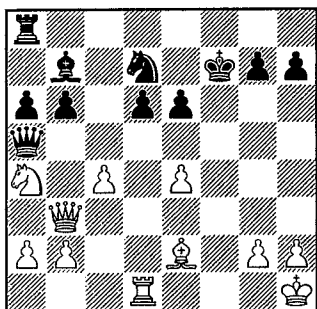
KM12/3: 1) White to play



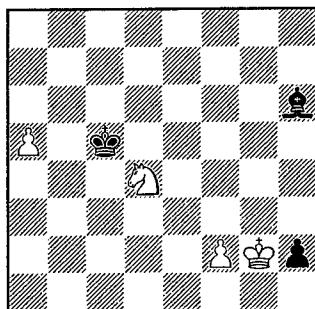
KM12/3: 2) White to play



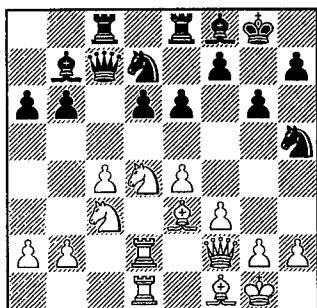
KM12/3: 3) White to play



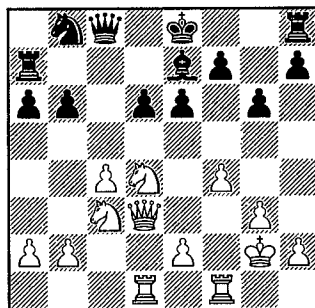
KM12/3: 4) White to play



A12/3: a) White to play



A12/3: b) White to play



### Month 12/Week 4: Hedgehog Quills

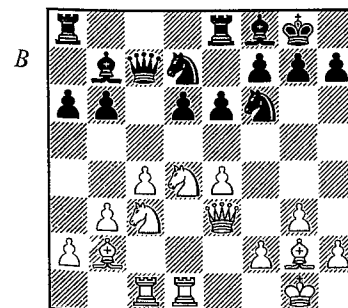
Last week's material showed some of White's trump cards but the hedgehog is a remarkably resilient creature. If I had to single out a single player who understands it's needs, it would undoubtedly be the Rumanian Grandmaster Mihai Suba.

Vukic - Suba  
Vinkovci 1977

1 ♖f3 ♜f6 2 g3 b6 3 ♔g2 ♙b7  
4 0-0 e6 5 c4 c5 6 d4 cxd4 7 ♜xd4  
d6 8 ♜c3 a6 9 ♜d1 ♜c7 10 b3  
♜bd7

The best square for the knight in the hedgehog formation. In this particular position it is essential to be able to meet ♙c1-a3 with ... ♜c5. In addition the development of the knight on d7 keeps the long light-squared diagonal open for Black's bishop on b7.

11 ♙b2 ♙e7 12 e4 0-0 13 ♜e3  
♜fe8 14 ♜d4 ♙f8 15 ♜ac1



Suba himself gives us a fascinating insight into this position in his book *Dynamic Chess Strategy*: "A frequent picture in the Hedgehog White's position looks ideal. That's the naked truth about it, but the 'ideal' has by definition one drawback - it cannot be improved."

15 ... ♜ad8 16 h3 g6 17 ♙h2  
♙g7 18 ♜c2 ♜b8 19 ♜c2 ♜c8 20  
♜d2 ♜c5

First of all Black attacks e4 with the idea of provoking a further weakening of White's position with f2-f3. The main problem with pawns is that they cannot move backwards and in making these advances White seriously weakens his own king position.

21 ♜e1 ♜a8 22 f3

After 22 ♜e2 Black can play 22 ... d5 23 e5 ♜fe4 24 ♜xe4 dxe4 with the idea of 25 ... ♜d3 according to Suba.

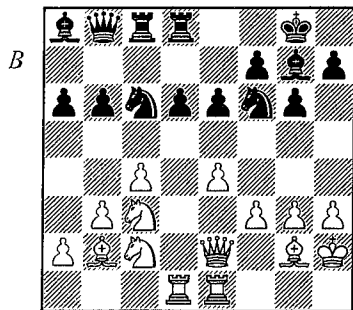
22 ... ♜b8 23 ♜cd1 ♙a8 24  
♜de2 ♜ed8 25 ♜d4 ♜cd7 26 ♜f2  
♜e5

And not 26 ... d5? because of 27 exd5 exd5 28 cxd5 ♜xd5 29 ♜xd5 ♙xd5 30 ♜f5!

27 ♜e2 ♜c6 28 ♜c2?

According to Suba White should have exchanged knights and played 29 a4, inhibiting ... b7-b5 and keeping better chances of maintaining the equilibrium. Black's next move puts a knight on the edge of the board, exactly what you should not do according to

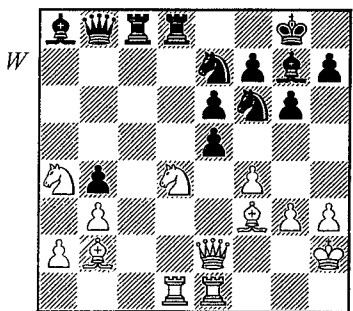
classical dogma. But in fact he takes over the initiative and never lets it go.



28 ... ♖h5! 29 f4 b5!

A very typical pawn lever, tearing down the c4 rampart.

30 cxb5 axb5 31 ♔f3 ♖e7! 32 ♖d4 b4! 33 ♖a4 ♖f6 34 e5 dxe5!



35 fxe5

After 35 ♔xa8 exd4 36 ♔f3 ♖fd5 Black wins a pawn with a dominating position into the bargain.

35 ... ♔xf3 36 ♖xf3 ♖fd5 37 ♔c1 ♔h6 38 ♔c4 ♖e3 39 ♔cc1 ♖7d5 40 ♔xc8

In a difficult position White loses his nerve and his game falls apart

immediately. He could have put up more tenacious resistance by keeping rooks on the board.

40 ... ♔xc8 41 ♔f2 ♖f5 42 ♔e2 ♔e3 43 ♔e1 ♔b5 44 ♖d2 ♔d3 45 ♖f1

After 45 ♖c4 Black wins beautifully with 45 ... ♖xg3 46 ♔xe3 ♖xe3 47 ♖xe3 ♔xe3 48 ♔xe3 ♖f1+ etc.

45 ... ♔c2 46 ♔g2 ♔xg2+ 47 ♖xg2 ♔e4+ 0:1

In the following game Suba uses his pet hedgehog to beat the East German star, Wolfgang Uhlmann. This game had some theoretical value at the time, as Uhlmann used his patented plan of 10 ♔e3 followed by 11 ♖d4, aiming for an eventual f2-f4 and e4-e5.

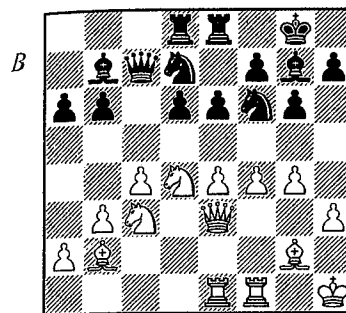
### Uhlmann - Suba Bucharest 1979

1 c4 c5 2 ♖f3 ♖f6 3 ♖c3 e6 4 g3 b6 5 ♔g2 ♔b7 6 0-0 a6 7 d4 cxd4 8 ♔xd4 d6 9 e4 ♖bd7 10 ♔e3 ♔e7 11 ♖d4 ♔c7 12 b3 0-0 13 ♔b2 ♔fe8 14 ♖h1 ♔f8 15 f4 g6 16 ♔ae1 ♔g7 17 h3 ♔ad8 18 g4? (D)

Certainly this is in keeping with White's strategy, but it overextends his position. He should play something like 18 ♖c2.

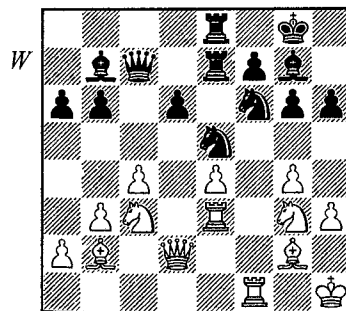
18 ... e5! 19 fxe5 ♔xe5!

Black aims at increasing the pressure on e4 which makes this move much more logical and stronger than the 'obvious' 19 ... ♖xe5.



20 ♖de2 ♔de8 21 ♖g3 h6! 22 ♖d2 ♔e7 23 ♔c3 ♖e5

This seems like backtracking after Black's 19th move decision but the point is that White's pieces have started to drift to poor squares. 23 ... ♖c5 24 ♔xf6 ♔xf6 25 ♖d5 ♔xd5 26 ♔xf6 is dangerous for Black.



24 ♔a3?

Again trying to force matters, but in reality this only misplaces another White piece. Another bad move was 24 ♖d5? after which Black can win a pawn with 24 ... ♖xd5 25 exd5 ♖xg4!.

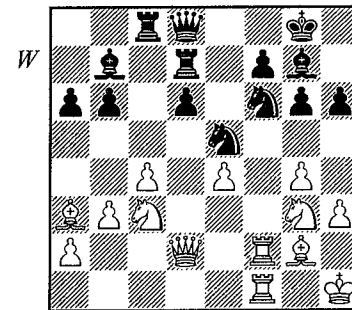
24 ... ♔d7 25 ♔e2

Uhlmann overestimates his chances. He should have chosen 25

♖d5 ♔d8 26 ♖e2, looking to improve the position of his knights. Black could then choose between 26 ... b5 and 26 ... ♔xd5 27 exd5 h5!?

25 ... ♔c8! 26 ♔ef2 ♔d8

Suddenly threatening things like 27 ... ♖fxg4 or 27 ... b5.



27 g5

This move looks horrible but White's position requires desperate measures.

27 ... hxc5 28 ♔xc5 ♖e8 29 ♔xd8 ♔xd8 30 ♖a4 b5 31 ♖b6 ♔c7 32 cxb5 axb5 33 ♔d1 ♔c3 34 ♖f1 b4!

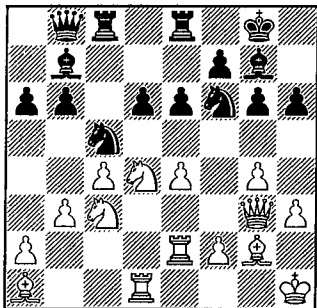
Effectively the winning move, 35 ♔xb4, 35 ♔b2 and 35 ♔c1 are met by 35 ... ♖d3 so White has little choice.

35 ♖a4 ♔d3 36 ♔xd3 ♖xd3 37 ♔d2 ♔a6 38 ♔b2 ♖xb2 39 ♖xb2 ♔c8 40 ♖d3 ♔c3 41 ♔d1 ♖f6 42 ♖f4 ♔e5 43 ♖d3

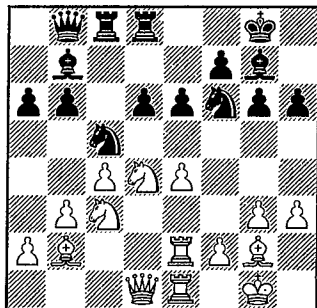
The line 43 ♖d5 ♖xd5 44 exd5 ♔c2 45 ♔d2 ♔c1 46 ♖g1 ♔f4 is also hopeless for White.

43 ... ♔xd3 44 ♔xd3 ♔c1 45 ♖g1 ♖h5 46 ♖f2 ♖f4 47 ♔d2 ♔c3 0:1

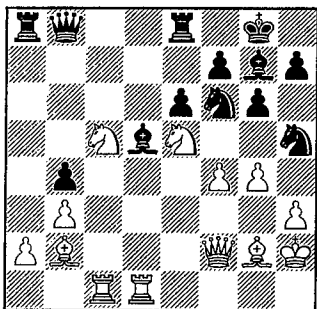
KM12/4: 1) Black to play



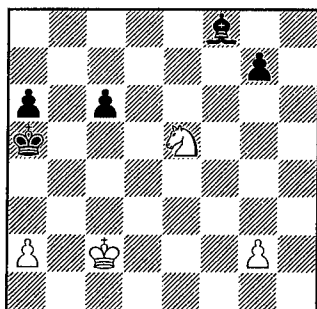
KM12/4: 2) Black to play



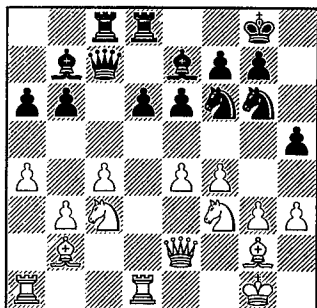
KM12/4: 3) Black to play



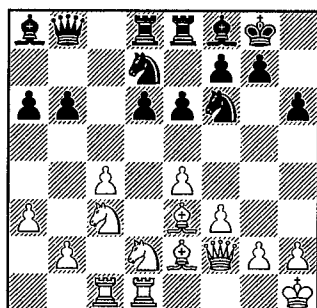
KM12/4: 4) White to play



A12/4: a) Black to play



A12/4: b) Black to play



## 13 Key Move Solutions

### KM1/1

- 1) 1 ... ♖xf3!! 2 gxf3 ♕h3+ 3 ♖g1 ♘xd4 4 ♖d1 ♗e1+! 5 ♖xe1 ♘xf3#  
Fish - Abrahams, Liverpool 1929
- 2) 1 ... ♖b8 (2 ♖xb8 ♖xc3+ 3 ♖d1 ♘f2#) 0:1 Kurkletis - Vasyukov,  
Kazakhstan 1957
- 3) 1 ... ♖xg2+ 0:1 (2 ♖xg2 ♘f4+) Timanim - Davies, Tel-Aviv 1993
- 4) 1 ♕d5! exd5 2 ♖xc6+ ♖d8 3 ♖xa8+ ♖d7 4 ♖b7+ ♖e6 5 ♖c6+ ♕d6  
6 ♕f4 1:0 Janovsky - Schalopp, Nuremberg 1896

### KM1/2

- 1) 1 ♕h6! (1 ... ♘xe5 2 ♕xg7+ ♖g8 3 ♕xe5+ ♕g5 4 ♖xg5#) 1:0  
Bronstein-Kotov, Moscow 1946
- 2) 1 ♕xf7+! ♖xf7 (1 ... ♖xf7 18 ♗e8+ ♖f8 2 ♖xf8#) 2 ♖xh7+ ♖f6 3  
♖h4+ ♖g7 (3 ... g5 4 ♖h6+ ♖f5 [4 ... ♖f7 5 ♖h7+ ♖f6 6 ♖e7+ ♖g6 7  
♖xf8] 5 ♖xf8+ ♖g6 6 ♖g8+-) 4 ♗e7+ ♖f7 5 ♖d4+ ♖f8 6 ♖h8+ ♖xe7  
7 ♗e1+ 1:0 Janowsky & Soldatenkoff - Lasker & Taubenhaus, Paris  
1909
- 3) 1 ... e2! 2 ♕xf2 ♕e3! -+
- 4) 1 a3! (1 a4 ♖c7 2 ♖a6 ♖c6 3 ♖a7 ♖c7=) 1 ... ♖c7 2 ♖a6 ♖c6 3 a4  
♖c7 4 ♖a7 ♖c6 5 ♖b8 ♖c5 6 ♖c7 ♖xc4 8 ♖xb6 ♖b4 9 a5+-

### KM1/3

- 1) 1 ♖xh5! (1 ♘d5 intending 2 ♖xh5+-; 1 ♘g3 f5 2 ♘h5 gxh5 3 ♖xh5  
♖c7 is not quite so deadly) 1 ... gxh5 2 ♘d5 f5 3 g6 hxg6 4 ♖xg6+ ♖h8  
5 0-0-0 1:0 Rubenchuk - Kanayan, USSR Ch. Semi-final 1957
- 2) 1 ♖xg6+ (1 ... hxg6 2 ♖h8+) 1:0 O'Kelly - Ramirez, Malaga 1963
- 3) 1 ♖xh5! gxh5 2 ♖g5+ ♖h8 3 ♕g7+! (3 ... ♕xg7 4 ♖xa5+-; 3 ... ♕g8  
4 ♕f6+ ♖f8 5 ♖g7#) 1:0 Berzinsch - Rausis, Riga 1994
- 4) Westerinen - Rohde, Lone Pine 1977. Black can win with 1 ... f4! 2  
gxf4 gxf4 3 ♖d4 (3 g3 e3 +-) 3 ... e3 4 fxe3 f3 5 gxf3 h4+-

### KM1/4

- 1) 1 ♖e5! (1 ♖e6 ♖e4 2 ♖f6 ♖d5 3 ♖g7 ♖e6 4 ♖xh7 ♖f7 5. ♖h8 ♖f8=)  
1 ... ♖e3 2 ♖f6 +-
- 2) 1 ♖b1! (1 ♖c3 a3! 2 b4 ♖e5 3 ♖b3 ♖d5 4 ♖xa3 ♖c6 5 ♖a4 ♖b6=)  
1 ... a3 2 b3 ♖e5 3 ♖a2 ♖d5 4 ♖xa3 ♖c5 (4 ... ♖c6 5 ♖a4 ♖b6 6 ♖b4)  
5 ♖a4+-